



Symfony

The Cookbook

for Symfony 2.5

generated on November 14, 2014

The Cookbook (2.5)

This work is licensed under the “Attribution-Share Alike 3.0 Unported” license (<http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/>).

You are free **to share** (to copy, distribute and transmit the work), and **to remix** (to adapt the work) under the following conditions:

- **Attribution:** You must attribute the work in the manner specified by the author or licensor (but not in any way that suggests that they endorse you or your use of the work).
- **Share Alike:** If you alter, transform, or build upon this work, you may distribute the resulting work only under the same, similar or a compatible license. For any reuse or distribution, you must make clear to others the license terms of this work.

The information in this book is distributed on an “as is” basis, without warranty. Although every precaution has been taken in the preparation of this work, neither the author(s) nor SensioLabs shall have any liability to any person or entity with respect to any loss or damage caused or alleged to be caused directly or indirectly by the information contained in this work.

If you find typos or errors, feel free to report them by creating a ticket on the Symfony ticketing system (<http://github.com/symfony/symfony-docs/issues>). Based on tickets and users feedback, this book is continuously updated.

Contents at a Glance

How to Use Assetic for Asset Management	6
How to Minify CSS/JS Files (Using UglifyJS and UglifyCSS)	12
How to Minify JavaScripts and Stylesheets with YUI Compressor	16
How to Use Assetic for Image Optimization with Twig Functions	19
How to Apply an Assetic Filter to a specific File Extension	22
How to Install 3rd Party Bundles	24
Best Practices for Reusable Bundles	27
How to Use Bundle Inheritance to Override Parts of a Bundle	34
How to Override any Part of a Bundle	36
How to Remove the AcmeDemoBundle	39
How to Load Service Configuration inside a Bundle	42
How to Create Friendly Configuration for a Bundle	45
How to Simplify Configuration of multiple Bundles	51
How to Use Varnish to Speed up my Website	54
How to Master and Create new Environments	59
How to Override Symfony's default Directory Structure	64
Using Parameters within a Dependency Injection Class	67
Understanding how the Front Controller, Kernel and Environments Work together.....	70
How to Set external Parameters in the Service Container	73
How to Use PDOSessionHandler to Store Sessions in the Database	76
How to Use the Apache Router	79
Configuring a Web Server	82
How to Organize Configuration Files	87
How to Create a Console Command	92
How to Use the Console.....	97
How to Generate URLs and Send Emails from the Console	99
How to Enable Logging in Console Commands	101
How to Define Commands as Services	105
How to Customize Error Pages.....	107
How to Define Controllers as Services	111
How to Optimize your Development Environment for Debugging.....	115
How to Deploy a Symfony Application	117
Deploying to Microsoft Azure Website Cloud	121
Deploying to Heroku Cloud	129
How to Handle File Uploads with Doctrine	133
How to use Doctrine Extensions: Timestampable, Sluggable, Translatable, etc.	142

How to Register Event Listeners and Subscribers	143
How to Use Doctrine DBAL	146
How to Generate Entities from an Existing Database.....	148
How to Work with multiple Entity Managers and Connections	152
How to Register custom DQL Functions.....	155
How to Define Relationships with Abstract Classes and Interfaces.....	156
How to Provide Model Classes for several Doctrine Implementations	159
How to Implement a simple Registration Form	162
Console Commands.....	168
How to Send an Email.....	169
How to Use Gmail to Send Emails	172
How to Use the Cloud to Send Emails	173
How to Work with Emails during Development.....	175
How to Spool Emails.....	177
How to Test that an Email is Sent in a functional Test.....	179
How to Setup before and after Filters.....	181
How to Extend a Class without Using Inheritance.....	185
How to Customize a Method Behavior without Using Inheritance	188
How to use Expressions in Security, Routing, Services, and Validation	190
How to Customize Form Rendering	191
How to Use Data Transformers	204
How to Dynamically Modify Forms Using Form Events	210
How to Embed a Collection of Forms	222
How to Create a Custom Form Field Type.....	235
How to Create a Form Type Extension	240
How to Reduce Code Duplication with "inherit_data"	245
How to Unit Test your Forms.....	249
How to Configure empty Data for a Form Class.....	254
How to Use the submit() Function to Handle Form Submissions	256
How to Use the virtual Form Field Option	259
How to Use Monolog to Write Logs	260
How to Configure Monolog to Email Errors	264
How to Configure Monolog to Display Console Messages.....	266
How to Configure Monolog to Exclude 404 Errors from the Log	268
How to Log Messages to different Files.....	269
How to Create a custom Data Collector.....	271
How to Use Matchers to Enable the Profiler Conditionally	274
Switching the Profiler Storage	276
How to Configure Symfony to Work behind a Load Balancer or a Reverse Proxy	277
How to Register a new Request Format and Mime Type.....	279
How to Force Routes to always Use HTTPS or HTTP	281
How to Allow a "/" Character in a Route Parameter	282
How to Configure a Redirect without a custom Controller	283
How to Use HTTP Methods beyond GET and POST in Routes	285
How to Use Service Container Parameters in your Routes	287
How to Create a custom Route Loader	289
Redirect URLs with a Trailing Slash.....	293

How to Pass Extra Information from a Route to a Controller	295
How to Load Security Users from the Database (the Entity Provider)	296
How to Add "Remember Me" Login Functionality	310
How to Impersonate a User	313
How to Implement your own Voter to Blacklist IP Addresses	315
How to Use Voters to Check User Permissions	318
How to Use Access Control Lists (ACLs)	322
How to Use advanced ACL Concepts	326
How to Force HTTPS or HTTP for different URLs	330
How to Restrict Firewalls to a Specific Request	331
How to Customize your Form Login	333
How to Secure any Service or Method in your Application	336
How to Create a custom User Provider	340
How to Create a Custom Form Password Authenticator	345
How to Authenticate Users with API Keys	349
How to Create a custom Authentication Provider	358
Using pre Authenticated Security Firewalls	367
How to Change the default Target Path Behavior	369
Using CSRF Protection in the Login Form	371
How to Choose the Password Encoder Algorithm Dynamically	373
How to Use the Serializer	375
How to Create an Event Listener	377
How to Work with Scopes	380
How to Work with Compiler Passes in Bundles	385
Session Proxy Examples	386
Making the Locale "Sticky" during a User's Session	388
Configuring the Directory where Session Files are Saved	390
Bridge a legacy Application with Symfony Sessions	392
Limit Session Metadata Writes	394
How Symfony2 Differs from Symfony1	395
How to Inject Variables into all Templates (i.e. global Variables)	400
How to Use and Register Namespaced Twig Paths	402
How to Use PHP instead of Twig for Templates	404
How to Write a custom Twig Extension	410
How to Render a Template without a custom Controller	413
How to Simulate HTTP Authentication in a Functional Test	415
How to Simulate Authentication with a Token in a Functional Test	416
How to Test the Interaction of several Clients	418
How to Use the Profiler in a Functional Test	420
How to Test Code that Interacts with the Database	422
How to Test Doctrine Repositories	425
How to Customize the Bootstrap Process before Running Tests	427
How to Create a custom Validation Constraint	429
How to Use PHP's built-in Web Server	433
How to Create a SOAP Web Service in a Symfony Controller	435
How to Create and Store a Symfony Project in Git	439
How to Create and Store a Symfony Project in Subversion	443



Chapter 1

How to Use Assetic for Asset Management

Assetic combines two major ideas: *assets* and *filters*. The assets are files such as CSS, JavaScript and image files. The filters are things that can be applied to these files before they are served to the browser. This allows a separation between the asset files stored in the application and the files actually presented to the user.

Without Assetic, you just serve the files that are stored in the application directly:

Listing 1-1 1 `<script src="{ { asset('js/script.js') } }" type="text/javascript"></script>`

But *with* Assetic, you can manipulate these assets however you want (or load them from anywhere) before serving them. This means you can:

- Minify and combine all of your CSS and JS files
- Run all (or just some) of your CSS or JS files through some sort of compiler, such as LESS, SASS or CoffeeScript
- Run image optimizations on your images

Assets

Using Assetic provides many advantages over directly serving the files. The files do not need to be stored where they are served from and can be drawn from various sources such as from within a bundle.

You can use Assetic to process *CSS stylesheets*, *JavaScript files* and *images*. The philosophy behind adding either is basically the same, but with a slightly different syntax.

Including JavaScript Files

To include JavaScript files, use the `javascripts` tag in any template:

Listing 1-2 1 `{% javascripts '@AcmeFooBundle/Resources/public/js/*' %}`
2 `<script type="text/javascript" src="{ { asset_url } }"></script>`
3 `{% endjavascripts %}`



If you're using the default block names from the Symfony Standard Edition, the `javascripts` tag will most commonly live in the `javascripts` block:

Listing 1-3

```

1 {# ... #}
2 {% block javascripts %}
3     {% javascripts '@AcmeFooBundle/Resources/public/js/*' %}
4         <script type="text/javascript" src="{{ asset_url }}"></script>
5     {% endjavascripts %}
6 {% endblock %}
7 {# ... #}

```



You can also include CSS Stylesheets: see *Including CSS Stylesheets*.

In this example, all of the files in the `Resources/public/js/` directory of the `AcmeFooBundle` will be loaded and served from a different location. The actual rendered tag might simply look like:

Listing 1-4

```

1 <script src="/app_dev.php/js/abcd123.js"></script>

```

This is a key point: once you let Assetic handle your assets, the files are served from a different location. This *will* cause problems with CSS files that reference images by their relative path. See *Fixing CSS Paths with the `cssrewrite` Filter*.

Including CSS Stylesheets

To bring in CSS stylesheets, you can use the same methodologies seen above, except with the `stylesheets` tag:

Listing 1-5

```

1 {% stylesheets 'bundles/acme_foo/css/*' filter='cssrewrite' %}
2     <link rel="stylesheet" href="{{ asset_url }}" />
3 {% endstylesheets %}

```



If you're using the default block names from the Symfony Standard Edition, the `stylesheets` tag will most commonly live in the `stylesheets` block:

Listing 1-6

```

1 {# ... #}
2 {% block stylesheets %}
3     {% stylesheets 'bundles/acme_foo/css/*' filter='cssrewrite' %}
4         <link rel="stylesheet" href="{{ asset_url }}" />
5     {% endstylesheets %}
6 {% endblock %}
7 {# ... #}

```

But because Assetic changes the paths to your assets, this *will* break any background images (or other paths) that uses relative paths, unless you use the `cssrewrite` filter.



Notice that in the original example that included JavaScript files, you referred to the files using a path like `@AcmeFooBundle/Resources/public/file.js`, but that in this example, you referred to the CSS files using their actual, publicly-accessible path: `bundles/acme_foo/css`. You can use either, except that there is a known issue that causes the `cssrewrite` filter to fail when using the `@AcmeFooBundle` syntax for CSS Stylesheets.

Including Images

To include an image you can use the `image` tag.

Listing 1-7

```
1 {% image '@AcmeFooBundle/Resources/public/images/example.jpg' %}
2     
3 {% endimage %}
```

You can also use Assetic for image optimization. More information in *How to Use Assetic for Image Optimization with Twig Functions*.

Fixing CSS Paths with the `cssrewrite` Filter

Since Assetic generates new URLs for your assets, any relative paths inside your CSS files will break. To fix this, make sure to use the `cssrewrite` filter with your `stylesheets` tag. This parses your CSS files and corrects the paths internally to reflect the new location.

You can see an example in the previous section.



When using the `cssrewrite` filter, don't refer to your CSS files using the `@AcmeFooBundle` syntax. See the note in the above section for details.

Combining Assets

One feature of Assetic is that it will combine many files into one. This helps to reduce the number of HTTP requests, which is great for front end performance. It also allows you to maintain the files more easily by splitting them into manageable parts. This can help with re-usability as you can easily split project-specific files from those which can be used in other applications, but still serve them as a single file:

Listing 1-8

```
1 {% javascripts
2     '@AcmeFooBundle/Resources/public/js/*'
3     '@AcmeBarBundle/Resources/public/js/form.js'
4     '@AcmeBarBundle/Resources/public/js/calendar.js' %}
5     <script src="{{ asset_url }}"></script>
6 {% endjavascripts %}
```

In the `dev` environment, each file is still served individually, so that you can debug problems more easily. However, in the `prod` environment (or more specifically, when the `debug` flag is `false`), this will be rendered as a single `script` tag, which contains the contents of all of the JavaScript files.



If you're new to Assetic and try to use your application in the `prod` environment (by using the `app.php` controller), you'll likely see that all of your CSS and JS breaks. Don't worry! This is on purpose. For details on using Assetic in the `prod` environment, see *Dumping Asset Files*.

And combining files doesn't only apply to *your* files. You can also use Assetic to combine third party assets, such as jQuery, with your own into a single file:

Listing 1-9

```
1 {% javascripts
2     '@AcmeFooBundle/Resources/public/js/thirdparty/jquery.js'
3     '@AcmeFooBundle/Resources/public/js/*' %}
4     <script src="{{ asset_url }}"></script>
5 {% endjavascripts %}
```

Using Named Assets

AsseticBundle configuration directives allow you to define named asset sets. You can do so by defining the input files, filters and output files in your configuration under the **assetic** section. Read more in the *assetic config reference*.

Listing 1-10

```
1 # app/config/config.yml
2 assetic:
3     assets:
4         jquery_and_ui:
5             inputs:
6                 - '@AcmeFooBundle/Resources/public/js/thirdparty/jquery.js'
7                 - '@AcmeFooBundle/Resources/public/js/thirdparty/jquery.ui.js'
```

After you have defined the named assets, you can reference them in your templates with the **@named_asset** notation:

Listing 1-11

```
1 {% javascripts
2     '@jquery_and_ui'
3     '@AcmeFooBundle/Resources/public/js/*' %}
4     <script src="{{ asset_url }}"></script>
5 {% endjavascripts %}
```

Filters

Once they're managed by Assetic, you can apply filters to your assets before they are served. This includes filters that compress the output of your assets for smaller file sizes (and better front-end optimization). Other filters can compile JavaScript file from CoffeeScript files and process SASS into CSS. In fact, Assetic has a long list of available filters.

Many of the filters do not do the work directly, but use existing third-party libraries to do the heavy-lifting. This means that you'll often need to install a third-party library to use a filter. The great advantage of using Assetic to invoke these libraries (as opposed to using them directly) is that instead of having to run them manually after you work on the files, Assetic will take care of this for you and remove this step altogether from your development and deployment processes.

To use a filter, you first need to specify it in the Assetic configuration. Adding a filter here doesn't mean it's being used - it just means that it's available to use (you'll use the filter below).

For example to use the UglifyJS JavaScript minifier the following config should be added:

Listing 1-12

```
1 # app/config/config.yml
2 assetic:
3     filters:
```

```
4      uglifyjs2:
5      bin: /usr/local/bin/uglifyjs
```

Now, to actually *use* the filter on a group of JavaScript files, add it into your template:

Listing 1-13

```
1  {% javascripts '@AcmeFooBundle/Resources/public/js/*' filter='uglifyjs2' %}
2      <script src="{{ asset_url }}"></script>
3  {% endjavascripts %}
```

A more detailed guide about configuring and using Assetic filters as well as details of Assetic's debug mode can be found in *How to Minify CSS/JS Files (Using UglifyJS and UglifyCSS)*.

Controlling the URL Used

If you wish to, you can control the URLs that Assetic produces. This is done from the template and is relative to the public document root:

Listing 1-14

```
1  {% javascripts '@AcmeFooBundle/Resources/public/js/*' output='js/compiled/main.js' %}
2      <script src="{{ asset_url }}"></script>
3  {% endjavascripts %}
```



Symfony also contains a method for cache *busting*, where the final URL generated by Assetic contains a query parameter that can be incremented via configuration on each deployment. For more information, see the `assets_version` configuration option.

Dumping Asset Files

In the **dev** environment, Assetic generates paths to CSS and JavaScript files that don't physically exist on your computer. But they render nonetheless because an internal Symfony controller opens the files and serves back the content (after running any filters).

This kind of dynamic serving of processed assets is great because it means that you can immediately see the new state of any asset files you change. It's also bad, because it can be quite slow. If you're using a lot of filters, it might be downright frustrating.

Fortunately, Assetic provides a way to dump your assets to real files, instead of being generated dynamically.

Dumping Asset Files in the prod Environment

In the **prod** environment, your JS and CSS files are represented by a single tag each. In other words, instead of seeing each JavaScript file you're including in your source, you'll likely just see something like this:

Listing 1-15

```
1  <script src="/js/abcd123.js"></script>
```

Moreover, that file does **not** actually exist, nor is it dynamically rendered by Symfony (as the asset files are in the **dev** environment). This is on purpose - letting Symfony generate these files dynamically in a production environment is just too slow.

Instead, each time you use your app in the **prod** environment (and therefore, each time you deploy), you should run the following task:

```
Listing 1-16 1 $ php app/console assetic:dump --env=prod --no-debug
```

This will physically generate and write each file that you need (e.g. `/js/abcd123.js`). If you update any of your assets, you'll need to run this again to regenerate the file.

Dumping Asset Files in the dev Environment

By default, each asset path generated in the **dev** environment is handled dynamically by Symfony. This has no disadvantage (you can see your changes immediately), except that assets can load noticeably slow. If you feel like your assets are loading too slowly, follow this guide.

First, tell Symfony to stop trying to process these files dynamically. Make the following change in your `config_dev.yml` file:

```
Listing 1-17 1 # app/config/config_dev.yml
2 assetic:
3     use_controller: false
```

Next, since Symfony is no longer generating these assets for you, you'll need to dump them manually. To do so, run the following:

```
Listing 1-18 1 $ php app/console assetic:dump
```

This physically writes all of the asset files you need for your **dev** environment. The big disadvantage is that you need to run this each time you update an asset. Fortunately, by passing the `--watch` option, the command will automatically regenerate assets *as they change*:

```
Listing 1-19 1 $ php app/console assetic:dump --watch
```

Since running this command in the **dev** environment may generate a bunch of files, it's usually a good idea to point your generated assets files to some isolated directory (e.g. `/js/compiled`), to keep things organized:

```
Listing 1-20 1 {% javascripts '@AcmeFooBundle/Resources/public/js/*' output='js/compiled/main.js' %}
2     <script src="{ asset_url }"></script>
3 {% endjavascripts %}
```



Chapter 2

How to Minify CSS/JS Files (Using UglifyJS and UglifyCSS)

*UglifyJS*¹ is a JavaScript parser/compressor/beautifier toolkit. It can be used to combine and minify JavaScript assets so that they require less HTTP requests and make your site load faster. *UglifyCSS*² is a CSS compressor/beautifier that is very similar to UglifyJS.

In this cookbook, the installation, configuration and usage of UglifyJS is shown in detail. UglifyCSS works pretty much the same way and is only talked about briefly.

Install UglifyJS

UglifyJS is available as an *Node.js*³ npm module and can be installed using npm. First, you need to *install Node.js*⁴. Afterwards you can install UglifyJS using npm:

Listing 2-1 1 \$ npm install -g uglify-js

This command will install UglifyJS globally and you may need to run it as a root user.

1. <https://github.com/mishoo/UglifyJS>
2. <https://github.com/fmarcia/UglifyCSS>
3. <http://nodejs.org/>
4. <http://nodejs.org/>



It's also possible to install UglifyJS inside your project only. To do this, install it without the `-g` option and specify the path where to put the module:

Listing 2-2

```
1 $ cd /path/to/symfony
2 $ mkdir app/Resources/node_modules
3 $ npm install uglify-js --prefix app/Resources
```

It is recommended that you install UglifyJS in your `app/Resources` folder and add the `node_modules` folder to version control. Alternatively, you can create an npm `package.json`⁵ file and specify your dependencies there.

Depending on your installation method, you should either be able to execute the `uglifyjs` executable globally, or execute the physical file that lives in the `node_modules` directory:

Listing 2-3

```
1 $ uglifyjs --help
2
3 $ ./app/Resources/node_modules/.bin/uglifyjs --help
```

Configure the uglifyjs2 Filter

Now we need to configure Symfony to use the `uglifyjs2` filter when processing your JavaScripts:

Listing 2-4

```
1 # app/config/config.yml
2 assetic:
3     filters:
4         uglifyjs2:
5             # the path to the uglifyjs executable
6             bin: /usr/local/bin/uglifyjs
```



The path where UglifyJS is installed may vary depending on your system. To find out where npm stores the `bin` folder, you can use the following command:

Listing 2-5

```
1 $ npm bin -g
```

It should output a folder on your system, inside which you should find the UglifyJS executable.

If you installed UglifyJS locally, you can find the `bin` folder inside the `node_modules` folder. It's called `.bin` in this case.

You now have access to the `uglifyjs2` filter in your application.

Configure the node Binary

Assetic tries to find the node binary automatically. If it cannot be found, you can configure its location using the `node` key:

Listing 2-6

5. <http://package.json.nodejitsu.com/>

```

1 # app/config/config.yml
2 assetic:
3     # the path to the node executable
4     node: /usr/bin/nodejs
5     filters:
6         uglifyjs2:
7             # the path to the uglifyjs executable
8             bin: /usr/local/bin/uglifyjs

```

Minify your Assets

In order to use UglifyJS on your assets, you need to apply it to them. Since your assets are a part of the view layer, this work is done in your templates:

Listing 2-7

```

1 {% javascripts '@AcmeFooBundle/Resources/public/js/*' filter='uglifyjs2' %}
2     <script src="{{ asset_url }}"></script>
3 {% endjavascripts %}

```



The above example assumes that you have a bundle called **AcmeFooBundle** and your JavaScript files are in the **Resources/public/js** directory under your bundle. This isn't important however - you can include your JavaScript files no matter where they are.

With the addition of the **uglifyjs2** filter to the asset tags above, you should now see minified JavaScripts coming over the wire much faster.

Disable Minification in Debug Mode

Minified JavaScripts are very difficult to read, let alone debug. Because of this, Assetic lets you disable a certain filter when your application is in debug (e.g. **app_dev.php**) mode. You can do this by prefixing the filter name in your template with a question mark: **?**. This tells Assetic to only apply this filter when debug mode is off (e.g. **app.php**):

Listing 2-8

```

1 {% javascripts '@AcmeFooBundle/Resources/public/js/*' filter='?uglifyjs2' %}
2     <script src="{{ asset_url }}"></script>
3 {% endjavascripts %}

```

To try this out, switch to your **prod** environment (**app.php**). But before you do, don't forget to *clear your cache* and *dump your assetic assets*.



Instead of adding the filter to the asset tags, you can also globally enable it by adding the **apply_to** attribute to the filter configuration, for example in the **uglifyjs2** filter **apply_to: "\.js\$"**. To only have the filter applied in production, add this to the **config_prod** file rather than the common config file. For details on applying filters by file extension, see *Filtering Based on a File Extension*.

Install, Configure and Use UglifyCSS

The usage of UglifyCSS works the same way as UglifyJS. First, make sure the node package is installed:

Listing 2-9 1 `$ npm install -g uglifycss`

Next, add the configuration for this filter:

Listing 2-10 1 `# app/config/config.yml`
2 `assetic:`
3 `filters:`
4 `uglifycss:`
5 `bin: /usr/local/bin/uglifycss`

To use the filter for your CSS files, add the filter to the Assetic `stylesheets` helper:

Listing 2-11 1 `{% stylesheets 'bundles/AcmeFoo/css/*' filter='uglifycss' filter='cssrewrite' %}`
2 `<link rel="stylesheet" href="{{ asset_url }}" />`
3 `{% endstylesheets %}`

Just like with the `uglifyjs2` filter, if you prefix the filter name with `?` (i.e. `?uglifycss`), the minification will only happen when you're not in debug mode.



Chapter 3

How to Minify JavaScripts and Stylesheets with YUI Compressor

Yahoo! provides an excellent utility for minifying JavaScripts and stylesheets so they travel over the wire faster, the *YUI Compressor*¹. Thanks to Assetic, you can take advantage of this tool very easily.



The YUI Compressor is *no longer maintained by Yahoo*² but by an independent volunteer. Moreover, Yahoo has decided to *stop all new development on YUI*³ and to move to other modern alternatives such as Node.js.

That's why you are **strongly advised** to avoid using YUI utilities unless strictly necessary. Read *How to Minify CSS/JS Files (Using UglifyJS and UglifyCSS)* for a modern and up-to-date alternative.

Download the YUI Compressor JAR

The YUI Compressor is written in Java and distributed as a JAR. *Download the JAR*⁴ from the Yahoo! site and save it to `app/Resources/java/yuicompressor.jar`.

Configure the YUI Filters

Now you need to configure two Assetic filters in your application, one for minifying JavaScripts with the YUI Compressor and one for minifying stylesheets:

Listing 3-1

```
1 # app/config/config.yml
2 assetic:
```

1. <http://developer.yahoo.com/yui/compressor/>
2. <http://www.yuiblog.com/blog/2013/01/24/yui-compressor-has-a-new-owner/>
3. <http://yahooeng.tumblr.com/post/96098168666/important-announcement-regarding-yui>
4. <https://github.com/yui/yuicompressor/releases>


```

3   # java: "/usr/bin/java"
4   filters:
5     yui_css:
6       jar: "%kernel.root_dir%/Resources/java/yuicompressor.jar"
7     yui_js:
8       jar: "%kernel.root_dir%/Resources/java/yuicompressor.jar"

```



Windows users need to remember to update config to proper Java location. In Windows7 x64 bit by default it's C:\Program Files (x86)\Java\jre6\bin\java.exe.

You now have access to two new Assetic filters in your application: `yui_css` and `yui_js`. These will use the YUI Compressor to minify stylesheets and JavaScripts, respectively.

Minify your Assets

You have YUI Compressor configured now, but nothing is going to happen until you apply one of these filters to an asset. Since your assets are a part of the view layer, this work is done in your templates:

Listing 3-2

```

1  {% javascripts '@AcmeFooBundle/Resources/public/js/*' filter='yui_js' %}
2    <script src="{{ asset_url }}"></script>
3  {% endjavascripts %}

```



The above example assumes that you have a bundle called `AcmeFooBundle` and your JavaScript files are in the `Resources/public/js` directory under your bundle. This isn't important however - you can include your JavaScript files no matter where they are.

With the addition of the `yui_js` filter to the asset tags above, you should now see minified JavaScripts coming over the wire much faster. The same process can be repeated to minify your stylesheets.

Listing 3-3

```

1  {% stylesheets '@AcmeFooBundle/Resources/public/css/*' filter='yui_css' %}
2    <link rel="stylesheet" type="text/css" media="screen" href="{{ asset_url }}" />
3  {% endstylesheets %}

```

Disable Minification in Debug Mode

Minified JavaScripts and Stylesheets are very difficult to read, let alone debug. Because of this, Assetic lets you disable a certain filter when your application is in debug mode. You can do this by prefixing the filter name in your template with a question mark: `?`. This tells Assetic to only apply this filter when debug mode is off.

Listing 3-4

```

1  {% javascripts '@AcmeFooBundle/Resources/public/js/*' filter='?yui_js' %}
2    <script src="{{ asset_url }}"></script>
3  {% endjavascripts %}

```



Instead of adding the filter to the asset tags, you can also globally enable it by adding the **apply_to** attribute to the filter configuration, for example in the **yui_js** filter **apply_to: "\.js\$"**. To only have the filter applied in production, add this to the **config_prod** file rather than the common config file. For details on applying filters by file extension, see *Filtering Based on a File Extension*.



Chapter 4

How to Use Assetic for Image Optimization with Twig Functions

Amongst its many filters, Assetic has four filters which can be used for on-the-fly image optimization. This allows you to get the benefits of smaller file sizes without having to use an image editor to process each image. The results are cached and can be dumped for production so there is no performance hit for your end users.

Using Jpegoptim

*Jpegoptim*¹ is a utility for optimizing JPEG files. To use it with Assetic, add the following to the Assetic config:

Listing 4-1

```
1 # app/config/config.yml
2 assetic:
3     filters:
4         jpegoptim:
5             bin: path/to/jpegoptim
```



Notice that to use jpegoptim, you must have it already installed on your system. The **bin** option points to the location of the compiled binary.

It can now be used from a template:

Listing 4-2

```
1 {% image '@AcmeFooBundle/Resources/public/images/example.jpg'
2     filter='jpegoptim' output='/images/example.jpg' %}
3 
4 {% endimage %}
```

1. <http://www.kokkonen.net/tjko/projects.html>

Removing all EXIF Data

By default, running this filter only removes some of the meta information stored in the file. Any EXIF data and comments are not removed, but you can remove these by using the `strip_all` option:

Listing 4-3

```
1 # app/config/config.yml
2 assetic:
3     filters:
4         jpegoptim:
5             bin: path/to/jpegoptim
6             strip_all: true
```

Lowering maximum Quality

The quality level of the JPEG is not affected by default. You can gain further file size reductions by setting the max quality setting lower than the current level of the images. This will of course be at the expense of image quality:

Listing 4-4

```
1 # app/config/config.yml
2 assetic:
3     filters:
4         jpegoptim:
5             bin: path/to/jpegoptim
6             max: 70
```

Shorter Syntax: Twig Function

If you're using Twig, it's possible to achieve all of this with a shorter syntax by enabling and using a special Twig function. Start by adding the following config:

Listing 4-5

```
1 # app/config/config.yml
2 assetic:
3     filters:
4         jpegoptim:
5             bin: path/to/jpegoptim
6     twig:
7         functions:
8             jpegoptim: ~
```

The Twig template can now be changed to the following:

Listing 4-6

```
1 
```

You can specify the output directory in the config in the following way:

Listing 4-7

```
1 # app/config/config.yml
2 assetic:
3     filters:
4         jpegoptim:
5             bin: path/to/jpegoptim
6     twig:
```

```
7     functions:
8         jpegoptim: { output: images/*.jpg }
```



Chapter 5

How to Apply an Assetic Filter to a specific File Extension

Assetic filters can be applied to individual files, groups of files or even, as you'll see here, files that have a specific extension. To show you how to handle each option, suppose that you want to use Assetic's CoffeeScript filter, which compiles CoffeeScript files into JavaScript.

The main configuration is just the paths to coffee, node and node_modules. An example configuration might look like this:

Listing 5-1

```
1 # app/config/config.yml
2 assetic:
3   filters:
4     coffee:
5       bin:      /usr/bin/coffee
6       node:     /usr/bin/node
7       node_paths: [/usr/lib/node_modules/]
```

Filter a single File

You can now serve up a single CoffeeScript file as JavaScript from within your templates:

Listing 5-2

```
1 {% javascripts '@AcmeFooBundle/Resources/public/js/example.coffee' filter='coffee' %}
2   <script src="{{ asset_url }}" type="text/javascript"></script>
3 {% endjavascripts %}
```

This is all that's needed to compile this CoffeeScript file and serve it as the compiled JavaScript.

Filter multiple Files

You can also combine multiple CoffeeScript files into a single output file:

Listing 5-3

```
1 {% javascripts '@AcmeFooBundle/Resources/public/js/example.coffee'
2               '@AcmeFooBundle/Resources/public/js/another.coffee'
3       filter='coffee' %}
4     <script src="{ asset_url }" type="text/javascript"></script>
5 {% endjavascripts %}
```

Both the files will now be served up as a single file compiled into regular JavaScript.

Filtering Based on a File Extension

One of the great advantages of using Assetic is reducing the number of asset files to lower HTTP requests. In order to make full use of this, it would be good to combine *all* your JavaScript and CoffeeScript files together since they will ultimately all be served as JavaScript. Unfortunately just adding the JavaScript files to the files to be combined as above will not work as the regular JavaScript files will not survive the CoffeeScript compilation.

This problem can be avoided by using the `apply_to` option in the config, which allows you to specify that a filter should always be applied to particular file extensions. In this case you can specify that the `coffee` filter is applied to all `.coffee` files:

Listing 5-4

```
# app/config/config.yml
assetic:
  filters:
    coffee:
      bin:      /usr/bin/coffee
      node:     /usr/bin/node
      node_paths: [/usr/lib/node_modules/]
      apply_to: "\.coffee$"
```

With this, you no longer need to specify the `coffee` filter in the template. You can also list regular JavaScript files, all of which will be combined and rendered as a single JavaScript file (with only the `.coffee` files being run through the CoffeeScript filter):

Listing 5-5

```
1 {% javascripts '@AcmeFooBundle/Resources/public/js/example.coffee'
2               '@AcmeFooBundle/Resources/public/js/another.coffee'
3               '@AcmeFooBundle/Resources/public/js/regular.js' %}
4     <script src="{ asset_url }" type="text/javascript"></script>
5 {% endjavascripts %}
```



Chapter 6

How to Install 3rd Party Bundles

Most bundles provide their own installation instructions. However, the basic steps for installing a bundle are the same:

- A) Add Composer Dependencies
- B) Enable the Bundle
- C) Configure the Bundle

A) Add Composer Dependencies

Dependencies are managed with Composer, so if Composer is new to you, learn some basics in *their documentation*¹. This has 2 steps:

1) Find out the Name of the Bundle on Packagist

The README for a bundle (e.g. *FOSUserBundle*²) usually tells you its name (e.g. `friendsofsymfony/user-bundle`). If it doesn't, you can search for the library on the *Packagist.org*³ site.



Looking for bundles? Try searching at *KnjBundles.com*⁴: the unofficial archive of Symfony Bundles.

2) Install the Bundle via Composer

Now that you know the package name, you can install it via Composer:

1. <http://getcomposer.org/doc/00-intro.md>
2. <https://github.com/FriendsOfSymfony/FOSUserBundle>
3. <https://packagist.org>
4. <http://knjbundles.com/>

Listing 6-1 1 \$ php composer.phar require friendsofsymfony/user-bundle

This will choose the best version for your project, add it to `composer.json` and download the library into the `vendor/` directory. If you need a specific version, add a `:` and the version right after the library name (see *composer require*⁵).

B) Enable the Bundle

At this point, the bundle is installed in your Symfony project (in `vendor/friendsofsymfony/`) and the autoloader recognizes its classes. The only thing you need to do now is register the bundle in `AppKernel`:

Listing 6-2

```
1 // app/AppKernel.php
2
3 // ...
4 class AppKernel extends Kernel
5 {
6     // ...
7
8     public function registerBundles()
9     {
10         $bundles = array(
11             // ...,
12             new FOS\UserBundle\FOSUserBundle(),
13         );
14
15         // ...
16     }
17 }
```

C) Configure the Bundle

It's pretty common for a bundle to need some additional setup or configuration in `app/config/config.yml`. The bundle's documentation will tell you about the configuration, but you can also get a reference of the bundle's config via the `config:dump-reference` command.

For instance, in order to look the reference of the `assetic` config you can use this:

Listing 6-3 1 \$ php/console config:dump-reference AsseticBundle

or this:

Listing 6-4 1 \$ php/console config:dump-reference assetic

The output will look like this:

Listing 6-5

```
1 assetic:
2     debug:                %kernel.debug%
```

5. <https://getcomposer.org/doc/03-cli.md#require>

```
3   use_controller:
4       enabled:          %kernel.debug%
5       profiler:         false
6   read_from:           %kernel.root_dir%../web
7   write_to:             %assetic.read_from%
8   java:                /usr/bin/java
9   node:                 /usr/local/bin/node
10  node_paths:           []
11  # ...
```

Other Setup

At this point, check the **README** file of your brand new bundle to see what to do next. Have fun!



Chapter 7

Best Practices for Reusable Bundles

There are 2 types of bundles:

- Application-specific bundles: only used to build your application;
- Reusable bundles: meant to be shared across many projects.

This article is all about how to structure your **reusable bundles** so that they're easy to configure and extend. Many of these recommendations do not apply to application bundles because you'll want to keep those as simple as possible. For application bundles, just follow the practices shown throughout the book and cookbook.

The best practices for application-specific bundles are discussed in [The Symfony Framework Best Practices](#).

Bundle Name

A bundle is also a PHP namespace. The namespace must follow the technical interoperability *standards*¹ for PHP 5.3 namespaces and class names: it starts with a vendor segment, followed by zero or more category segments, and it ends with the namespace short name, which must end with a **Bundle** suffix.

A namespace becomes a bundle as soon as you add a bundle class to it. The bundle class name must follow these simple rules:

- Use only alphanumeric characters and underscores;
- Use a CamelCased name;
- Use a descriptive and short name (no more than 2 words);
- Prefix the name with the concatenation of the vendor (and optionally the category namespaces);
- Suffix the name with **Bundle**.

Here are some valid bundle namespaces and class names:

1. <http://www.php-fig.org/psr/psr-0/>

Namespace	Bundle Class Name
Acme\Bundle\BlogBundle	AcmeBlogBundle
Acme\Bundle\Social\BlogBundle	AcmeSocialBlogBundle
Acme\BlogBundle	AcmeBlogBundle

By convention, the `getName()` method of the bundle class should return the class name.



If you share your bundle publicly, you must use the bundle class name as the name of the repository (`AcmeBlogBundle` and not `BlogBundle` for instance).



Symfony2 core Bundles do not prefix the Bundle class with **Symfony** and always add a **Bundle** sub-namespace; for example: *FrameworkBundle*².

Each bundle has an alias, which is the lower-cased short version of the bundle name using underscores (`acme_hello` for `AcmeHelloBundle`, or `acme_social_blog` for `Acme\Social\BlogBundle` for instance). This alias is used to enforce uniqueness within a bundle (see below for some usage examples).

Directory Structure

The basic directory structure of a `HelloBundle` bundle must read as follows:

Listing 7-1

```

1  XXX/...
2      HelloBundle/
3          HelloBundle.php
4          Controller/
5          Resources/
6              meta/
7                  LICENSE
8              config/
9              doc/
10                 index.rst
11                 translations/
12                 views/
13                 public/
14             Tests/
```

The `XXX` directory(ies) reflects the namespace structure of the bundle.

The following files are mandatory:

- `HelloBundle.php`;
- `Resources/meta/LICENSE`: The full license for the code;
- `Resources/doc/index.rst`: The root file for the Bundle documentation.



These conventions ensure that automated tools can rely on this default structure to work.

2. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Bundle/FrameworkBundle/FrameworkBundle.html>

The depth of sub-directories should be kept to the minimal for most used classes and files (2 levels at a maximum). More levels can be defined for non-strategic, less-used files.

The bundle directory is read-only. If you need to write temporary files, store them under the **cache/** or **log/** directory of the host application. Tools can generate files in the bundle directory structure, but only if the generated files are going to be part of the repository.

The following classes and files have specific emplacements:

Type	Directory
Commands	Command/
Controllers	Controller/
Service Container Extensions	DependencyInjection/
Event Listeners	EventListener/
Configuration	Resources/config/
Web Resources	Resources/public/
Translation files	Resources/translations/
Templates	Resources/views/
Unit and Functional Tests	Tests/



When building a reusable bundle, model classes should be placed in the **Model** namespace. See *How to Provide Model Classes for several Doctrine Implementations* for how to handle the mapping with a compiler pass.

Classes

The bundle directory structure is used as the namespace hierarchy. For instance, a **HelloController** controller is stored in **Bundle/HelloBundle/Controller/HelloController.php** and the fully qualified class name is **Bundle\HelloBundle\Controller\HelloController**.

All classes and files must follow the Symfony2 coding *standards*.

Some classes should be seen as facades and should be as short as possible, like Commands, Helpers, Listeners, and Controllers.

Classes that connect to the event dispatcher should be suffixed with **Listener**.

Exceptions classes should be stored in an **Exception** sub-namespace.

Vendors

A bundle must not embed third-party PHP libraries. It should rely on the standard Symfony2 autoloading instead.

A bundle should not embed third-party libraries written in JavaScript, CSS, or any other language.

Tests

A bundle should come with a test suite written with PHPUnit and stored under the `Tests/` directory. Tests should follow the following principles:

- The test suite must be executable with a simple `phpunit` command run from a sample application;
- The functional tests should only be used to test the response output and some profiling information if you have some;
- The tests should cover at least 95% of the code base.



A test suite must not contain `AllTests.php` scripts, but must rely on the existence of a `phpunit.xml.dist` file.

Documentation

All classes and functions must come with full PHPDoc.

Extensive documentation should also be provided in the *reStructuredText* format, under the `Resources/doc/` directory; the `Resources/doc/index.rst` file is the only mandatory file and must be the entry point for the documentation.

Installation Instructions

In order to ease the installation of third-party bundles, consider using the following standardized instructions in your `README.md` file.

Listing 7-2

```
1  Installation
2  =====
3
4  Step 1: Download the Bundle
5  -----
6
7  Open a command console, enter your project directory and execute the
8  following command to download the latest stable version of this bundle:
9
10 ```bash
11 $ composer require <package-name> "~1"
12 ```
13
14 This command requires you to have Composer installed globally, as explained
15 in the [installation chapter](https://getcomposer.org/doc/00-intro.md)
16 of the Composer documentation.
17
18 Step 2: Enable the Bundle
19 -----
20
21 Then, enable the bundle by adding the following line in the `app/AppKernel.php`
22 file of your project:
23
24 ```php
25 <?php
26 // app/AppKernel.php
```

```

27
28 // ...
29 class AppKernel extends Kernel
30 {
31     public function registerBundles()
32     {
33         $bundles = array(
34             // ...
35
36             new <vendor>\<bundle-name>\<bundle-long-name>(),
37         );
38
39         // ...
40     }
41
42     // ...
43 }
44 ...

```

This template assumes that your bundle is in its **1.x** version. If not, change the "**~1**" installation version accordingly ("**~2**", "**~3**", etc.)

Optionally, you can add more installation steps (*Step 3*, *Step 4*, etc.) to explain other required installation tasks, such as registering routes or dumping assets.

Routing

If the bundle provides routes, they must be prefixed with the bundle alias. For an `AcmeBlogBundle` for instance, all routes must be prefixed with `acme_blog_`.

Templates

If a bundle provides templates, they must use Twig. A bundle must not provide a main layout, except if it provides a full working application.

Translation Files

If a bundle provides message translations, they must be defined in the XLIFF format; the domain should be named after the bundle name (`bundle.hello`).

A bundle must not override existing messages from another bundle.

Configuration

To provide more flexibility, a bundle can provide configurable settings by using the Symfony2 built-in mechanisms.

For simple configuration settings, rely on the default `parameters` entry of the Symfony2 configuration. Symfony2 parameters are simple key/value pairs; a value being any valid PHP value. Each parameter name should start with the bundle alias, though this is just a best-practice suggestion. The rest of the parameter name will use a period (.) to separate different parts (e.g. `acme_hello.email.from`).

The end user can provide values in any configuration file:

Listing 7-3

```

1 # app/config/config.yml
2 parameters:
3     acme_hello.email.from: fabien@example.com

```

Retrieve the configuration parameters in your code from the container:

Listing 7-4

```

1 $container->getParameter('acme_hello.email.from');

```

Even if this mechanism is simple enough, you are highly encouraged to use the semantic configuration described in the cookbook.



If you are defining services, they should also be prefixed with the bundle alias.

Custom Validation Constraints

Starting with Symfony 2.5, a new Validation API was introduced. In fact, there are 3 modes, which the user can configure in their project:

- 2.4: the original 2.4 and earlier validation API;
- 2.5: the new 2.5 and later validation API;
- 2.5-BC: the new 2.5 API with a backwards-compatible layer so that the 2.4 API still works. This is only available in PHP 5.3.9+.

As a bundle author, you'll want to support *both* API's, since some users may still be using the 2.4 API. Specifically, if your bundle adds a violation directly to the *ExecutionContext*³ (e.g. like in a custom validation constraint), you'll need to check for which API is being used. The following code, would work for *all* users:

Listing 7-5

```

1 use Symfony\Component\Validator\ConstraintValidator;
2 use Symfony\Component\Validator\Constraint;
3 use Symfony\Component\Validator\Context\ExecutionContextInterface;
4 // ...
5
6 class ContainsAlphanumericValidator extends ConstraintValidator
7 {
8     public function validate($value, Constraint $constraint)
9     {
10         if ($this->context instanceof ExecutionContextInterface) {
11             // the 2.5 API
12             $this->context->buildViolation($constraint->message)
13                 ->setParameter('%string%', $value)
14                 ->addViolation();
15         }
16         else {
17             // the 2.4 API
18             $this->context->addViolation(
19                 $constraint->message,
20                 array('%string%' => $value)
21             );
22         }
23     }
24 }

```

3. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Validator/Context/ExecutionContext.html>


```
22     }  
23 }  
24 }
```

Learn more from the Cookbook

- *How to Load Service Configuration inside a Bundle*



Chapter 8

How to Use Bundle Inheritance to Override Parts of a Bundle

When working with third-party bundles, you'll probably come across a situation where you want to override a file in that third-party bundle with a file in one of your own bundles. Symfony gives you a very convenient way to override things like controllers, templates, and other files in a bundle's **Resources/** directory.

For example, suppose that you're installing the *FOSUserBundle*¹, but you want to override its base `layout.html.twig` template, as well as one of its controllers. Suppose also that you have your own *AcmeUserBundle* where you want the overridden files to live. Start by registering the *FOSUserBundle* as the "parent" of your bundle:

Listing 8-1

```
1 // src/Acme/UserBundle/AcmeUserBundle.php
2 namespace Acme\UserBundle;
3
4 use Symfony\Component\HttpKernel\Bundle\Bundle;
5
6 class AcmeUserBundle extends Bundle
7 {
8     public function getParent()
9     {
10         return 'FOSUserBundle';
11     }
12 }
```

By making this simple change, you can now override several parts of the *FOSUserBundle* simply by creating a file with the same name.



Despite the method name, there is no parent/child relationship between the bundles, it is just a way to extend and override an existing bundle.

1. <https://github.com/friendsofsymfony/fosuserbundle>

Overriding Controllers

Suppose you want to add some functionality to the `registerAction` of a `RegistrationController` that lives inside `FOSUserBundle`. To do so, just create your own `RegistrationController.php` file, override the bundle's original method, and change its functionality:

Listing 8-2

```
1 // src/Acme/UserBundle/Controller/RegistrationController.php
2 namespace Acme\UserBundle\Controller;
3
4 use FOS\UserBundle\Controller\RegistrationController as BaseController;
5
6 class RegistrationController extends BaseController
7 {
8     public function registerAction()
9     {
10         $response = parent::registerAction();
11
12         // ... do custom stuff
13         return $response;
14     }
15 }
```



Depending on how severely you need to change the behavior, you might call `parent::registerAction()` or completely replace its logic with your own.



Overriding controllers in this way only works if the bundle refers to the controller using the standard `FOSUserBundle:Registration:register` syntax in routes and templates. This is the best practice.

Overriding Resources: Templates, Routing, etc

Most resources can also be overridden, simply by creating a file in the same location as your parent bundle.

For example, it's very common to need to override the `FOSUserBundle`'s `layout.html.twig` template so that it uses your application's base layout. Since the file lives at `Resources/views/layout.html.twig` in the `FOSUserBundle`, you can create your own file in the same location of `AcmeUserBundle`. Symfony will ignore the file that lives inside the `FOSUserBundle` entirely, and use your file instead.

The same goes for routing files and some other resources.



The overriding of resources only works when you refer to resources with the `@FosUserBundle/Resources/config/routing/security.xml` method. If you refer to resources without using the `@BundleName` shortcut, they can't be overridden in this way.



Translation and validation files do not work in the same way as described above. Read "[Translations](#)" if you want to learn how to override translations and see "[Validation Metadata](#)" for tricks to override the validation.



Chapter 9

How to Override any Part of a Bundle

This document is a quick reference for how to override different parts of third-party bundles.

Templates

For information on overriding templates, see

- *Overriding Bundle Templates.*
- *How to Use Bundle Inheritance to Override Parts of a Bundle*

Routing

Routing is never automatically imported in Symfony2. If you want to include the routes from any bundle, then they must be manually imported from somewhere in your application (e.g. `app/config/routing.yml`).

The easiest way to "override" a bundle's routing is to never import it at all. Instead of importing a third-party bundle's routing, simply copying that routing file into your application, modify it, and import it instead.

Controllers

Assuming the third-party bundle involved uses non-service controllers (which is almost always the case), you can easily override controllers via bundle inheritance. For more information, see *How to Use Bundle Inheritance to Override Parts of a Bundle*. If the controller is a service, see the next section on how to override it.

Services & Configuration

In order to override/extend a service, there are two options. First, you can set the parameter holding the service's class name to your own class by setting it in `app/config/config.yml`. This of course is only possible if the class name is defined as a parameter in the service config of the bundle containing the service. For example, to override the class used for Symfony's `translator` service, you would override the `translator.class` parameter. Knowing exactly which parameter to override may take some research. For the translator, the parameter is defined and used in the `Resources/config/translation.xml` file in the core FrameworkBundle:

Listing 9-1

```
1 # app/config/config.yml
2 parameters:
3     translator.class: Acme\HelloBundle\Translation\Translator
```

Secondly, if the class is not available as a parameter, you want to make sure the class is always overridden when your bundle is used, or you need to modify something beyond just the class name, you should use a compiler pass:

Listing 9-2

```
1 // src/Acme/DemoBundle/DependencyInjection/Compiler/OverrideServiceCompilerPass.php
2 namespace Acme\DemoBundle\DependencyInjection\Compiler;
3
4 use Symfony\Component\DependencyInjection\Compiler\CompilerPassInterface;
5 use Symfony\Component\DependencyInjection\ContainerBuilder;
6
7 class OverrideServiceCompilerPass implements CompilerPassInterface
8 {
9     public function process(ContainerBuilder $container)
10    {
11        $definition = $container->getDefinition('original-service-id');
12        $definition->setClass('Acme\DemoBundle\YourService');
13    }
14 }
```

In this example you fetch the service definition of the original service, and set its class name to your own class.

See *How to Work with Compiler Passes in Bundles* for information on how to use compiler passes. If you want to do something beyond just overriding the class - like adding a method call - you can only use the compiler pass method.

Entities & Entity Mapping

Due to the way Doctrine works, it is not possible to override entity mapping of a bundle. However, if a bundle provides a mapped superclass (such as the `User` entity in the `FOSUserBundle`) one can override attributes and associations. Learn more about this feature and its limitations in *the Doctrine documentation*¹.

Forms

In order to override a form type, it has to be registered as a service (meaning it is tagged as "form.type"). You can then override it as you would override any service as explained in Services & Configuration. This, of course, will only work if the type is referred to by its alias rather than being instantiated, e.g.:

1. <http://docs.doctrine-project.org/projects/doctrine-orm/en/latest/reference/inheritance-mapping.html#overrides>

Listing 9-3 1 `$builder->add('name', 'custom_type');`

rather than:

Listing 9-4 1 `$builder->add('name', new CustomType());`

Validation Metadata

Symfony loads all validation configuration files from every bundle and combines them into one validation metadata tree. This means you are able to add new constraints to a property, but you cannot override them.

To override this, the 3rd party bundle needs to have configuration for *validation groups*. For instance, the FOSUserBundle has this configuration. To create your own validation, add the constraints to a new validation group:

Listing 9-5

```
1  # src/Acme/UserBundle/Resources/config/validation.yml
2  Fos\UserBundle\Model\User:
3      properties:
4          plainPassword:
5              - NotBlank:
6                  groups: [AcmeValidation]
7              - Length:
8                  min: 6
9                  minMessage: fos_user.password.short
10                 groups: [AcmeValidation]
```

Now, update the FOSUserBundle configuration, so it uses your validation groups instead of the original ones.

Translations

Translations are not related to bundles, but to domains. That means that you can override the translations from any translation file, as long as it is in *the correct domain*.



The last translation file always wins. That means that you need to make sure that the bundle containing *your* translations is loaded after any bundle whose translations you're overriding. This is done in `AppKernel`.

The file that always wins is the one that is placed in `app/Resources/translations`, as those files are always loaded last.



Chapter 10

How to Remove the AcmeDemoBundle

The Symfony2 Standard Edition comes with a complete demo that lives inside a bundle called AcmeDemoBundle. It is a great boilerplate to refer to while starting a project, but you'll probably want to eventually remove it.



This article uses the AcmeDemoBundle as an example, but you can use these steps to remove any bundle.

1. Unregister the Bundle in the AppKernel

To disconnect the bundle from the framework, you should remove the bundle from the `AppKernel::registerBundles()` method. The bundle is normally found in the `$bundles` array but the AcmeDemoBundle is only registered in the development environment and you can find it inside the if statement below:

Listing 10-1

```
1  // app/AppKernel.php
2
3  // ...
4  class AppKernel extends Kernel
5  {
6      public function registerBundles()
7      {
8          $bundles = array(...);
9
10         if (in_array($this->getEnvironment(), array('dev', 'test'))) {
11             // comment or remove this line:
12             // $bundles[] = new Acme\DemoBundle\AcmeDemoBundle();
13             // ...
14         }
15     }
16 }
```

2. Remove Bundle Configuration

Now that Symfony doesn't know about the bundle, you need to remove any configuration and routing configuration inside the `app/config` directory that refers to the bundle.

2.1 Remove Bundle Routing

The routing for the `AcmeDemoBundle` can be found in `app/config/routing_dev.yml`. Remove the `_acme_demo` entry at the bottom of this file.

2.2 Remove Bundle Configuration

Some bundles contain configuration in one of the `app/config/config*.yml` files. Be sure to remove the related configuration from these files. You can quickly spot bundle configuration by looking for a `acme_demo` (or whatever the name of the bundle is, e.g. `fos_user` for the `FOSUserBundle`) string in the configuration files.

The `AcmeDemoBundle` doesn't have configuration. However, the bundle is used in the configuration for the `app/config/security.yml` file. You can use it as a boilerplate for your own security, but you **can** also remove everything: it doesn't matter to Symfony if you remove it or not.

3. Remove the Bundle from the Filesystem

Now you have removed every reference to the bundle in your application, you should remove the bundle from the filesystem. The bundle is located in the `src/Acme/DemoBundle` directory. You should remove this directory and you can remove the `Acme` directory as well.



If you don't know the location of a bundle, you can use the `getPath()`¹ method to get the path of the bundle:

Listing 10-2 1 `echo $this->container->get('kernel')->getBundle('AcmeDemoBundle')->getPath();`

3.1 Remove Bundle Assets

Remove the assets of the bundle in the `web/` directory (e.g. `web/bundles/acmedemo` for the `AcmeDemoBundle`).

4. Remove Integration in other Bundles



This doesn't apply to the `AcmeDemoBundle` - no other bundles depend on it, so you can skip this step.

Some bundles rely on other bundles, if you remove one of the two, the other will probably not work. Be sure that no other bundles, third party or self-made, rely on the bundle you are about to remove.

1. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpKernel/Bundle/BundleInterface.html#getPath\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpKernel/Bundle/BundleInterface.html#getPath())



If one bundle relies on another, in most cases it means that it uses some services from the bundle. Searching for the bundle alias string may help you spot them (e.g. `acme_demo` for bundles depending on `AcmeDemoBundle`).



If a third party bundle relies on another bundle, you can find that bundle mentioned in the `composer.json` file included in the bundle directory.



Chapter 11

How to Load Service Configuration inside a Bundle

In Symfony, you'll find yourself using many services. These services can be registered in the *app/config* directory of your application. But when you want to decouple the bundle for use in other projects, you want to include the service configuration in the bundle itself. This article will teach you how to do that.

Creating an Extension Class

In order to load service configuration, you have to create a Dependency Injection Extension for your bundle. This class has some conventions in order to be detected automatically. But you'll later see how you can change it to your own preferences. By default, the Extension has to comply with the following conventions:

- It has to live in the `DependencyInjection` namespace of the bundle;
- The name is equal to the bundle name with the `Bundle` suffix replaced by `Extension` (e.g. the Extension class of `AcmeHelloBundle` would be called `AcmeHelloExtension`).

The Extension class should implement the *ExtensionInterface*¹, but usually you would simply extend the *Extension*² class:

Listing 11-1

```
1 // src/Acme/HelloBundle/DependencyInjection/AcmeHelloExtension.php
2 namespace Acme\HelloBundle\DependencyInjection;
3
4 use Symfony\Component\HttpKernel\DependencyInjection\Extension;
5 use Symfony\Component\DependencyInjection\ContainerBuilder;
6
7 class AcmeHelloExtension extends Extension
8 {
9     public function load(array $configs, ContainerBuilder $container)
```

1. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/DependencyInjection/Extension/ExtensionInterface.html>

2. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/DependencyInjection/Extension/Extension.html>

```

10     {
11         // ... you'll load the files here later
12     }
13 }

```

Manually Registering an Extension Class

When not following the conventions, you will have to manually register your extension. To do this, you should override the `Bundle::getContainerExtension()`³ method to return the instance of the extension:

Listing 11-2

```

1 // ...
2 use Acme\HelloBundle\DependencyInjection\UnconventionalExtensionClass;
3
4 class AcmeHelloBundle extends Bundle
5 {
6     public function getContainerExtension()
7     {
8         return new UnconventionalExtensionClass();
9     }
10 }

```

Since the new Extension class name doesn't follow the naming conventions, you should also override `Extension::getAlias()`⁴ to return the correct DI alias. The DI alias is the name used to refer to the bundle in the container (e.g. in the `app/config/config.yml` file). By default, this is done by removing the `Extension` prefix and converting the class name to underscores (e.g. `AcmeHelloExtension`'s DI alias is `acme_hello`).

Using the `load()` Method

In the `load()` method, all services and parameters related to this extension will be loaded. This method doesn't get the actual container instance, but a copy. This container only has the parameters from the actual container. After loading the services and parameters, the copy will be merged into the actual container, to ensure all services and parameters are also added to the actual container.

In the `load()` method, you can use PHP code to register service definitions, but it is more common if you put these definitions in a configuration file (using the Yaml, XML or PHP format). Luckily, you can use the file loaders in the extension!

For instance, assume you have a file called `services.xml` in the `Resources/config` directory of your bundle, your `load` method looks like:

Listing 11-3

```

1 use Symfony\Component\DependencyInjection\Loader\XmlFileLoader;
2 use Symfony\Component\Config\FileLocator;
3
4 // ...
5 public function load(array $configs, ContainerBuilder $container)
6 {
7     $loader = new XmlFileLoader(
8         $container,
9         new FileLocator(__DIR__.'/../Resources/config')
10     );
11 }

```

3. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpKernel/Bundle/Bundle.html#build\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpKernel/Bundle/Bundle.html#build())

4. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/DependencyInjection/Extension/Extension.html#getAlias\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/DependencyInjection/Extension/Extension.html#getAlias())

```
10     );  
11     $loader->load('services.xml');  
12 }
```

Other available loaders are the `YamlFileLoader`, `PhpFileLoader` and `IniFileLoader`.



The `IniFileLoader` can only be used to load parameters and it can only load them as strings.

Using Configuration to Change the Services

The `Extension` is also the class that handles the configuration for that particular bundle (e.g. the configuration in `app/config/config.yml`). To read more about it, see the "*How to Create Friendly Configuration for a Bundle*" article.



Chapter 12

How to Create Friendly Configuration for a Bundle

If you open your application configuration file (usually `app/config/config.yml`), you'll see a number of different configuration "namespaces", such as `framework`, `twig` and `doctrine`. Each of these configures a specific bundle, allowing you to configure things at a high level and then let the bundle make all the low-level, complex changes based on your settings.

For example, the following tells the FrameworkBundle to enable the form integration, which involves the definition of quite a few services as well as integration of other related components:

Listing 12-1

```
1 framework:
2     form: true
```



Using Parameters to Configure your Bundle

If you don't have plans to share your bundle between projects, it doesn't make sense to use this more advanced way of configuration. Since you use the bundle only in one project, you can just change the service configuration each time.

If you *do* want to be able to configure something from within `config.yml`, you can always create a parameter there and use that parameter somewhere else.

Using the Bundle Extension

The basic idea is that instead of having the user override individual parameters, you let the user configure just a few, specifically created, options. As the bundle developer, you then parse through that configuration and load correct services and parameters inside an "Extension" class.

As an example, imagine you are creating a social bundle, which provides integration with Twitter and such. To be able to reuse your bundle, you have to make the `client_id` and `client_secret` variables configurable. Your bundle configuration would look like:

Listing 12-2

```
1 # app/config/config.yml
2 acme_social:
3     twitter:
4         client_id: 123
5         client_secret: $secret
```

Read more about the extension in *How to Load Service Configuration inside a Bundle*.



If a bundle provides an Extension class, then you should *not* generally override any service container parameters from that bundle. The idea is that if an Extension class is present, every setting that should be configurable should be present in the configuration made available by that class. In other words, the extension class defines all the public configuration settings for which backward compatibility will be maintained.

For parameter handling within a Dependency Injection class see *Using Parameters within a Dependency Injection Class*.

Processing the \$configs Array

First things first, you have to create an extension class as explained in *How to Load Service Configuration inside a Bundle*.

Whenever a user includes the `acme_social` key (which is the DI alias) in a configuration file, the configuration under it is added to an array of configurations and passed to the `load()` method of your extension (Symfony2 automatically converts XML and YAML to an array).

For the configuration example in the previous section, the array passed to your `load()` method will look like this:

Listing 12-3

```
1 array(
2     array(
3         'twitter' => array(
4             'client_id' => 123,
5             'client_secret' => '$secret',
6         ),
7     ),
8 )
```

Notice that this is an *array of arrays*, not just a single flat array of the configuration values. This is intentional, as it allows Symfony to parse several configuration resources. For example, if `acme_social` appears in another configuration file - say `config_dev.yml` - with different values beneath it, the incoming array might look like this:

Listing 12-4

```
1 array(
2     // values from config.yml
3     array(
4         'twitter' => array(
5             'client_id' => 123,
6             'client_secret' => '$secret',
7         ),
8     ),
9     // values from config_dev.yml
```

```

10     array(
11         'twitter' => array(
12             'client_id' => 456,
13         ),
14     ),
15 )

```

The order of the two arrays depends on which one is set first.

But don't worry! Symfony's Config component will help you merge these values, provide defaults and give the user validation errors on bad configuration. Here's how it works. Create a **Configuration** class in the **DependencyInjection** directory and build a tree that defines the structure of your bundle's configuration.

The **Configuration** class to handle the sample configuration looks like:

Listing 12-5

```

1  // src/Acme/SocialBundle/DependencyInjection/Configuration.php
2  namespace Acme\SocialBundle\DependencyInjection;
3
4  use Symfony\Component\Config\Definition\Builder\TreeBuilder;
5  use Symfony\Component\Config\Definition\ConfigurationInterface;
6
7  class Configuration implements ConfigurationInterface
8  {
9      public function getConfigTreeBuilder()
10     {
11         $treeBuilder = new TreeBuilder();
12         $rootNode = $treeBuilder->root('acme_social');
13
14         $rootNode
15             ->children()
16                 ->arrayNode('twitter')
17                     ->children()
18                         ->integerNode('client_id')->end()
19                         ->scalarNode('client_secret')->end()
20                     ->end()
21                 ->end() // twitter
22             ->end()
23     ;
24
25     return $treeBuilder;
26     }
27 }

```

The **Configuration** class can be much more complicated than shown here, supporting "prototype" nodes, advanced validation, XML-specific normalization and advanced merging. You can read more about this in the Config component documentation. You can also see it in action by checking out some of the core Configuration classes, such as the one from the FrameworkBundle Configuration¹ or the TwigBundle Configuration².

This class can now be used in your **load()** method to merge configurations and force validation (e.g. if an additional option was passed, an exception will be thrown):

Listing 12-6

```

1  public function load(array $configs, ContainerBuilder $container)
2  {

```

1. <https://github.com/symfony/symfony/blob/master/src/Symfony/Bundle/FrameworkBundle/DependencyInjection/Configuration.php>
2. <https://github.com/symfony/symfony/blob/master/src/Symfony/Bundle/TwigBundle/DependencyInjection/Configuration.php>

```

3     $configuration = new Configuration();
4
5     $config = $this->processConfiguration($configuration, $configs);
6     // ...
7 }

```

The `processConfiguration()` method uses the configuration tree you've defined in the `Configuration` class to validate, normalize and merge all of the configuration arrays together.



Instead of calling `processConfiguration()` in your extension each time you provide some configuration options, you might want to use the *ConfigurableExtension*³ to do this automatically for you:

Listing 12-7

```

1  // src/Acme/HelloBundle/DependencyInjection/AcmeHelloExtension.php
2  namespace Acme\HelloBundle\DependencyInjection;
3
4  use Symfony\Component\DependencyInjection\ContainerBuilder;
5  use Symfony\Component\HttpKernel\DependencyInjection\ConfigurableExtension;
6
7  class AcmeHelloExtension extends ConfigurableExtension
8  {
9      // note that this method is called loadInternal and not load
10     protected function loadInternal(array $mergedConfig, ContainerBuilder $container)
11     {
12         // ...
13     }
14 }

```

This class uses the `getConfiguration()` method to get the `Configuration` instance, you should override it if your `Configuration` class is not called `Configuration` or if it is not placed in the same namespace as the extension.



Processing the Configuration yourself

Using the Config component is fully optional. The `load()` method gets an array of configuration values. You can simply parse these arrays yourself (e.g. by overriding configurations and using *isset*⁴ to check for the existence of a value). Be aware that it'll be very hard to support XML.

Listing 12-8

```

1  public function load(array $configs, ContainerBuilder $container)
2  {
3      $config = array();
4      // let resources override the previous set value
5      foreach ($configs as $subConfig) {
6          $config = array_merge($config, $subConfig);
7      }
8
9      // ... now use the flat $config array
10 }

```

3. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpKernel/DependencyInjection/ConfigurableExtension.html>

4. <http://php.net/manual/en/function.isset.php>

Modifying the Configuration of Another Bundle

If you have multiple bundles that depend on each other, it may be useful to allow one **Extension** class to modify the configuration passed to another bundle's **Extension** class, as if the end-developer has actually placed that configuration in their `app/config/config.yml` file. This can be achieved using a prepend extension. For more details, see *How to Simplify Configuration of multiple Bundles*.

Dump the Configuration

The `config:dump-reference` command dumps the default configuration of a bundle in the console using the Yaml format.

As long as your bundle's configuration is located in the standard location (`YourBundle\DependencyInjection\Configuration`) and does not require arguments to be passed to the constructor it will work automatically. If you have something different, your **Extension** class must override the `Extension::getConfiguration()`⁵ method and return an instance of your **Configuration**.

Supporting XML

Symfony allows people to provide the configuration in three different formats: Yaml, XML and PHP. Both Yaml and PHP use the same syntax and are supported by default when using the Config component. Supporting XML requires you to do some more things. But when sharing your bundle with others, it is recommended that you follow these steps.

Make your Config Tree ready for XML

The Config component provides some methods by default to allow it to correctly process XML configuration. See "Normalization" of the component documentation. However, you can do some optional things as well, this will improve the experience of using XML configuration:

Choosing an XML Namespace

In XML, the *XML namespace*⁶ is used to determine which elements belong to the configuration of a specific bundle. The namespace is returned from the `Extension::getNamespace()`⁷ method. By convention, the namespace is a URL (it doesn't have to be a valid URL nor does it need to exist). By default, the namespace for a bundle is `http://example.org/dic/schema/DI_ALIAS`, where `DI_ALIAS` is the DI alias of the extension. You might want to change this to a more professional URL:

Listing 12-9

```
1 // src/Acme/HelloBundle/DependencyInjection/AcmeHelloExtension.php
2
3 // ...
4 class AcmeHelloExtension extends Extension
5 {
6     // ...
7
8     public function getNamespace()
9     {
10         return 'http://acme_company.com/schema/dic/hello';
11     }
12 }
```

5. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpKernel/DependencyInjection/Extension.html#getConfiguration\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpKernel/DependencyInjection/Extension.html#getConfiguration())

6. http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/XML_namespace

7. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/DependencyInjection/Extension/Extension.html#getNamespace\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/DependencyInjection/Extension/Extension.html#getNamespace())

```

11     }
12 }

```

Providing an XML Schema

XML has a very useful feature called *XML schema*⁸. This allows you to describe all possible elements and attributes and their values in an XML Schema Definition (an xsd file). This XSD file is used by IDEs for auto completion and it is used by the Config component to validate the elements.

In order to use the schema, the XML configuration file must provide an `xsi:schemaLocation` attribute pointing to the XSD file for a certain XML namespace. This location always starts with the XML namespace. This XML namespace is then replaced with the XSD validation base path returned from `Extension::getXsdValidationBasePath()`⁹ method. This namespace is then followed by the rest of the path from the base path to the file itself.

By convention, the XSD file lives in the `Resources/config/schema`, but you can place it anywhere you like. You should return this path as the base path:

Listing 12-10

```

1  // src/Acme/HelloBundle/DependencyInjection/AcmeHelloExtension.php
2
3  // ...
4  class AcmeHelloExtension extends Extension
5  {
6      // ...
7
8      public function getXsdValidationBasePath()
9      {
10         return __DIR__.'/../Resources/config/schema';
11     }
12 }

```

Assume the XSD file is called `hello-1.0.xsd`, the schema location will be `http://acme_company.com/schema/dic/hello/hello-1.0.xsd`:

Listing 12-11

```

1  <!-- app/config/config.xml -->
2  <?xml version="1.0" ?>
3
4  <container xmlns="http://symfony.com/schema/dic/services"
5      xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
6      xmlns:acme-hello="http://acme_company.com/schema/dic/hello"
7      xsi:schemaLocation="http://acme_company.com/schema/dic/hello http://acme_company.com/
8  schema/dic/hello/hello-1.0.xsd">
9
10     <acme-hello:config>
11         <!-- ... -->
12     </acme-hello:config>
13
14     <!-- ... -->
15 </container>

```

8. http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/XML_schema

9. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/DependencyInjection/ExtensionInterface.html#getXsdValidationBasePath\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/DependencyInjection/ExtensionInterface.html#getXsdValidationBasePath())



Chapter 13

How to Simplify Configuration of multiple Bundles

When building reusable and extensible applications, developers are often faced with a choice: either create a single large bundle or multiple smaller bundles. Creating a single bundle has the drawback that it's impossible for users to choose to remove functionality they are not using. Creating multiple bundles has the drawback that configuration becomes more tedious and settings often need to be repeated for various bundles.

Using the below approach, it is possible to remove the disadvantage of the multiple bundle approach by enabling a single Extension to prepend the settings for any bundle. It can use the settings defined in the `app/config/config.yml` to prepend settings just as if they would have been written explicitly by the user in the application configuration.

For example, this could be used to configure the entity manager name to use in multiple bundles. Or it can be used to enable an optional feature that depends on another bundle being loaded as well.

To give an Extension the power to do this, it needs to implement *PrependExtensionInterface*¹:

Listing 13-1

```
1 // src/Acme/HelloBundle/DependencyInjection/AcmeHelloExtension.php
2 namespace Acme\HelloBundle\DependencyInjection;
3
4 use Symfony\Component\HttpKernel\DependencyInjection\Extension;
5 use Symfony\Component\DependencyInjection\Extension\PrependExtensionInterface;
6 use Symfony\Component\DependencyInjection\ContainerBuilder;
7
8 class AcmeHelloExtension extends Extension implements PrependExtensionInterface
9 {
10     // ...
11
12     public function prepend(ContainerBuilder $container)
13     {
14         // ...
15     }
16 }
```

1. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/DependencyInjection/Extension/PrependExtensionInterface.html>

Inside the `prepend()`² method, developers have full access to the `ContainerBuilder`³ instance just before the `load()`⁴ method is called on each of the registered bundle Extensions. In order to prepend settings to a bundle extension developers can use the `prependExtensionConfig()`⁵ method on the `ContainerBuilder`⁶ instance. As this method only prepends settings, any other settings done explicitly inside the `app/config/config.yml` would override these prepended settings.

The following example illustrates how to prepend a configuration setting in multiple bundles as well as disable a flag in multiple bundles in case a specific other bundle is not registered:

Listing 13-2

```

1 public function prepend(ContainerBuilder $container)
2 {
3     // get all bundles
4     $bundles = $container->getParameter('kernel.bundles');
5     // determine if AcmeGoodbyeBundle is registered
6     if (!isset($bundles['AcmeGoodbyeBundle'])) {
7         // disable AcmeGoodbyeBundle in bundles
8         $config = array('use_acme_goodbye' => false);
9         foreach ($container->getExtensions() as $name => $extension) {
10             switch ($name) {
11                 case 'acme_something':
12                 case 'acme_other':
13                     // set use_acme_goodbye to false in the config of acme_something and
14                     acme_other
15                     // note that if the user manually configured use_acme_goodbye to true
16                     in the
17                     // app/config/config.yml then the setting would in the end be true and
18                     not false
19                     $container->prependExtensionConfig($name, $config);
20                     break;
21             }
22         }
23     }
24
25     // process the configuration of AcmeHelloExtension
26     $configs = $container->getExtensionConfig($this->getAlias());
27     // use the Configuration class to generate a config array with the settings
28     "acme_hello"
29     $config = $this->processConfiguration(new Configuration(), $configs);
30
31     // check if entity_manager_name is set in the "acme_hello" configuration
32     if (isset($config['entity_manager_name'])) {
33         // prepend the acme_something settings with the entity_manager_name
34         $config = array('entity_manager_name' => $config['entity_manager_name']);
35         $container->prependExtensionConfig('acme_something', $config);
36     }
37 }
```

The above would be the equivalent of writing the following into the `app/config/config.yml` in case `AcmeGoodbyeBundle` is not registered and the `entity_manager_name` setting for `acme_hello` is set to `non_default`:

Listing 13-3

```

1 # app/config/config.yml
2 acme_something:
```

2. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/DependencyInjection/Extension/PrependExtensionInterface.html#prepend\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/DependencyInjection/Extension/PrependExtensionInterface.html#prepend())
3. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/DependencyInjection/ContainerBuilder.html>
4. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/DependencyInjection/Extension/ExtensionInterface.html#load\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/DependencyInjection/Extension/ExtensionInterface.html#load())
5. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/DependencyInjection/ContainerBuilder.html#prependExtensionConfig\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/DependencyInjection/ContainerBuilder.html#prependExtensionConfig())
6. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/DependencyInjection/ContainerBuilder.html>

```
3     # ...
4     use_acme_goodbye: false
5     entity_manager_name: non_default
6
7 acme_other:
8     # ...
9     use_acme_goodbye: false
```



Chapter 14

How to Use Varnish to Speed up my Website

Because Symfony's cache uses the standard HTTP cache headers, the *Symfony Reverse Proxy* can easily be replaced with any other reverse proxy. *Varnish*¹ is a powerful, open-source, HTTP accelerator capable of serving cached content quickly and including support for *Edge Side Includes*.

Trusting Reverse Proxies

For ESI to work correctly and for the *X-FORWARDED* headers to be used, you need to configure Varnish as a *trusted proxy*.

Configuration

As seen previously, Symfony is smart enough to detect whether it talks to a reverse proxy that understands ESI or not. It works out of the box when you use the Symfony reverse proxy, but you need a special configuration to make it work with Varnish. Thankfully, Symfony relies on yet another standard written by Akamai (*Edge Architecture*²), so the configuration tips in this chapter can be useful even if you don't use Symfony.



Varnish only supports the `src` attribute for ESI tags (`onerror` and `alt` attributes are ignored).

First, configure Varnish so that it advertises its ESI support by adding a **Surrogate-Capability** header to requests forwarded to the backend application:

Listing 14-1

```
1 sub vcl_recv {  
2     // Add a Surrogate-Capability header to announce ESI support.
```

1. <https://www.varnish-cache.org>
2. <http://www.w3.org/TR/edge-arch>

```

3   set req.http.Surrogate-Capability = "abc=ESI/1.0";
4 }

```



The `abc` part of the header isn't important unless you have multiple "surrogates" that need to advertise their capabilities. See *Surrogate-Capability Header*³ for details.

Then, optimize Varnish so that it only parses the Response contents when there is at least one ESI tag by checking the `Surrogate-Control` header that Symfony adds automatically:

Listing 14-2

```

1  /* (https://www.varnish-cache.org/docs/4.0/whats-new/
2  upgrading.html#req-not-available-in-vcl-backend-response) */
3  sub vcl_backend_response {
4      // Check for ESI acknowledgement and remove Surrogate-Control header
5      if (beresp.http.Surrogate-Control ~ "ESI/1.0") {
6          unset beresp.http.Surrogate-Control;
7          set beresp.do_esi = true;
8      }
9      /* By default Varnish ignores Pragma: nocache
10     (https://www.varnish-cache.org/docs/4.0/users-guide/
11     increasing-your-hitrate.html#cache-control)
12     so in order avoid caching it has to be done explicitly */
13     if (beresp.http.Pragma ~ "no-cache") {
14         // https://www.varnish-cache.org/docs/4.0/whats-new/
15         upgrading.html#hit-for-pass-objects-are-created-using-beresp-uncacheable
16         set beresp.uncacheable = true;
17         set beresp.ttl = 120s;
18         return (deliver);
19     }
20 }

```



Compression with ESI was not supported in Varnish until version 3.0 (read *GZIP and Varnish*⁴). If you're not using Varnish 3.0, put a web server in front of Varnish to perform the compression.

Cache Invalidation

If you want to cache content that changes frequently and still serve the most recent version to users, you need to invalidate that content. While *cache invalidation*⁵ allows you to purge content from your proxy before it has expired, it adds complexity to your caching setup.



The open source *FOSHttpCacheBundle*⁶ takes the pain out of cache invalidation by helping you to organize your caching and invalidation setup.

3. <http://www.w3.org/TR/edge-arch>

4. <https://www.varnish-cache.org/docs/3.0/phk/gzip.html>

5. <http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc2616#section-13.10>

6. <http://foshttpcachebundle.readthedocs.org/>

Varnish can be configured to accept a special HTTP PURGE method that will invalidate the cache for a given resource:

```
Listing 14-3 1  /*
2  Connect to the backend server
3  on the local machine on port 8080
4  */
5  backend default {
6      .host = "127.0.0.1";
7      .port = "8080";
8  }
9
10 sub vcl_recv {
11     /*
12     Varnish default behavior doesn't support PURGE.
13     Match the PURGE request and immediately do a cache lookup,
14     otherwise Varnish will directly pipe the request to the backend
15     and bypass the cache
16     */
17     if (req.request == "PURGE") {
18         return(lookup);
19     }
20 }
21
22 sub vcl_hit {
23     // Match PURGE request
24     if (req.request == "PURGE") {
25         // Force object expiration for Varnish < 3.0
26         set obj.ttl = 0s;
27         // Do an actual purge for Varnish >= 3.0
28         // purge;
29         error 200 "Purged";
30     }
31 }
32
33 sub vcl_miss {
34     /*
35     Match the PURGE request and
36     indicate the request wasn't stored in cache.
37     */
38     if (req.request == "PURGE") {
39         error 404 "Not purged";
40     }
41 }
```




You must protect the **PURGE** HTTP method somehow to avoid random people purging your cached data. You can do this by setting up an access list:

Listing 14-4

```
1  /*
2  Connect to the backend server
3  on the local machine on port 8080
4  */
5  backend default {
6      .host = "127.0.0.1";
7      .port = "8080";
8  }
9
10 // ACL's can contain IP's, subnets and hostnames
11 acl purge {
12     "localhost";
13     "192.168.55.0"/24;
14 }
15
16 sub vcl_recv {
17     // Match PURGE request to avoid cache bypassing
18     if (req.request == "PURGE") {
19         // Match client IP to the ACL
20         if (!client.ip ~ purge) {
21             // Deny access
22             error 405 "Not allowed.";
23         }
24         // Perform a cache lookup
25         return(lookup);
26     }
27 }
28
29 sub vcl_hit {
30     // Match PURGE request
31     if (req.request == "PURGE") {
32         // Force object expiration for Varnish < 3.0
33         set obj.ttl = 0s;
34         // Do an actual purge for Varnish >= 3.0
35         // purge;
36         error 200 "Purged";
37     }
38 }
39
40 sub vcl_miss {
41     // Match PURGE request
42     if (req.request == "PURGE") {
43         // Indicate that the object isn't stored in cache
44         error 404 "Not purged";
45     }
46 }
```

Routing and X-FORWARDED Headers

To ensure that the Symfony Router generates URLs correctly with Varnish, proper ``X-Forwarded`` headers must be added so that Symfony is aware of the original port number of the request. Exactly how this is done depends on your setup. As a simple example, Varnish and your web server are on the same machine and that Varnish is listening on one port (e.g. 80) and Apache on another (e.g. 8080). In this situation, Varnish should add the **X-Forwarded-Port** header so that the Symfony application knows that the original port number is 80 and not 8080.

If this header weren't set properly, Symfony may append **8080** when generating absolute URLs:

Listing 14-5

```
1 sub vcl_recv {
2     if (req.http.X-Forwarded-Proto == "https" ) {
3         set req.http.X-Forwarded-Port = "443";
4     } else {
5         set req.http.X-Forwarded-Port = "80";
6     }
7 }
```



Remember to configure *framework.trusted_proxies* in the Symfony configuration so that Varnish is seen as a trusted proxy and the **X-Forwarded-** headers are used.



Chapter 15

How to Master and Create new Environments

Every application is the combination of code and a set of configuration that dictates how that code should function. The configuration may define the database being used, whether or not something should be cached, or how verbose logging should be. In Symfony, the idea of "environments" is the idea that the same codebase can be run using multiple different configurations. For example, the **dev** environment should use configuration that makes development easy and friendly, while the **prod** environment should use a set of configuration optimized for speed.

Different Environments, different Configuration Files

A typical Symfony application begins with three environments: **dev**, **prod**, and **test**. As discussed, each "environment" simply represents a way to execute the same codebase with different configuration. It should be no surprise then that each environment loads its own individual configuration file. If you're using the YAML configuration format, the following files are used:

- for the **dev** environment: `app/config/config_dev.yml`
- for the **prod** environment: `app/config/config_prod.yml`
- for the **test** environment: `app/config/config_test.yml`

This works via a simple standard that's used by default inside the **AppKernel** class:

```
Listing 15-1 1  // app/AppKernel.php
2
3  // ...
4
5  class AppKernel extends Kernel
6  {
7      // ...
8
9      public function registerContainerConfiguration(LoaderInterface $loader)
10     {
11         $loader->load(__DIR__.'/config/config_'.$this->getEnvironment().'.yml');
12     }
13 }
```

As you can see, when Symfony is loaded, it uses the given environment to determine which configuration file to load. This accomplishes the goal of multiple environments in an elegant, powerful and transparent way.

Of course, in reality, each environment differs only somewhat from others. Generally, all environments will share a large base of common configuration. Opening the "dev" configuration file, you can see how this is accomplished easily and transparently:

Listing 15-2

```
1 imports:
2     - { resource: config.yml }
3
4 # ...
```

To share common configuration, each environment's configuration file simply first imports from a central configuration file (`config.yml`). The remainder of the file can then deviate from the default configuration by overriding individual parameters. For example, by default, the `web_profiler` toolbar is disabled. However, in the `dev` environment, the toolbar is activated by modifying the default value in the `dev` configuration file:

Listing 15-3

```
1 # app/config/config_dev.yml
2 imports:
3     - { resource: config.yml }
4
5 web_profiler:
6     toolbar: true
7     # ...
```

Executing an Application in different Environments

To execute the application in each environment, load up the application using either the `app.php` (for the `prod` environment) or the `app_dev.php` (for the `dev` environment) front controller:

Listing 15-4

```
1 http://localhost/app.php      -> *prod* environment
2 http://localhost/app_dev.php -> *dev* environment
```



The given URLs assume that your web server is configured to use the `web/` directory of the application as its root. Read more in *Installing Symfony*.

If you open up one of these files, you'll quickly see that the environment used by each is explicitly set:

Listing 15-5

```
1 // web/app.php
2 // ...
3
4 $kernel = new AppKernel('prod', false);
5
6 // ...
```

As you can see, the `prod` key specifies that this application will run in the `prod` environment. A Symfony application can be executed in any environment by using this code and changing the environment string.



The **test** environment is used when writing functional tests and is not accessible in the browser directly via a front controller. In other words, unlike the other environments, there is no `app_test.php` front controller file.



Debug Mode

Important, but unrelated to the topic of *environments* is the **false** argument as the second argument to the **AppKernel** constructor. This specifies whether or not the application should run in "debug mode". Regardless of the environment, a Symfony application can be run with debug mode set to **true** or **false**. This affects many things in the application, such as whether or not errors should be displayed or if cache files are dynamically rebuilt on each request. Though not a requirement, debug mode is generally set to **true** for the **dev** and **test** environments and **false** for the **prod** environment.

Internally, the value of the debug mode becomes the **kernel.debug** parameter used inside the *service container*. If you look inside the application configuration file, you'll see the parameter used, for example, to turn logging on or off when using the Doctrine DBAL:

Listing 15-6

```

1 doctrine:
2     dbal:
3         logging: "%kernel.debug%"
4         # ...
```

As of Symfony 2.3, showing errors or not no longer depends on the debug mode. You'll need to enable that in your front controller by calling *enable()*¹.

Creating a new Environment

By default, a Symfony application has three environments that handle most cases. Of course, since an environment is nothing more than a string that corresponds to a set of configuration, creating a new environment is quite easy.

Suppose, for example, that before deployment, you need to benchmark your application. One way to benchmark the application is to use near-production settings, but with Symfony's **web_profiler** enabled. This allows Symfony to record information about your application while benchmarking.

The best way to accomplish this is via a new environment called, for example, **benchmark**. Start by creating a new configuration file:

Listing 15-7

```

1 # app/config/config_benchmark.yml
2 imports:
3     - { resource: config_prod.yml }
4
5 framework:
6     profiler: { only_exceptions: false }
```

1. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Debug/Debug.html#enable\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Debug/Debug.html#enable())



Due to the way in which parameters are resolved, you cannot use them to build paths in imports dynamically. This means that something like the following doesn't work:

Listing 15-8

```
1 # app/config/config.yml
2 imports:
3     - { resource: "%kernel.root_dir%/parameters.yml" }
```

And with this simple addition, the application now supports a new environment called **benchmark**.

This new configuration file imports the configuration from the **prod** environment and modifies it. This guarantees that the new environment is identical to the **prod** environment, except for any changes explicitly made here.

Because you'll want this environment to be accessible via a browser, you should also create a front controller for it. Copy the **web/app.php** file to **web/app_benchmark.php** and edit the environment to be **benchmark**:

Listing 15-9

```
1 // web/app_benchmark.php
2
3
4 // change just this line
5 $kernel = new AppKernel('benchmark', false);
6
7 // ...
```

The new environment is now accessible via:

Listing 15-10

```
1 http://localhost/app_benchmark.php
```



Some environments, like the **dev** environment, are never meant to be accessed on any deployed server by the general public. This is because certain environments, for debugging purposes, may give too much information about the application or underlying infrastructure. To be sure these environments aren't accessible, the front controller is usually protected from external IP addresses via the following code at the top of the controller:

Listing 15-11

```
1 if (!in_array(@$_SERVER['REMOTE_ADDR'], array('127.0.0.1', ':::1'))) {
2     die('You are not allowed to access this file. Check '.basename(__FILE__).' for
3     more information.');
```

Environments and the Cache Directory

Symfony takes advantage of caching in many ways: the application configuration, routing configuration, Twig templates and more are cached to PHP objects stored in files on the filesystem.

By default, these cached files are largely stored in the **app/cache** directory. However, each environment caches its own set of files:

Listing 15-12

```
1 <your-project>/
2 |─ app/
3 |   └─ cache/
```

```

4 | | | dev/ # cache directory for the *dev* environment
5 | | | prod/ # cache directory for the *prod* environment
6 | | | ...

```

Sometimes, when debugging, it may be helpful to inspect a cached file to understand how something is working. When doing so, remember to look in the directory of the environment you're using (most commonly `dev` while developing and debugging). While it can vary, the `app/cache/dev` directory includes the following:

- `appDevDebugProjectContainer.php` - the cached "service container" that represents the cached application configuration;
- `appDevUrlGenerator.php` - the PHP class generated from the routing configuration and used when generating URLs;
- `appDevUrlMatcher.php` - the PHP class used for route matching - look here to see the compiled regular expression logic used to match incoming URLs to different routes;
- `twig/` - this directory contains all the cached Twig templates.



You can easily change the directory location and name. For more information read the article *How to Override Symfony's default Directory Structure*.

Going further

Read the article on *How to Set external Parameters in the Service Container*.



Chapter 16

How to Override Symfony's default Directory Structure

Symfony automatically ships with a default directory structure. You can easily override this directory structure to create your own. The default directory structure is:

Listing 16-1

```
1 your-project/
2   └─ app/
3       └─ cache/
4       └─ config/
5       └─ logs/
6       └─ ...
7   └─ src/
8       └─ ...
9   └─ vendor/
10      └─ ...
11  └─ web/
12      └─ app.php
13      └─ ...
```

Override the cache Directory

You can override the cache directory by overriding the `getCacheDir` method in the `AppKernel` class of your application:

Listing 16-2

```
1  // app/AppKernel.php
2
3  // ...
4  class AppKernel extends Kernel
5  {
6      // ...
7  }
```



```

8     public function getCacheDir()
9     {
10         return $this->rootDir.'/'.$this->environment.'/cache';
11     }
12 }

```

`$this->rootDir` is the absolute path to the `app` directory and `$this->environment` is the current environment (i.e. `dev`). In this case you have changed the location of the cache directory to `app/{environment}/cache`.



You should keep the `cache` directory different for each environment, otherwise some unexpected behavior may happen. Each environment generates its own cached config files, and so each needs its own directory to store those cache files.

Override the logs Directory

Overriding the `logs` directory is the same as overriding the `cache` directory, the only difference is that you need to override the `getLogDir` method:

Listing 16-3

```

1  // app/AppKernel.php
2
3  // ...
4  class AppKernel extends Kernel
5  {
6      // ...
7
8      public function getLogDir()
9      {
10         return $this->rootDir.'/'.$this->environment.'/logs';
11     }
12 }

```

Here you have changed the location of the directory to `app/{environment}/logs`.

Override the web Directory

If you need to rename or move your `web` directory, the only thing you need to guarantee is that the path to the `app` directory is still correct in your `app.php` and `app_dev.php` front controllers. If you simply renamed the directory, you're fine. But if you moved it in some way, you may need to modify the paths inside these files:

Listing 16-4

```

1  require_once __DIR__.'/../Symfony/app/bootstrap.php.cache';
2  require_once __DIR__.'/../Symfony/app/AppKernel.php';

```

You also need to change the `extra.symfony-web-dir` option in the `composer.json` file:

Listing 16-5

```

1  {
2      ...
3      "extra": {
4          ...

```

```
5     "symfony-web-dir": "my_new_web_dir"
6   }
7 }
```



Some shared hosts have a `public_html` web directory root. Renaming your web directory from `web` to `public_html` is one way to make your Symfony project work on your shared host. Another way is to deploy your application to a directory outside of your web root, delete your `public_html` directory, and then replace it with a symbolic link to the `web` in your project.



If you use the AsseticBundle you need to configure this, so it can use the correct `web` directory:

Listing 16-6

```
1 # app/config/config.yml
2
3 # ...
4 assetic:
5     # ...
6     read_from: "%kernel.root_dir%../../public_html"
```

Now you just need to clear the cache and dump the assets again and your application should work:

Listing 16-7

```
1 $ php app/console cache:clear --env=prod
2 $ php app/console assetic:dump --env=prod --no-debug
```



Chapter 17

Using Parameters within a Dependency Injection Class

You have seen how to use configuration parameters within *Symfony service containers*. There are special cases such as when you want, for instance, to use the `%kernel.debug%` parameter to make the services in your bundle enter debug mode. For this case there is more work to do in order to make the system understand the parameter value. By default your parameter `%kernel.debug%` will be treated as a simple string. Consider this example with the `AcmeDemoBundle`:

Listing 17-1

```
1 // Inside Configuration class
2 $rootNode
3     ->children()
4         ->booleanNode('logging')->defaultValue('%kernel.debug%')->end()
5         // ...
6     ->end()
7 ;
8
9 // Inside the Extension class
10 $config = $this->processConfiguration($configuration, $configs);
11 var_dump($config['logging']);
```

Now, examine the results to see this closely:

Listing 17-2

```
1 my_bundle:
2     logging: true
3     # true, as expected
4
5 my_bundle:
6     logging: "%kernel.debug%"
7     # true/false (depends on 2nd parameter of AppKernel),
8     # as expected, because %kernel.debug% inside configuration
9     # gets evaluated before being passed to the extension
10
11 my_bundle: ~
12 # passes the string "%kernel.debug%".
```

```

13 # Which is always considered as true.
14 # The Configurator does not know anything about
15 # "%kernel.debug%" being a parameter.

```

In order to support this use case, the `Configuration` class has to be injected with this parameter via the extension as follows:

Listing 17-3

```

1 namespace Acme\DemoBundle\DependencyInjection;
2
3 use Symfony\Component\Config\Definition\Builder\ArrayNodeDefinition;
4 use Symfony\Component\Config\Definition\Builder\TreeBuilder;
5 use Symfony\Component\Config\Definition\ConfigurationInterface;
6
7 class Configuration implements ConfigurationInterface
8 {
9     private $debug;
10
11     public function __construct($debug)
12     {
13         $this->debug = (Boolean) $debug;
14     }
15
16     public function getConfigTreeBuilder()
17     {
18         $treeBuilder = new TreeBuilder();
19         $rootNode = $treeBuilder->root('acme_demo');
20
21         $rootNode
22             ->children()
23                 // ...
24                 ->booleanNode('logging')->defaultValue($this->debug)->end()
25                 // ...
26             ->end()
27         ;
28
29         return $treeBuilder;
30     }
31 }

```

And set it in the constructor of `Configuration` via the `Extension` class:

Listing 17-4

```

1 namespace Acme\DemoBundle\DependencyInjection;
2
3 use Symfony\Component\DependencyInjection\ContainerBuilder;
4 use Symfony\Component\DependencyInjection\Loader\XmlFileLoader;
5 use Symfony\Component\HttpKernel\DependencyInjection\Extension;
6 use Symfony\Component\Config\FileLocator;
7
8 class AcmeDemoExtension extends Extension
9 {
10     // ...
11
12     public function getConfiguration(array $config, ContainerBuilder $container)
13     {
14         return new Configuration($container->getParameter('kernel.debug'));
15     }
16 }

```



Setting the Default in the Extension

There are some instances of `%kernel.debug%` usage within a `Configurator` class in `TwigBundle` and `AsseticBundle`, however this is because the default parameter value is set by the `Extension` class. For example in `AsseticBundle`, you can find:

Listing 17-5 1 `$container->setParameter('assetic.debug', $config['debug']);`

The string `%kernel.debug%` passed here as an argument handles the interpreting job to the container which in turn does the evaluation. Both ways accomplish similar goals. `AsseticBundle` will not use `%kernel.debug%` but rather the new `%assetic.debug%` parameter.



Chapter 18

Understanding how the Front Controller, Kernel and Environments Work together

The section *How to Master and Create new Environments* explained the basics on how Symfony uses environments to run your application with different configuration settings. This section will explain a bit more in-depth what happens when your application is bootstrapped. To hook into this process, you need to understand three parts that work together:

- The Front Controller
- The Kernel Class
- The Environments



Usually, you will not need to define your own front controller or `AppKernel` class as the *Symfony Standard Edition*¹ provides sensible default implementations.

This documentation section is provided to explain what is going on behind the scenes.

The Front Controller

The *front controller*² is a well-known design pattern; it is a section of code that *all* requests served by an application run through.

In the *Symfony Standard Edition*³, this role is taken by the `app.php`⁴ and `app_dev.php`⁵ files in the `web/` directory. These are the very first PHP scripts executed when a request is processed.

The main purpose of the front controller is to create an instance of the `AppKernel` (more on that in a second), make it handle the request and return the resulting response to the browser.

1. <https://github.com/symfony/symfony-standard>

2. http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Front_Controller_pattern

3. <https://github.com/symfony/symfony-standard>

4. <https://github.com/symfony/symfony-standard/blob/master/web/app.php>

5. https://github.com/symfony/symfony-standard/blob/master/web/app_dev.php

Because every request is routed through it, the front controller can be used to perform global initializations prior to setting up the kernel or to *decorate*⁶ the kernel with additional features. Examples include:

- Configuring the autoloader or adding additional autoloading mechanisms;
- Adding HTTP level caching by wrapping the kernel with an instance of *AppCache*;
- Enabling (or skipping) the *ClassCache*;
- Enabling the *Debug Component*.

The front controller can be chosen by requesting URLs like:

Listing 18-1 1 `http://localhost/app_dev.php/some/path/...`

As you can see, this URL contains the PHP script to be used as the front controller. You can use that to easily switch the front controller or use a custom one by placing it in the `web/` directory (e.g. `app_cache.php`).

When using Apache and the *RewriteRule* shipped with the *Standard Edition*⁷, you can omit the filename from the URL and the *RewriteRule* will use `app.php` as the default one.



Pretty much every other web server should be able to achieve a behavior similar to that of the *RewriteRule* described above. Check your server documentation for details or see *Configuring a Web Server*.



Make sure you appropriately secure your front controllers against unauthorized access. For example, you don't want to make a debugging environment available to arbitrary users in your production environment.

Technically, the `app/console`⁸ script used when running Symfony on the command line is also a front controller, only that is not used for web, but for command line requests.

The Kernel Class

The *Kernel*⁹ is the core of Symfony. It is responsible for setting up all the bundles that make up your application and providing them with the application's configuration. It then creates the service container before serving requests in its `handle()`¹⁰ method.

There are two methods declared in the *KernelInterface*¹¹ that are left unimplemented in *Kernel*¹² and thus serve as *template methods*¹³:

- `registerBundles()`¹⁴, which must return an array of all bundles needed to run the application;
- `registerContainerConfiguration()`¹⁵, which loads the application configuration.

6. http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Decorator_pattern

7. <https://github.com/symfony/symfony-standard/blob/master/web/.htaccess>

8. <https://github.com/symfony/symfony-standard/blob/master/app/console>

9. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpKernel/Kernel.html>

10. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpKernel/HttpKernelInterface.html#handle\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpKernel/HttpKernelInterface.html#handle())

11. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpKernel/KernelInterface.html>

12. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpKernel/Kernel.html>

13. http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Template_method_pattern

14. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpKernel/KernelInterface.html#registerBundles\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpKernel/KernelInterface.html#registerBundles())

15. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpKernel/KernelInterface.html#registerContainerConfiguration\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpKernel/KernelInterface.html#registerContainerConfiguration())

To fill these (small) blanks, your application needs to subclass the Kernel and implement these methods. The resulting class is conventionally called the **AppKernel**.

Again, the Symfony Standard Edition provides an *AppKernel*¹⁶ in the **app/** directory. This class uses the name of the environment - which is passed to the Kernel's *constructor*¹⁷ method and is available via *getEnvironment()*¹⁸ - to decide which bundles to create. The logic for that is in *registerBundles()*, a method meant to be extended by you when you start adding bundles to your application.

You are, of course, free to create your own, alternative or additional **AppKernel** variants. All you need is to adapt your (or add a new) front controller to make use of the new kernel.



The name and location of the **AppKernel** is not fixed. When putting multiple Kernels into a single application, it might therefore make sense to add additional sub-directories, for example **app/admin/AdminKernel.php** and **app/api/ApiKernel.php**. All that matters is that your front controller is able to create an instance of the appropriate kernel.

Having different **AppKernels** might be useful to enable different front controllers (on potentially different servers) to run parts of your application independently (for example, the admin UI, the frontend UI and database migrations).



There's a lot more the **AppKernel** can be used for, for example *overriding the default directory structure*. But odds are high that you don't need to change things like this on the fly by having several **AppKernel** implementations.

The Environments

As just mentioned, the **AppKernel** has to implement another method - *registerContainerConfiguration()*¹⁹. This method is responsible for loading the application's configuration from the right *environment*.

Environments have been covered extensively *in the previous chapter*, and you probably remember that the Standard Edition comes with three of them - **dev**, **prod** and **test**.

More technically, these names are nothing more than strings passed from the front controller to the **AppKernel**'s constructor. This name can then be used in the *registerContainerConfiguration()*²⁰ method to decide which configuration files to load.

The Standard Edition's *AppKernel*²¹ class implements this method by simply loading the **app/config/config_*.yml** file. You are, of course, free to implement this method differently if you need a more sophisticated way of loading your configuration.

16. <https://github.com/symfony/symfony-standard/blob/master/app/AppKernel.php>

17. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpKernel/Kernel.html#_construct\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpKernel/Kernel.html#_construct())

18. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpKernel/Kernel.html#getEnvironment\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpKernel/Kernel.html#getEnvironment())

19. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpKernel/KernelInterface.html#registerContainerConfiguration\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpKernel/KernelInterface.html#registerContainerConfiguration())

20. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpKernel/KernelInterface.html#registerContainerConfiguration\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpKernel/KernelInterface.html#registerContainerConfiguration())

21. <https://github.com/symfony/symfony-standard/blob/master/app/AppKernel.php>



Chapter 19

How to Set external Parameters in the Service Container

In the chapter *How to Master and Create new Environments*, you learned how to manage your application configuration. At times, it may benefit your application to store certain credentials outside of your project code. Database configuration is one such example. The flexibility of the Symfony service container allows you to easily do this.

Environment Variables

Symfony will grab any environment variable prefixed with `SYMFONY__` and set it as a parameter in the service container. Some transformations are applied to the resulting parameter name:

- `SYMFONY__` prefix is removed;
- Parameter name is lowercased;
- Double underscores are replaced with a period, as a period is not a valid character in an environment variable name.

For example, if you're using Apache, environment variables can be set using the following `VirtualHost` configuration:

```
Listing 19-1 1 <VirtualHost *:80>
2     ServerName      Symfony
3     DocumentRoot    "/path/to/symfony_2_app/web"
4     DirectoryIndex  index.php index.html
5     SetEnv          SYMFONY__DATABASE__USER user
6     SetEnv          SYMFONY__DATABASE__PASSWORD secret
7
8     <Directory "/path/to/symfony_2_app/web">
9         AllowOverride All
10        Allow from All
11    </Directory>
12 </VirtualHost>
```



The example above is for an Apache configuration, using the *SetEnv*¹ directive. However, this will work for any web server which supports the setting of environment variables.

Also, in order for your console to work (which does not use Apache), you must export these as shell variables. On a Unix system, you can run the following:

Listing 19-2

```
1 $ export SYMFONY__DATABASE__USER=user
2 $ export SYMFONY__DATABASE__PASSWORD=secret
```

Now that you have declared an environment variable, it will be present in the PHP `$_SERVER` global variable. Symfony then automatically sets all `$_SERVER` variables prefixed with `SYMFONY__` as parameters in the service container.

You can now reference these parameters wherever you need them.

Listing 19-3

```
1 doctrine:
2     dbal:
3         driver      pdo_mysql
4         dbname:     symfony_project
5         user:       "%database.user%"
6         password:   "%database.password%"
```



Even in debug mode, setting or changing an environment variable requires your cache to be cleared to make the parameter available. In debug mode, this is required since only a change to a configuration file that is loaded by Symfony triggers your configuration to be re-evaluated.

Constants

The container also has support for setting PHP constants as parameters. See *Constants as Parameters* for more details.

Miscellaneous Configuration

The `imports` directive can be used to pull in parameters stored elsewhere. Importing a PHP file gives you the flexibility to add whatever is needed in the container. The following imports a file named `parameters.php`.

Listing 19-4

```
1 # app/config/config.yml
2 imports:
3     - { resource: parameters.php }
```



A resource file can be one of many types. PHP, XML, YAML, INI, and closure resources are all supported by the `imports` directive.

1. <http://httpd.apache.org/docs/current/env.html>

In `parameters.php`, tell the service container the parameters that you wish to set. This is useful when important configuration is in a non-standard format. The example below includes a Drupal database configuration in the Symfony service container.

Listing 19-5

```
1 // app/config/parameters.php
2 include_once('/path/to/drupal/sites/default/settings.php');
3 $container->setParameter('drupal.database.url', $db_url);
```



Chapter 20

How to Use PdoSessionHandler to Store Sessions in the Database

The default Symfony session storage writes the session information to file(s). Most medium to large websites use a database to store the session values instead of files, because databases are easier to use and scale in a multi-webserver environment.

Symfony has a built-in solution for database session storage called *PdoSessionHandler*¹. To use it, you just need to change some parameters in `config.yml` (or the configuration format of your choice):

Listing 20-1

```
1 # app/config/config.yml
2 framework:
3     session:
4         # ...
5         handler_id: session.handler.pdo
6
7 parameters:
8     pdo.db_options:
9         db_table: session
10        db_id_col: session_id
11        db_data_col: session_value
12        db_time_col: session_time
13
14 services:
15     pdo:
16         class: PDO
17         arguments:
18             dsn: "mysql:dbname=mydatabase"
19             user: myuser
20             password: mypassword
21         calls:
22             - [setAttribute, [3, 2]] # \PDO::ATTR_ERRMODE, \PDO::ERRMODE_EXCEPTION
23
24     session.handler.pdo:
```

1. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpFoundation/Session/Storage/Handler/PdoSessionHandler.html>

```

25         class:
26         Symfony\Component\HttpFoundation\Session\Storage\Handler\PdoSessionHandler
            arguments: ["@pdo", "%pdo.db_options%"]

```

- **db_table**: The name of the session table in your database
- **db_id_col**: The name of the id column in your session table (VARCHAR(255) or larger)
- **db_data_col**: The name of the value column in your session table (TEXT or CLOB)
- **db_time_col**: The name of the time column in your session table (INTEGER)

Sharing your Database Connection Information

With the given configuration, the database connection settings are defined for the session storage connection only. This is OK when you use a separate database for the session data.

But if you'd like to store the session data in the same database as the rest of your project's data, you can use the connection settings from the `parameters.yml` file by referencing the database-related parameters defined there:

Listing 20-2

```

1 pdo:
2   class: PDO
3   arguments:
4     - "mysql:host=%database_host%;port=%database_port%;dbname=%database_name%"
5     - "%database_user%"
6     - "%database_password%"

```

Example SQL Statements

MySQL

The SQL statement for creating the needed database table might look like the following (MySQL):

Listing 20-3

```

1 CREATE TABLE `session` (
2   `session_id` varchar(255) NOT NULL,
3   `session_value` text NOT NULL,
4   `session_time` int(11) NOT NULL,
5   PRIMARY KEY (`session_id`)
6 ) ENGINE=InnoDB DEFAULT CHARSET=utf8;

```

PostgreSQL

For PostgreSQL, the statement should look like this:

Listing 20-4

```

1 CREATE TABLE session (
2   session_id character varying(255) NOT NULL,
3   session_value text NOT NULL,
4   session_time integer NOT NULL,
5   CONSTRAINT session_pkey PRIMARY KEY (session_id)
6 );

```

Microsoft SQL Server

For MSSQL, the statement might look like the following:

Listing 20-5

```
1 CREATE TABLE [dbo].[session](
2     [session_id] [nvarchar](255) NOT NULL,
3     [session_value] [ntext] NOT NULL,
4     [session_time] [int] NOT NULL,
5     PRIMARY KEY CLUSTERED(
6         [session_id] ASC
7     ) WITH (
8         PAD_INDEX = OFF,
9         STATISTICS_NORECOMPUTE = OFF,
10        IGNORE_DUP_KEY = OFF,
11        ALLOW_ROW_LOCKS = ON,
12        ALLOW_PAGE_LOCKS = ON
13    ) ON [PRIMARY]
14 ) ON [PRIMARY] TEXTIMAGE_ON [PRIMARY]
```



Chapter 21

How to Use the Apache Router

Symfony, while fast out of the box, also provides various ways to increase that speed with a little bit of tweaking. One of these ways is by letting Apache handle routes directly, rather than using Symfony for this task.



Apache router was deprecated in Symfony 2.5 and will be removed in Symfony 3.0. Since the PHP implementation of the Router was improved, performance gains were no longer significant (while it's very hard to replicate the same behavior).

Change Router Configuration Parameters

To dump Apache routes you must first tweak some configuration parameters to tell Symfony to use the `ApacheUrlMatcher` instead of the default one:

Listing 21-1

```
1 # app/config/config_prod.yml
2 parameters:
3     router.options.matcher.cache_class: ~ # disable router cache
4     router.options.matcher_class: Symfony\Component\Routing\Matcher\ApacheUrlMatcher
```



Note that `ApacheUrlMatcher`¹ extends `UrlMatcher`² so even if you don't regenerate the `mod_rewrite` rules, everything will work (because at the end of `ApacheUrlMatcher::match()` a call to `parent::match()` is done).

Generating `mod_rewrite` Rules

To test that it's working, create a very basic route for the `AcmeDemoBundle`:

-
1. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Routing/Matcher/ApacheUrlMatcher.html>
 2. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Routing/Matcher/UrlMatcher.html>

Listing 21-2

```

1 # app/config/routing.yml
2 hello:
3     path: /hello/{name}
4     defaults: { _controller: AcmeDemoBundle:Demo:hello }

```

Now generate the `mod_rewrite` rules:

Listing 21-3

```

1 $ php app/console router:dump-apache -e=prod --no-debug

```

Which should roughly output the following:

Listing 21-4

```

1 # skip "real" requests
2 RewriteCond %{REQUEST_FILENAME} -f
3 RewriteRule .* - [QSA,L]
4
5 # hello
6 RewriteCond %{REQUEST_URI} ^/hello/([^/]+)?$
7 RewriteRule .* app.php
  [QSA,L,E=_ROUTING__route:hello,E=_ROUTING_name:%1,E=_ROUTING__controller:AcmeDemoBundle\:Demo\:hello]

```

You can now rewrite `web/.htaccess` to use the new rules, so with this example it should look like this:

Listing 21-5

```

1 <IfModule mod_rewrite.c>
2     RewriteEngine On
3
4     # skip "real" requests
5     RewriteCond %{REQUEST_FILENAME} -f
6     RewriteRule .* - [QSA,L]
7
8     # hello
9     RewriteCond %{REQUEST_URI} ^/hello/([^/]+)?$
10    RewriteRule .* app.php
11    [QSA,L,E=_ROUTING__route:hello,E=_ROUTING_name:%1,E=_ROUTING__controller:AcmeDemoBundle\:Demo\:hello]
12 </IfModule>

```



The procedure above should be done each time you add/change a route if you want to take full advantage of this setup.

That's it! You're now all set to use Apache routes.

Additional Tweaks

To save a little bit of processing time, change occurrences of `Request` to `ApacheRequest` in `web/app.php`:

Listing 21-6

```

1 // web/app.php
2
3 require_once __DIR__.'../app/bootstrap.php.cache';
4 require_once __DIR__.'../app/AppKernel.php';
5 // require_once __DIR__.'../app/AppCache.php';
6
7 use Symfony\Component\HttpFoundation\ApacheRequest;

```



```
8
9 $kernel = new AppKernel('prod', false);
10 $kernel->loadClassCache();
11 // $kernel = new AppCache($kernel);
12 $kernel->handle($request->createFromGlobals())->send();
```



Chapter 22

Configuring a Web Server

The preferred way to develop your Symfony application is to use *PHP's internal web server*. However, when using an older PHP version or when running the application in the production environment, you'll need to use a fully-featured web server. This article describes several ways to use Symfony with Apache2 or Nginx.

When using Apache2, you can configure PHP as an *Apache module* or with FastCGI using *PHP FPM*. FastCGI also is the preferred way to use PHP *with Nginx*.



The Web Directory

The web directory is the home of all of your application's public and static files, including images, stylesheets and JavaScript files. It is also where the front controllers live. For more details, see the *The Web Directory*.

The web directory services as the document root when configuring your web server. In the examples below, the `web/` directory will be the document root. This directory is `/var/www/project/web/`.

Apache2 with mod_php/PHP-CGI

For advanced Apache configuration options, see the official *Apache*¹ documentation. The minimum basics to get your application running under Apache2 are:

Listing 22-1

```
1 <VirtualHost *:80>
2     ServerName domain.tld
3     ServerAlias www.domain.tld
4
5     DocumentRoot /var/www/project/web
6     <Directory /var/www/project/web>
7         # enable the .htaccess rewrites
8         AllowOverride All
```

1. <http://httpd.apache.org/docs/current/mod/core.html#documentroot>

```

9      Order allow,deny
10     Allow from All
11 </Directory>
12
13     ErrorLog /var/log/apache2/project_error.log
14     CustomLog /var/log/apache2/project_access.log combined
15 </VirtualHost>

```



If your system supports the `APACHE_LOG_DIR` variable, you may want to use `${APACHE_LOG_DIR}/` instead of `/var/log/apache2/`.



For performance reasons, you will probably want to set `AllowOverride None` and implement the rewrite rules in the `web/.htaccess` into the `VirtualHost` config.

If you are using **php-cgi**, Apache does not pass HTTP basic username and password to PHP by default. To work around this limitation, you should use the following configuration snippet:

Listing 22-2 1 `RewriteRule .* - [E=HTTP_AUTHORIZATION:%{HTTP:Authorization}]`



In Apache 2.4, `Order allow,deny` has been replaced by `Require all granted`, and hence you need to modify your `Directory` permission settings as follows:

Listing 22-3

```

1 <Directory /var/www/project/web>
2     # enable the .htaccess rewrites
3     AllowOverride All
4     Require all granted
5 </Directory>

```

Apache2 with PHP-FPM

To make use of PHP5-FPM with Apache, you first have to ensure that you have the FastCGI process manager `php-fpm` binary and Apache's FastCGI module installed (for example, on a Debian based system you have to install the `libapache2-mod-fastcgi` and `php5-fpm` packages).

PHP-FPM uses so-called *pools* to handle incoming FastCGI requests. You can configure an arbitrary number of pools in the FPM configuration. In a pool you configure either a TCP socket (IP and port) or a unix domain socket to listen on. Each pool can also be run under a different UID and GID:

Listing 22-4

```

1 ; a pool called www
2 [www]
3 user = www-data
4 group = www-data
5
6 ; use a unix domain socket
7 listen = /var/run/php5-fpm.sock
8

```

```
9 ; or listen on a TCP socket
10 listen = 127.0.0.1:9000
```

Using mod_proxy_fcgi with Apache 2.4

If you are running Apache 2.4, you can easily use `mod_proxy_fcgi` to pass incoming requests to PHP-FPM. Configure PHP-FPM to listen on a TCP socket (`mod_proxy` currently *does not support unix sockets*²), enable `mod_proxy` and `mod_proxy_fcgi` in your Apache configuration and use the `ProxyPassMatch` directive to pass requests for PHP files to PHP FPM:

Listing 22-5

```
1 <VirtualHost *:80>
2     ServerName domain.tld
3     ServerAlias www.domain.tld
4
5     ProxyPassMatch ^/(.*\.php(/.*?))$ fcgi://127.0.0.1:9000/var/www/project/web/$1
6
7     DocumentRoot /var/www/project/web
8     <Directory /var/www/project/web>
9         # enable the .htaccess rewrites
10        AllowOverride All
11        Require all granted
12    </Directory>
13
14    ErrorLog /var/log/apache2/project_error.log
15    CustomLog /var/log/apache2/project_access.log combined
16 </VirtualHost>
```



When you run your Symfony application on a subpath of your document root, the regular expression used in `ProxyPassMatch` directive must be changed accordingly:

Listing 22-6

```
1 ProxyPassMatch ^/path-to-app/(.*\.php(/.*?))$ fcgi://127.0.0.1:9000/var/www/project/web/$1
```

PHP-FPM with Apache 2.2

On Apache 2.2 or lower, you cannot use `mod_proxy_fcgi`. You have to use the `FastCgiExternalServer`³ directive instead. Therefore, your Apache configuration should look something like this:

Listing 22-7

```
1 <VirtualHost *:80>
2     ServerName domain.tld
3     ServerAlias www.domain.tld
4
5     AddHandler php5-fcgi .php
6     Action php5-fcgi /php5-fcgi
7     Alias /php5-fcgi /usr/lib/cgi-bin/php5-fcgi
8     FastCgiExternalServer /usr/lib/cgi-bin/php5-fcgi -host 127.0.0.1:9000 -pass-header
9     Authorization
10
11     DocumentRoot /var/www/project/web
```

2. https://issues.apache.org/bugzilla/show_bug.cgi?id=54101

3. http://www.fastcgi.com/mod_fastcgi/docs/mod_fastcgi.html#FastCgiExternalServer

```

12     <Directory /var/www/project/web>
13         # enable the .htaccess rewrites
14         AllowOverride All
15         Order allow,deny
16         Allow from all
17     </Directory>
18
19     ErrorLog /var/log/apache2/project_error.log
20     CustomLog /var/log/apache2/project_access.log combined
</VirtualHost>

```

If you prefer to use a unix socket, you have to use the `-socket` option instead:

Listing 22-8 1 `FastCgiExternalServer /usr/lib/cgi-bin/php5-fcgi -socket /var/run/php5-fpm.sock -pass-header Authorization`

Nginx

For advanced Nginx configuration options, see the official *Nginx*⁴ documentation. The minimum basics to get your application running under Nginx are:

Listing 22-9

```

1  server {
2      server_name domain.tld www.domain.tld;
3      root /var/www/project/web;
4
5      location / {
6          # try to serve file directly, fallback to app.php
7          try_files $uri /app.php$is_args$args;
8      }
9      # DEV
10     # This rule should only be placed on your development environment
11     # In production, don't include this and don't deploy app_dev.php or config.php
12     location ~ ^/(app_dev|config)\.php(/|$) {
13         fastcgi_pass unix:/var/run/php5-fpm.sock;
14         fastcgi_split_path_info ^(.+\.php)(/.*)$;
15         include fastcgi_params;
16         fastcgi_param SCRIPT_FILENAME $document_root$fastcgi_script_name;
17         fastcgi_param HTTPS off;
18     }
19     # PROD
20     location ~ ^/app\.php(/|$) {
21         fastcgi_pass unix:/var/run/php5-fpm.sock;
22         fastcgi_split_path_info ^(.+\.php)(/.*)$;
23         include fastcgi_params;
24         fastcgi_param SCRIPT_FILENAME $document_root$fastcgi_script_name;
25         fastcgi_param HTTPS off;
26         # Prevents URIs that include the front controller. This will 404:
27         # http://domain.tld/app.php/some-path
28         # Remove the internal directive to allow URIs like this
29         internal;
30     }
31
32     error_log /var/log/nginx/project_error.log;

```

4. <http://wiki.nginx.org/Symfony>

```
33     access_log /var/log/nginx/project_access.log;  
34 }
```



Depending on your PHP-FPM config, the `fastcgi_pass` can also be `fastcgi_pass 127.0.0.1:9000`.



This executes **only** `app.php`, `app_dev.php` and `config.php` in the web directory. All other files will be served as text. You **must** also make sure that if you *do* deploy `app_dev.php` or `config.php` that these files are secured and not available to any outside user (the IP checking code at the top of each file does this by default).

If you have other PHP files in your web directory that need to be executed, be sure to include them in the `location` block above.



Chapter 23

How to Organize Configuration Files

The default Symfony Standard Edition defines three *execution environments* called **dev**, **prod** and **test**. An environment simply represents a way to execute the same codebase with different configurations.

In order to select the configuration file to load for each environment, Symfony executes the `registerContainerConfiguration()` method of the `AppKernel` class:

Listing 23-1

```
1 // app/AppKernel.php
2 use Symfony\Component\HttpKernel\Kernel;
3 use Symfony\Component\Config\Loader\LoaderInterface;
4
5 class AppKernel extends Kernel
6 {
7     // ...
8
9     public function registerContainerConfiguration(LoaderInterface $loader)
10     {
11         $loader->load(__DIR__.'/config/config_'.$this->getEnvironment().'.yaml');
12     }
13 }
```

This method loads the `app/config/config_dev.yaml` file for the **dev** environment and so on. In turn, this file loads the common configuration file located at `app/config/config.yaml`. Therefore, the configuration files of the default Symfony Standard Edition follow this structure:

Listing 23-2

```
1 <your-project>/
2 └─ app/
3     └─ config/
4         └─ config.yaml
5         └─ config_dev.yaml
6         └─ config_prod.yaml
7         └─ config_test.yaml
8         └─ parameters.yaml
9         └─ parameters.yaml.dist
10        └─ routing.yaml
11        └─ routing_dev.yaml
```

```

12 |       └─ security.yml
13 |   └─ src/
14 |   └─ vendor/
15 |   └─ web/

```

This default structure was chosen for its simplicity — one file per environment. But as any other Symfony feature, you can customize it to better suit your needs. The following sections explain different ways to organize your configuration files. In order to simplify the examples, only the **dev** and **prod** environments are taken into account.

Different Directories per Environment

Instead of suffixing the files with **_dev** and **_prod**, this technique groups all the related configuration files under a directory with the same name as the environment:

Listing 23-3

```

1 <your-project>/
2 └─ app/
3     └─ config/
4         └─ common/
5             └─ config.yml
6             └─ parameters.yml
7             └─ routing.yml
8             └─ security.yml
9         └─ dev/
10             └─ config.yml
11             └─ parameters.yml
12             └─ routing.yml
13             └─ security.yml
14         └─ prod/
15             └─ config.yml
16             └─ parameters.yml
17             └─ routing.yml
18             └─ security.yml
19 └─ src/
20 └─ vendor/
21 └─ web/

```

To make this work, change the code of the *registerContainerConfiguration()*¹ method:

Listing 23-4

```

1 // app/AppKernel.php
2 use Symfony\Component\HttpKernel\Kernel;
3 use Symfony\Component\Config\Loader\LoaderInterface;
4
5 class AppKernel extends Kernel
6 {
7     // ...
8
9     public function registerContainerConfiguration(LoaderInterface $loader)
10     {
11         $loader->load(__DIR__.'/config/'.$this->getEnvironment().'/config.yml');
12     }
13 }

```

1. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpKernel/KernelInterface.html#registerContainerConfiguration\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpKernel/KernelInterface.html#registerContainerConfiguration())

Then, make sure that each `config.yml` file loads the rest of the configuration files, including the common files. For instance, this would be the imports needed for the `app/config/dev/config.yml` file:

Listing 23-5

```
1 # app/config/dev/config.yml
2 imports:
3   - { resource: '../common/config.yml' }
4   - { resource: 'parameters.yml' }
5   - { resource: 'security.yml' }
6
7 # ...
```



Due to the way in which parameters are resolved, you cannot use them to build paths in imports dynamically. This means that something like the following doesn't work:

Listing 23-6

```
1 # app/config/config.yml
2 imports:
3   - { resource: "%kernel.root_dir%/parameters.yml" }
```

Semantic Configuration Files

A different organization strategy may be needed for complex applications with large configuration files. For instance, you could create one file per bundle and several files to define all application services:

Listing 23-7

```
1 <your-project>/
2 └─ app/
3     └─ config/
4         └─ bundles/
5             └─ bundle1.yml
6             └─ bundle2.yml
7             └─ ...
8             └─ bundleN.yml
9         └─ environments/
10            └─ common.yml
11            └─ dev.yml
12            └─ prod.yml
13        └─ routing/
14            └─ common.yml
15            └─ dev.yml
16            └─ prod.yml
17        └─ services/
18            └─ frontend.yml
19            └─ backend.yml
20            └─ ...
21            └─ security.yml
22 └─ src/
23 └─ vendor/
24 └─ web/
```

Again, change the code of the `registerContainerConfiguration()` method to make Symfony aware of the new file organization:

Listing 23-8

```

1  // app/AppKernel.php
2  use Symfony\Component\HttpKernel\Kernel;
3  use Symfony\Component\Config\Loader\LoaderInterface;
4
5  class AppKernel extends Kernel
6  {
7      // ...
8
9      public function registerContainerConfiguration(LoaderInterface $loader)
10     {
11         $loader->load(__DIR__.'/config/environments/'.$this->getEnvironment().'.yaml');
12     }
13 }

```

Following the same technique explained in the previous section, make sure to import the appropriate configuration files from each main file (`common.yaml`, `dev.yaml` and `prod.yaml`).

Advanced Techniques

Symfony loads configuration files using the *Config component*, which provides some advanced features.

Mix and Match Configuration Formats

Configuration files can import files defined with any other built-in configuration format (`.yaml`, `.xml`, `.php`, `.ini`):

Listing 23-9

```

1  # app/config/config.yaml
2  imports:
3      - { resource: 'parameters.yaml' }
4      - { resource: 'services.xml' }
5      - { resource: 'security.yaml' }
6      - { resource: 'legacy.php' }
7
8  # ...

```



The `IniFileLoader` parses the file contents using the *`parse_ini_file`*² function. Therefore, you can only set parameters to string values. Use one of the other loaders if you want to use other data types (e.g. boolean, integer, etc.).

If you use any other configuration format, you have to define your own loader class extending it from *`FileLoader`*³. When the configuration values are dynamic, you can use the PHP configuration file to execute your own logic. In addition, you can define your own services to load configurations from databases or web services.

Global Configuration Files

Some system administrators may prefer to store sensitive parameters in files outside the project directory. Imagine that the database credentials for your website are stored in the `/etc/sites/mysite.com/parameters.yaml` file. Loading this file is as simple as indicating the full file path when importing it from any other configuration file:

2. <http://php.net/manual/en/function.parse-ini-file.php>

3. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/DependencyInjection/Loader/FileLoader.html>

Listing 23-10

```
1 # app/config/config.yml
2 imports:
3     - { resource: 'parameters.yml' }
4     - { resource: '/etc/sites/mysite.com/parameters.yml' }
5
6 # ...
```

Most of the time, local developers won't have the same files that exist on the production servers. For that reason, the Config component provides the `ignore_errors` option to silently discard errors when the loaded file doesn't exist:

Listing 23-11

```
1 # app/config/config.yml
2 imports:
3     - { resource: 'parameters.yml' }
4     - { resource: '/etc/sites/mysite.com/parameters.yml', ignore_errors: true }
5
6 # ...
```

As you've seen, there are lots of ways to organize your configuration files. You can choose one of these or even create your own custom way of organizing the files. Don't feel limited by the Standard Edition that comes with Symfony. For even more customization, see *"How to Override Symfony's default Directory Structure"*.



Chapter 24

How to Create a Console Command

The Console page of the Components section (*The Console Component*) covers how to create a console command. This cookbook article covers the differences when creating console commands within the Symfony framework.

Automatically Registering Commands

To make the console commands available automatically with Symfony, create a **Command** directory inside your bundle and create a PHP file suffixed with **Command.php** for each command that you want to provide. For example, if you want to extend the AcmeDemoBundle to greet you from the command line, create **GreetCommand.php** and add the following to it:

```
Listing 24-1 1 // src/Acme/DemoBundle/Command/GreetCommand.php
2 namespace Acme\DemoBundle\Command;
3
4 use Symfony\Bundle\FrameworkBundle\Command\ContainerAwareCommand;
5 use Symfony\Component\Console\Input\InputArgument;
6 use Symfony\Component\Console\Input\InputInterface;
7 use Symfony\Component\Console\Input\InputOption;
8 use Symfony\Component\Console\Output\OutputInterface;
9
10 class GreetCommand extends ContainerAwareCommand
11 {
12     protected function configure()
13     {
14         $this
15             ->setName('demo:greet')
16             ->setDescription('Greet someone')
17             ->addArgument('name', InputArgument::OPTIONAL, 'Who do you want to greet?')
18             ->addOption('yell', null, InputOption::VALUE_NONE, 'If set, the task will yell
19 in uppercase letters')
20         ;
21     }
22
23     protected function execute(InputInterface $input, OutputInterface $output)
```

```

24     {
25         $name = $input->getArgument('name');
26         if ($name) {
27             $text = 'Hello '.$name;
28         } else {
29             $text = 'Hello';
30         }
31
32         if ($input->getOption('yell')) {
33             $text = strtoupper($text);
34         }
35
36         $output->writeln($text);
37     }
    }

```

This command will now automatically be available to run:

Listing 24-2 1 \$ app/console demo:greet Fabien

Register Commands in the Service Container

Just like controllers, commands can be declared as services. See the *dedicated cookbook entry* for details.

Getting Services from the Service Container

By using *ContainerAwareCommand*¹ as the base class for the command (instead of the more basic *Command*²), you have access to the service container. In other words, you have access to any configured service:

Listing 24-3

```

1  protected function execute(InputInterface $input, OutputInterface $output)
2  {
3      $name = $input->getArgument('name');
4      $logger = $this->getContainer()->get('logger');
5
6      $logger->info('Executing command for '.$name);
7      // ...
8  }

```

However, due to the *container scopes*³ this code doesn't work for some services. For instance, if you try to get the `request` service or any other service related to it, you'll get the following error:

Listing 24-4 1 You cannot create a service ("request") of an inactive scope ("request").

Consider the following example that uses the `translator` service to translate some contents using a console command:

Listing 24-5

-
1. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Bundle/FrameworkBundle/Command/ContainerAwareCommand.html>
 2. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Console/Command/Command.html>
 3. `#cookbook-console--cookbook-service_container-scopes`

```

1 protected function execute(InputInterface $input, OutputInterface $output)
2 {
3     $name = $input->getArgument('name');
4     $translator = $this->getContainer()->get('translator');
5     if ($name) {
6         $output->writeln($translator->trans('Hello %name%', array('%name%' => $name)));
7     } else {
8         $output->writeln($translator->trans('Hello!'));
9     }
10 }

```

If you dig into the Translator component classes, you'll see that the `request` service is required to get the locale into which the contents are translated:

Listing 24-6

```

1 // vendor/symfony/symfony/src/Symfony/Bundle/FrameworkBundle/Translation/Translator.php
2 public function getLocale()
3 {
4     if (null === $this->locale && $this->container->isScopeActive('request')
5         && $this->container->has('request')) {
6         $this->locale = $this->container->get('request')->getLocale();
7     }
8
9     return $this->locale;
10 }

```

Therefore, when using the `translator` service inside a command, you'll get the previous *"You cannot create a service of an inactive scope"* error message. The solution in this case is as easy as setting the locale value explicitly before translating contents:

Listing 24-7

```

1 protected function execute(InputInterface $input, OutputInterface $output)
2 {
3     $name = $input->getArgument('name');
4     $locale = $input->getArgument('locale');
5
6     $translator = $this->getContainer()->get('translator');
7     $translator->setLocale($locale);
8
9     if ($name) {
10         $output->writeln($translator->trans('Hello %name%', array('%name%' => $name)));
11     } else {
12         $output->writeln($translator->trans('Hello!'));
13     }
14 }

```

However for other services the solution might be more complex. For more details, see *How to Work with Scopes*.

Testing Commands

When testing commands used as part of the full framework *Symfony\Bundle\FrameworkBundle\Console\Application*⁴ should be used instead of *Symfony\Component\Console\Application*⁵:

4. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Bundle/FrameworkBundle/Console/Application.html>

5. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Console/Application.html>

Listing 24-8

```
1 use Symfony\Component\Console\Tester\CommandTester;
2 use Symfony\Bundle\FrameworkBundle\Console\Application;
3 use Acme\DemoBundle\Command\GreetCommand;
4
5 class ListCommandTest extends \PHPUnit_Framework_TestCase
6 {
7     public function testExecute()
8     {
9         // mock the Kernel or create one depending on your needs
10        $application = new Application($kernel);
11        $application->add(new GreetCommand());
12
13        $command = $application->find('demo:greet');
14        $commandTester = new CommandTester($command);
15        $commandTester->execute(
16            array(
17                'name' => 'Fabien',
18                '--yell' => true,
19            )
20        );
21
22        $this->assertRegExp('/.../', $commandTester->getDisplay());
23
24        // ...
25    }
26 }
```



New in version 2.4: Since Symfony 2.4, the **CommandTester** automatically detects the name of the command to execute. Prior to Symfony 2.4, you need to pass it via the **command** key.



In the specific case above, the **name** parameter and the **--yell** option are not mandatory for the command to work, but are shown so you can see how to customize them when calling the command.

To be able to use the fully set up service container for your console tests you can extend your test from *KernelTestCase*⁶:

Listing 24-9

```
1 use Symfony\Component\Console\Tester\CommandTester;
2 use Symfony\Bundle\FrameworkBundle\Console\Application;
3 use Symfony\Bundle\FrameworkBundle\Test\KernelTestCase;
4 use Acme\DemoBundle\Command\GreetCommand;
5
6 class ListCommandTest extends KernelTestCase
7 {
8     public function testExecute()
9     {
10        $kernel = $this->createKernel();
11        $kernel->boot();
12
13        $application = new Application($kernel);
14        $application->add(new GreetCommand());
```

6. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Bundle/FrameworkBundle/Test/KernelTestCase.html>

```

15
16     $command = $application->find('demo:greet');
17     $commandTester = new CommandTester($command);
18     $commandTester->execute(
19         array(
20             'name' => 'Fabien',
21             '--yell' => true,
22         )
23     );
24
25     $this->assertRegExp('/.../', $commandTester->getDisplay());
26
27     // ...
28 }
29 }

```



New in version 2.5: *KernelTestCase*⁷ was extracted from *WebTestCase*⁸ in Symfony 2.5. *WebTestCase* inherits from *KernelTestCase*. The *WebTestCase* creates an instance of *Client*⁹ via *createClient()*, while *KernelTestCase* creates an instance of *KernelInterface*¹⁰ via *createKernel()*.

7. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Bundle/FrameworkBundle/Test/KernelTestCase.html>

8. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Bundle/FrameworkBundle/Test/WebTestCase.html>

9. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Bundle/FrameworkBundle/Client.html>

10. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpKernel/KernelInterface.html>



Chapter 25

How to Use the Console

The *Using Console Commands, Shortcuts and Built-in Commands* page of the components documentation looks at the global console options. When you use the console as part of the full stack framework, some additional global options are available as well.

By default, console commands run in the **dev** environment and you may want to change this for some commands. For example, you may want to run some commands in the **prod** environment for performance reasons. Also, the result of some commands will be different depending on the environment. For example, the **cache:clear** command will clear and warm the cache for the specified environment only. To clear and warm the **prod** cache you need to run:

Listing 25-1 1 `$ php app/console cache:clear --env=prod`

or the equivalent:

Listing 25-2 1 `$ php app/console cache:clear -e prod`

In addition to changing the environment, you can also choose to disable debug mode. This can be useful where you want to run commands in the **dev** environment but avoid the performance hit of collecting debug data:

Listing 25-3 1 `$ php app/console list --no-debug`

There is an interactive shell which allows you to enter commands without having to specify **php app/console** each time, which is useful if you need to run several commands. To enter the shell run:

Listing 25-4 1 `$ php app/console --shell`
2 `$ php app/console -s`

You can now just run commands with the command name:

Listing 25-5 1 `Symfony > list`

When using the shell you can choose to run each command in a separate process:

Listing 25-6

```
1 $ php app/console --shell --process-isolation
2 $ php app/console -s --process-isolation
```

When you do this, the output will not be colorized and interactivity is not supported so you will need to pass all command params explicitly.



Unless you are using isolated processes, clearing the cache in the shell will not have an effect on subsequent commands you run. This is because the original cached files are still being used.



Chapter 26

How to Generate URLs and Send Emails from the Console

Unfortunately, the command line context does not know about your VirtualHost or domain name. This means that if you generate absolute URLs within a Console Command you'll probably end up with something like `http://localhost/foo/bar` which is not very useful.

To fix this, you need to configure the "request context", which is a fancy way of saying that you need to configure your environment so that it knows what URL it should use when generating URLs.

There are two ways of configuring the request context: at the application level and per Command.

Configuring the Request Context Globally

To configure the Request Context - which is used by the URL Generator - you can redefine the parameters it uses as default values to change the default host (localhost) and scheme (http). You can also configure the base path if Symfony is not running in the root directory.

Note that this does not impact URLs generated via normal web requests, since those will override the defaults.

Listing 26-1

```
1 # app/config/parameters.yml
2 parameters:
3     router.request_context.host: example.org
4     router.request_context.scheme: https
5     router.request_context.base_url: my/path
```

Configuring the Request Context per Command

To change it only in one command you can simply fetch the Request Context from the **router** service and override its settings:

Listing 26-2

```

1  // src/Acme/DemoBundle/Command/DemoCommand.php
2
3  // ...
4  class DemoCommand extends ContainerAwareCommand
5  {
6      protected function execute(InputInterface $input, OutputInterface $output)
7      {
8          $context = $this->getContainer()->get('router')->getContext();
9          $context->setHost('example.com');
10         $context->setScheme('https');
11         $context->setBaseUrl('my/path');
12
13         // ... your code here
14     }
15 }

```

Using Memory Spooling



New in version 2.3: When using Symfony 2.3+ and SwiftmailerBundle 2.3.5+, the memory spool is now handled automatically in the CLI and the code below is not necessary anymore.

Sending emails in a console command works the same way as described in the *How to Send an Email* cookbook except if memory spooling is used.

When using memory spooling (see the *How to Spool Emails* cookbook for more information), you must be aware that because of how Symfony handles console commands, emails are not sent automatically. You must take care of flushing the queue yourself. Use the following code to send emails inside your console command:

Listing 26-3

```

1  $message = new \Swift_Message();
2
3  // ... prepare the message
4
5  $container = $this->getContainer();
6  $mailer = $container->get('mailer');
7
8  $mailer->send($message);
9
10 // now manually flush the queue
11 $spool = $mailer->getTransport()->getSpool();
12 $transport = $container->get('swiftmailer.transport.real');
13
14 $spool->flushQueue($transport);

```

Another option is to create an environment which is only used by console commands and uses a different spooling method.



Taking care of the spooling is only needed when memory spooling is used. If you are using file spooling (or no spooling at all), there is no need to flush the queue manually within the command.



Chapter 27

How to Enable Logging in Console Commands

The Console component doesn't provide any logging capabilities out of the box. Normally, you run console commands manually and observe the output, which is why logging is not provided. However, there are cases when you might need logging. For example, if you are running console commands unattended, such as from cron jobs or deployment scripts, it may be easier to use Symfony's logging capabilities instead of configuring other tools to gather console output and process it. This can be especially helpful if you already have some existing setup for aggregating and analyzing Symfony logs.

There are basically two logging cases you would need:

- Manually logging some information from your command;
- Logging uncaught Exceptions.

Manually Logging from a Console Command

This one is really simple. When you create a console command within the full framework as described in "How to Create a Console Command", your command extends *ContainerAwareCommand*¹. This means that you can simply access the standard logger service through the container and use it to do the logging:

Listing 27-1

```
1 // src/Acme/DemoBundle/Command/GreetCommand.php
2 namespace Acme\DemoBundle\Command;
3
4 use Symfony\Bundle\FrameworkBundle\Command\ContainerAwareCommand;
5 use Symfony\Component\Console\Input\InputArgument;
6 use Symfony\Component\Console\Input\InputInterface;
7 use Symfony\Component\Console\Input\InputOption;
8 use Symfony\Component\Console\Output\OutputInterface;
9 use Psr\Log\LoggerInterface;
10
11 class GreetCommand extends ContainerAwareCommand
12 {
13     // ...
14 }
```

1. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Bundle/FrameworkBundle/Command/ContainerAwareCommand.html>

```

15     protected function execute(InputInterface $input, OutputInterface $output)
16     {
17         /** @var $logger LoggerInterface */
18         $logger = $this->getContainer()->get('logger');
19
20         $name = $input->getArgument('name');
21         if ($name) {
22             $text = 'Hello '.$name;
23         } else {
24             $text = 'Hello';
25         }
26
27         if ($input->getOption('yell')) {
28             $text = strtoupper($text);
29             $logger->warning('Yelled: '.$text);
30         } else {
31             $logger->info('Greeted: '.$text);
32         }
33
34         $output->writeln($text);
35     }
36 }

```

Depending on the environment in which you run your command (and your logging setup), you should see the logged entries in `app/logs/dev.log` or `app/logs/prod.log`.

Enabling automatic Exceptions Logging

To get your console application to automatically log uncaught exceptions for all of your commands, you can use *console events*.



New in version 2.3: Console events were introduced in Symfony 2.3.

First configure a listener for console exception events in the service container:

Listing 27-2

```

1 # app/config/services.yml
2 services:
3     kernel.listener.command_dispatch:
4         class: Acme\DemoBundle\EventListener\ConsoleExceptionListener
5         arguments:
6             logger: "@logger"
7         tags:
8             - { name: kernel.event_listener, event: console.exception }

```

Then implement the actual listener:

Listing 27-3

```

1 // src/Acme/DemoBundle/EventListener/ConsoleExceptionListener.php
2 namespace Acme\DemoBundle\EventListener;
3
4 use Symfony\Component\Console\Event\ConsoleExceptionEvent;
5 use Psr\Log\LoggerInterface;
6

```

```

7 class ConsoleExceptionListener
8 {
9     private $logger;
10
11     public function __construct(LoggerInterface $logger)
12     {
13         $this->logger = $logger;
14     }
15
16     public function onConsoleException(ConsoleExceptionEvent $event)
17     {
18         $command = $event->getCommand();
19         $exception = $event->getException();
20
21         $message = sprintf(
22             '%s: %s (uncaught exception) at %s line %s while running console command `%s`',
23             get_class($exception),
24             $exception->getMessage(),
25             $exception->getFile(),
26             $exception->getLine(),
27             $command->getName()
28         );
29
30         $this->logger->error($message);
31     }
32 }

```

In the code above, when any command throws an exception, the listener will receive an event. You can simply log it by passing the logger service via the service configuration. Your method receives a *ConsoleExceptionEvent*² object, which has methods to get information about the event and the exception.

Logging non-0 Exit Statuses

The logging capabilities of the console can be further extended by logging non-0 exit statuses. This way you will know if a command had any errors, even if no exceptions were thrown.

First configure a listener for console terminate events in the service container:

Listing 27-4

```

1 # app/config/services.yml
2 services:
3     kernel.listener.command_dispatch:
4         class: Acme\DemoBundle\EventListener\ConsoleTerminateListener
5         arguments:
6             logger: "@logger"
7         tags:
8             - { name: kernel.event_listener, event: console.terminate }

```

Then implement the actual listener:

Listing 27-5

```

1 // src/Acme/DemoBundle/EventListener/ConsoleExceptionListener.php
2 namespace Acme\DemoBundle\EventListener;
3
4 use Symfony\Component\Console\Event\ConsoleTerminateEvent;

```

2. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Console/Event/ConsoleExceptionEvent.html>

```

5 use Psr\Log\LoggerInterface;
6
7 class ConsoleExceptionHandler
8 {
9     private $logger;
10
11     public function __construct(LoggerInterface $logger)
12     {
13         $this->logger = $logger;
14     }
15
16     public function onConsoleTerminate(ConsoleTerminateEvent $event)
17     {
18         $statusCode = $event->getExitCode();
19         $command = $event->getCommand();
20
21         if ($statusCode === 0) {
22             return;
23         }
24
25         if ($statusCode > 255) {
26             $statusCode = 255;
27             $event->setExitCode($statusCode);
28         }
29
30         $this->logger->warning(sprintf(
31             'Command `%s` exited with status code %d',
32             $command->getName(),
33             $statusCode
34         ));
35     }
36 }

```




Chapter 28

How to Define Commands as Services



New in version 2.4: Support for registering commands in the service container was introduced in Symfony 2.4.

By default, Symfony will take a look in the `Command` directory of each bundle and automatically register your commands. If a command extends the `ContainerAwareCommand`¹, Symfony will even inject the container. While making life easier, this has some limitations:

- Your command must live in the `Command` directory;
- There's no way to conditionally register your service based on the environment or availability of some dependencies;
- You can't access the container in the `configure()` method (because `setContainer` hasn't been called yet);
- You can't use the same class to create many commands (i.e. each with different configuration).

To solve these problems, you can register your command as a service and tag it with `console.command`:

Listing 28-1

```
1 # app/config/config.yml
2 services:
3     acme_hello.command.my_command:
4         class: Acme\HelloBundle\Command\MyCommand
5         tags:
6             - { name: console.command }
```

Using Dependencies and Parameters to Set Default Values for Options

Imagine you want to provide a default value for the `name` option. You could pass one of the following as the 5th argument of `addOption()`:

- a hardcoded string;

1. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Bundle/FrameworkBundle/Command/ContainerAwareCommand.html>

- a container parameter (e.g. something from parameters.yml);
- a value computed by a service (e.g. a repository).

By extending `ContainerAwareCommand`, only the first is possible, because you can't access the container inside the `configure()` method. Instead, inject any parameter or service you need into the constructor. For example, suppose you have some `NameRepository` service that you'll use to get your default value:

Listing 28-2

```
1  // src/Acme/DemoBundle/Command/GreetCommand.php
2  namespace Acme\DemoBundle\Command;
3
4  use Acme\DemoBundle\Entity\NameRepository;
5  use Symfony\Component\Console\Command\Command;
6  use Symfony\Component\Console\Input\InputInterface;
7  use Symfony\Component\Console\Input\InputOption;
8  use Symfony\Component\Console\Output\OutputInterface;
9
10 class GreetCommand extends Command
11 {
12     protected $nameRepository;
13
14     public function __construct(NameRepository $nameRepository)
15     {
16         $this->nameRepository = $nameRepository;
17
18         parent::__construct();
19     }
20
21     protected function configure()
22     {
23         $defaultName = $this->nameRepository->findLastOne();
24
25         $this
26             ->setName('demo:greet')
27             ->setDescription('Greet someone')
28             ->addOption('name', '-n', InputOption::VALUE_REQUIRED, 'Who do you want to
29 greet?', $defaultName)
30         ;
31     }
32
33     protected function execute(InputInterface $input, OutputInterface $output)
34     {
35         $name = $input->getOption('name');
36
37         $output->writeln($name);
38     }
39 }
```

Now, just update the arguments of your service configuration like normal to inject the `NameRepository`. Great, you now have a dynamic default value!



Be careful not to actually do any work in `configure` (e.g. make database queries), as your code will be run, even if you're using the console to execute a different command.



Chapter 29

How to Customize Error Pages

When an exception is thrown, the core `HttpKernel` class catches it and dispatches a `kernel.exception` event. This gives you the power to convert the exception into a `Response` in a few different ways.

The core `TwigBundle` sets up a listener for this event which will run a configurable (but otherwise arbitrary) controller to generate the response. The default controller used has a sensible way of picking one out of the available set of error templates.

Thus, error pages can be customized in different ways, depending on how much control you need:

1. *Use the default `ExceptionHandler` and create a few templates that allow you to customize how your different error pages look (easy);*
2. *Replace the default exception controller with your own (intermediate).*
3. *Use the `kernel.exception` event to come up with your own handling (advanced).*

Using the Default ExceptionController

By default, the `showAction()` method of the `ExceptionHandler`¹ will be called when an exception occurs.

This controller will either display an *exception* or *error* page, depending on the setting of the `kernel.debug` flag. While *exception* pages give you a lot of helpful information during development, *error* pages are meant to be shown to the user in production.



Testing Error Pages during Development

You should not set `kernel.debug` to `false` in order to see your *error* pages during development. This will also stop Symfony from recompiling your twig templates, among other things.

The third-party `WebfactoryExceptionsBundle`² provides a special test controller that allows you to display your custom error pages for arbitrary HTTP status codes even with `kernel.debug` set to `true`.

1. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Bundle/TwigBundle/Controller/ExceptionHandler.html>

2. <https://github.com/webfactory/exceptions-bundle>

How the Template for the Error and Exception Pages Is Selected

The TwigBundle contains some default templates for error and exception pages in its `Resources/views/Exception` directory.



In a standard Symfony installation, the TwigBundle can be found at `vendor/symfony/symfony/src/Symfony/Bundle/TwigBundle`. In addition to the standard HTML error page, it also provides a default error page for many of the most common response formats, including JSON (`error.json.twig`), XML (`error.xml.twig`) and even JavaScript (`error.js.twig`), to name a few.

Here is how the `ExceptionHandler` will pick one of the available templates based on the HTTP status code and request format:

- For `error` pages, it first looks for a template for the given format and status code (like `error404.json.twig`);
- If that does not exist or apply, it looks for a general template for the given format (like `error.json.twig` or `exception.json.twig`);
- Finally, it ignores the format and falls back to the HTML template (like `error.html.twig` or `exception.html.twig`).



If the exception being handled implements the `HttpExceptionInterface`³, the `getStatusCode()` method will be called to obtain the HTTP status code to use. Otherwise, the status code will be "500".

Overriding or Adding Templates

To override these templates, simply rely on the standard method for overriding templates that live inside a bundle. For more information, see *Overriding Bundle Templates*.

For example, to override the default error template, create a new template located at `app/Resources/TwigBundle/views/Exception/error.html.twig`:

Listing 29-1

```
1 <!DOCTYPE html>
2 <html>
3 <head>
4     <meta http-equiv="Content-Type" content="text/html; charset=utf-8" />
5     <title>An Error Occurred: {{ status_text }}</title>
6 </head>
7 <body>
8     <h1>Oops! An Error Occurred</h1>
9     <h2>The server returned a "{{ status_code }}" <{{ status_text }}>.</h2>
10 </body>
11 </html>
```



You **must not** use `is_granted` in your error pages (or layout used by your error pages), because the router runs before the firewall. If the router throws an exception (for instance, when the route does not match), then using `is_granted` will throw a further exception. You can use `is_granted` safely by saying `{% if app.user and is_granted('...') %}`.

3. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpKernel/Exception/HttpExceptionInterface.html>



If you're not familiar with Twig, don't worry. Twig is a simple, powerful and optional templating engine that integrates with Symfony. For more information about Twig see *Creating and Using Templates*.

This works not only to replace the default templates, but also to add new ones.

For instance, create an `app/Resources/TwigBundle/views/Exception/error404.html.twig` template to display a special page for 404 (page not found) errors. Refer to the previous section for the order in which the `ExceptionHandler` tries different template names.



Often, the easiest way to customize an error page is to copy it from the TwigBundle into `app/Resources/TwigBundle/views/Exception` and then modify it.



The debug-friendly exception pages shown to the developer can even be customized in the same way by creating templates such as `exception.html.twig` for the standard HTML exception page or `exception.json.twig` for the JSON exception page.

Replacing the Default ExceptionController

If you need a little more flexibility beyond just overriding the template, then you can change the controller that renders the error page. For example, you might need to pass some additional variables into your template.



Make sure you don't lose the exception pages that render the helpful error messages during development.

To do this, simply create a new controller and set the `twig.exception_controller` option to point to it.

Listing 29-2

```
1 # app/config/config.yml
2 twig:
3     exception_controller: AcmeFooBundle:Exception:showException
```



You can also set up your controller as a service.

The default value of `twig.controller.exception:showAction` refers to the `showAction` method of the `ExceptionHandler` described previously, which is registered in the DIC as the `twig.controller.exception` service.

Your controller will be passed two parameters: `exception`, which is a *FlattenException*⁴ instance created from the exception being handled, and `logger`, an instance of *DebugLoggerInterface*⁵ (which may be null).

4. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Debug/Exception/FlattenException.html>

5. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpKernel/Log/DebugLoggerInterface.html>



The Request that will be dispatched to your controller is created in the *ExceptionListener*⁶. This event listener is set up by the TwigBundle.

You can, of course, also extend the previously described *ExceptionController*⁷. In that case, you might want to override one or both of the `showAction` and `findTemplate` methods. The latter one locates the template to be used.



As of writing, the *ExceptionController* is *not* part of the Symfony API, so be aware that it might change in following releases.

Working with the `kernel.exception` Event

As mentioned in the beginning, the `kernel.exception` event is dispatched whenever the Symfony Kernel needs to handle an exception. For more information on that, see *kernel.exception Event*.

Working with this event is actually much more powerful than what has been explained before but also requires a thorough understanding of Symfony internals.

To give one example, assume your application throws specialized exceptions with a particular meaning to your domain.

In that case, all the default *ExceptionListener* and *ExceptionController* could do for you was trying to figure out the right HTTP status code and display your nice-looking error page.

Writing your own event listener for the `kernel.exception` event allows you to have a closer look at the exception and take different actions depending on it. Those actions might include logging the exception, redirecting the user to another page or rendering specialized error pages.



If your listener calls `setResponse()` on the *GetResponseForExceptionEvent*⁸, event propagation will be stopped and the response will be sent to the client.

This approach allows you to create centralized and layered error handling: Instead of catching (and handling) the same exceptions in various controllers again and again, you can have just one (or several) listeners deal with them.



To see an example, have a look at the *ExceptionListener*⁹ in the Security Component.

It handles various security-related exceptions that are thrown in your application (like *AccessDeniedException*¹⁰) and takes measures like redirecting the user to the login page, logging them out and other things.

Good luck!

6. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpKernel/EventListener/ExceptionListener.html>

7. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Bundle/TwigBundle/Controller/ExceptionController.html>

8. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpKernel/Event/GetResponseForExceptionEvent.html>

9. <https://github.com/symfony/symfony/blob/master/src/Symfony/Component/Security/Http/Firewall/ExceptionListener.php>

10. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/Exception/AccessDeniedException.html>



Chapter 30

How to Define Controllers as Services

In the book, you've learned how easily a controller can be used when it extends the base *Controller*¹ class. While this works fine, controllers can also be specified as services.



Specifying a controller as a service takes a little bit more work. The primary advantage is that the entire controller or any services passed to the controller can be modified via the service container configuration. This is especially useful when developing an open-source bundle or any bundle that will be used in many different projects.

A second advantage is that your controllers are more "sandboxed". By looking at the constructor arguments, it's easy to see what types of things this controller may or may not do. And because each dependency needs to be injected manually, it's more obvious (i.e. if you have many constructor arguments) when your controller has become too big, and may need to be split into multiple controllers.

So, even if you don't specify your controllers as services, you'll likely see this done in some open-source Symfony bundles. It's also important to understand the pros and cons of both approaches.

Defining the Controller as a Service

A controller can be defined as a service in the same way as any other class. For example, if you have the following simple controller:

Listing 30-1

```
1 // src/Acme/HelloBundle/Controller/HelloController.php
2 namespace Acme\HelloBundle\Controller;
3
4 use Symfony\Component\HttpFoundation\Response;
5
6 class HelloController
7 {
8     public function indexAction($name)
9     {
```

1. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Bundle/FrameworkBundle/Controller/Controller.html>

```

10     return new Response('<html><body>Hello '.$name.'!</body></html>');
11 }
12 }

```

Then you can define it as a service as follows:

Listing 30-2

```

1 # src/Acme/HelloBundle/Resources/config/services.yml
2 parameters:
3     # ...
4     acme.controller.hello.class: Acme\HelloBundle\Controller\HelloController
5
6 services:
7     acme.hello.controller:
8         class: "%acme.controller.hello.class%"

```

Referring to the Service

To refer to a controller that's defined as a service, use the single colon (:) notation. For example, to forward to the `indexAction()` method of the service defined above with the id `acme.hello.controller`:

Listing 30-3

```

1 $this->forward('acme.hello.controller:indexAction', array('name' => $name));

```



You cannot drop the **Action** part of the method name when using this syntax.

You can also route to the service by using the same notation when defining the route `_controller` value:

Listing 30-4

```

1 # app/config/routing.yml
2 hello:
3     path: /hello
4     defaults: { _controller: acme.hello.controller:indexAction }

```



You can also use annotations to configure routing using a controller defined as a service. See the *FrameworkExtraBundle* documentation for details.

Alternatives to base Controller Methods

When using a controller defined as a service, it will most likely not extend the base `Controller` class. Instead of relying on its shortcut methods, you'll interact directly with the services that you need. Fortunately, this is usually pretty easy and the base *Controller class source code*² is a great source on how to perform many common tasks.

For example, if you want to render a template instead of creating the `Response` object directly, then your code would look like this if you were extending Symfony's base controller:

2. <https://github.com/symfony/symfony/blob/master/src/Symfony/Bundle/FrameworkBundle/Controller/Controller.php>


```

Listing 30-5 1 // src/Acme/HelloBundle/Controller/HelloController.php
2 namespace Acme\HelloBundle\Controller;
3
4 use Symfony\Bundle\FrameworkBundle\Controller\Controller;
5
6 class HelloController extends Controller
7 {
8     public function indexAction($name)
9     {
10         return $this->render(
11             'AcmeHelloBundle:Hello:index.html.twig',
12             array('name' => $name)
13         );
14     }
15 }

```

If you look at the source code for the `render` function in Symfony's *base Controller class*³, you'll see that this method actually uses the `templating` service:

```

Listing 30-6 1 public function render($view, array $parameters = array(), Response $response = null)
2 {
3     return $this->container->get('templating')->renderResponse($view, $parameters,
4 $response);
5 }

```

In a controller that's defined as a service, you can instead inject the `templating` service and use it directly:

```

Listing 30-7 1 // src/Acme/HelloBundle/Controller/HelloController.php
2 namespace Acme\HelloBundle\Controller;
3
4 use Symfony\Bundle\FrameworkBundle\Templating\EngineInterface;
5 use Symfony\Component\HttpFoundation\Response;
6
7 class HelloController
8 {
9     private $templating;
10
11     public function __construct(EngineInterface $templating)
12     {
13         $this->templating = $templating;
14     }
15
16     public function indexAction($name)
17     {
18         return $this->templating->renderResponse(
19             'AcmeHelloBundle:Hello:index.html.twig',
20             array('name' => $name)
21         );
22     }
23 }

```

The service definition also needs modifying to specify the constructor argument:

```

Listing 30-8 1 # src/Acme/HelloBundle/Resources/config/services.yml
2 parameters:

```

3. <https://github.com/symfony/symfony/blob/master/src/Symfony/Bundle/FrameworkBundle/Controller/Controller.php>

```
3     # ...
4     acme.controller.hello.class: Acme\HelloBundle\Controller\HelloController
5
6 services:
7     acme.hello.controller:
8         class:      "%acme.controller.hello.class%"
9         arguments: ["@templating"]
```

Rather than fetching the **templating** service from the container, you can inject *only* the exact service(s) that you need directly into the controller.



This does not mean that you cannot extend these controllers from your own base controller. The move away from the standard base controller is because its helper methods rely on having the container available which is not the case for controllers that are defined as services. It may be a good idea to extract common code into a service that's injected rather than place that code into a base controller that you extend. Both approaches are valid, exactly how you want to organize your reusable code is up to you.



Chapter 31

How to Optimize your Development Environment for Debugging

When you work on a Symfony project on your local machine, you should use the `dev` environment (`app_dev.php` front controller). This environment configuration is optimized for two main purposes:

- Give the developer accurate feedback whenever something goes wrong (web debug toolbar, nice exception pages, profiler, ...);
- Be as similar as possible as the production environment to avoid problems when deploying the project.

Disabling the Bootstrap File and Class Caching

And to make the production environment as fast as possible, Symfony creates big PHP files in your cache containing the aggregation of PHP classes your project needs for every request. However, this behavior can confuse your IDE or your debugger. This recipe shows you how you can tweak this caching mechanism to make it friendlier when you need to debug code that involves Symfony classes.

The `app_dev.php` front controller reads as follows by default:

Listing 31-1

```
1 // ...
2
3 $loader = require_once __DIR__.'/../app/bootstrap.php.cache';
4 require_once __DIR__.'/../app/AppKernel.php';
5
6 $kernel = new AppKernel('dev', true);
7 $kernel->loadClassCache();
8 $request = Request::createFromGlobals();
```

To make your debugger happier, disable all PHP class caches by removing the call to `loadClassCache()` and by replacing the require statements like below:

Listing 31-2

```

1  // ...
2
3  // $loader = require_once __DIR__.'../app/bootstrap.php.cache';
4  $loader = require_once __DIR__.'../app/autoload.php';
5  require_once __DIR__.'../app/AppKernel.php';
6
7  use Symfony\Component\HttpFoundation\Request;
8
9  $kernel = new AppKernel('dev', true);
10 // $kernel->loadClassCache();
11 $request = Request::createFromGlobals();

```



If you disable the PHP caches, don't forget to revert after your debugging session.

Some IDEs do not like the fact that some classes are stored in different locations. To avoid problems, you can either tell your IDE to ignore the PHP cache files, or you can change the extension used by Symfony for these files:

Listing 31-3 1 `$kernel->loadClassCache('classes', '.php.cache');`



Chapter 32

How to Deploy a Symfony Application



Deploying can be a complex and varied task depending on your setup and needs. This entry doesn't try to explain everything, but rather offers the most common requirements and ideas for deployment.

Symfony Deployment Basics

The typical steps taken while deploying a Symfony application include:

1. Upload your modified code to the live server;
2. Update your vendor dependencies (typically done via Composer, and may be done before uploading);
3. Running database migrations or similar tasks to update any changed data structures;
4. Clearing (and perhaps more importantly, warming up) your cache.

A deployment may also include other things, such as:

- Tagging a particular version of your code as a release in your source control repository;
- Creating a temporary staging area to build your updated setup "offline";
- Running any tests available to ensure code and/or server stability;
- Removal of any unnecessary files from **web** to keep your production environment clean;
- Clearing of external cache systems (like *Memcached*¹ or *Redis*²).

How to Deploy a Symfony Application

There are several ways you can deploy a Symfony application.

Start with a few basic deployment strategies and build up from there.

1. <http://memcached.org/>
2. <http://redis.io/>

Basic File Transfer

The most basic way of deploying an application is copying the files manually via ftp/scp (or similar method). This has its disadvantages as you lack control over the system as the upgrade progresses. This method also requires you to take some manual steps after transferring the files (see Common Post-Deployment Tasks)

Using Source Control

If you're using source control (e.g. Git or SVN), you can simplify by having your live installation also be a copy of your repository. When you're ready to upgrade it is as simple as fetching the latest updates from your source control system.

This makes updating your files *easier*, but you still need to worry about manually taking other steps (see Common Post-Deployment Tasks).

Using Build Scripts and other Tools

There are also high-quality tools to help ease the pain of deployment. There are even a few tools which have been specifically tailored to the requirements of Symfony, and which take special care to ensure that everything before, during, and after a deployment has gone correctly.

See The Tools for a list of tools that can help with deployment.

Common Post-Deployment Tasks

After deploying your actual source code, there are a number of common things you'll need to do:

A) Check Requirements

Check if your server meets the requirements by running:

Listing 32-1 1 \$ php app/check.php

B) Configure your app/config/parameters.yml File

This file should be customized on each system. The method you use to deploy your source code should *not* deploy this file. Instead, you should set it up manually (or via some build process) on your server(s).

C) Update your Vendors

Your vendors can be updated before transferring your source code (i.e. update the **vendor/** directory, then transfer that with your source code) or afterwards on the server. Either way, just update your vendors as you normally do:

Listing 32-2 1 \$ php composer.phar install --no-dev --optimize-autoloader



The **--optimize-autoloader** flag makes Composer's autoloader more performant by building a "class map". The **--no-dev** flag ensures that development packages are not installed in the production environment.



If you get a "class not found" error during this step, you may need to run `export SYMFONY_ENV=prod` before running this command so that the `post-install-cmd` scripts run in the `prod` environment.

D) Clear your Symfony Cache

Make sure you clear (and warm-up) your Symfony cache:

Listing 32-3 1 `$ php app/console cache:clear --env=prod --no-debug`

E) Dump your Assetic Assets

If you're using Assetic, you'll also want to dump your assets:

Listing 32-4 1 `$ php app/console assetic:dump --env=prod --no-debug`

F) Other Things!

There may be lots of other things that you need to do, depending on your setup:

- Running any database migrations
- Clearing your APC cache
- Running `assets:install` (taken care of already in `composer.phar install`)
- Add/edit CRON jobs
- Pushing assets to a CDN
- ...

Application Lifecycle: Continuous Integration, QA, etc

While this entry covers the technical details of deploying, the full lifecycle of taking code from development up to production may have a lot more steps (think deploying to staging, QA, running tests, etc).

The use of staging, testing, QA, continuous integration, database migrations and the capability to roll back in case of failure are all strongly advised. There are simple and more complex tools and one can make the deployment as easy (or sophisticated) as your environment requires.

Don't forget that deploying your application also involves updating any dependency (typically via Composer), migrating your database, clearing your cache and other potential things like pushing assets to a CDN (see Common Post-Deployment Tasks).

The Tools

*Capifony*³:

This tool provides a specialized set of tools on top of Capistrano, tailored specifically to symfony and Symfony projects.

3. <http://capifony.org/>

*sf2debpkg*⁴:

This tool helps you build a native Debian package for your Symfony project.

*Magallanes*⁵:

This Capistrano-like deployment tool is built in PHP, and may be easier for PHP developers to extend for their needs.

Bundles:

There are many *bundles that add deployment features*⁶ directly into your Symfony console.

Basic scripting:

You can of course use shell, *Ant*⁷, or any other build tool to script the deploying of your project.

Platform as a Service Providers:

PaaS is a relatively new way to deploy your application. Typically a PaaS will use a single configuration file in your project's root directory to determine how to build an environment on the fly that supports your software. One provider with confirmed Symfony support is *PagodaBox*⁸.



Looking for more? Talk to the community on the *Symfony IRC channel*⁹ #symfony (on freenode) for more information.

4. <https://github.com/liip/sf2debpkg>

5. <https://github.com/andres-montanez/Magallanes>

6. <http://knpbundles.com/search?q=deploy>

7. <http://blog.sznepka.pl/deploying-symfony2-applications-with-ant>

8. <https://github.com/jmather/pagoda-symfony-sonata-distribution/blob/master/Boxfile>

9. <http://webchat.freenode.net/?channels=symfony>



Chapter 33

Deploying to Microsoft Azure Website Cloud

This step by step cookbook describes how to deploy a small Symfony web application to the Microsoft Azure Website cloud platform. It will explain how to setup a new Azure website including configuring the right PHP version and global environment variables. The document also shows how to you can leverage Git and Composer to deploy your Symfony application to the cloud.

Setting up the Azure Website

To setup a new Microsoft Azure Website, first *signup with Azure*¹ or sign in with your credentials. Once you're connected to your *Azure Portal*² interface, scroll down to the bottom and select the **New** panel. On this panel, click **Web Site** and choose **Custom Create**:

Create a new custom Azure Website

Step 1: Create Web Site

Here, you will be prompted to fill in some basic information.

Setup the Azure Website

For the URL, enter the URL that you would like to use for your Symfony application, then pick **Create new web hosting plan** in the region you want. By default, a *free 20 MB SQL database* is selected in the database dropdown list. In this tutorial, the Symfony app will connect to a MySQL database. Pick the **Create a new MySQL database** option in the dropdown list. You can keep the **DefaultConnection** string name. Finally, check the box **Publish from source control** to enable a Git repository and go to the next step.

1. <https://signup.live.com/signup.aspx>

2. <https://manage.windowsazure.com>

Step 2: New MySQL Database

On this step, you will be prompted to setup your MySQL database storage with a database name and a region. The MySQL database storage is provided by Microsoft in partnership with ClearDB. Choose the same region you selected for the hosting plan configuration in the previous step.

Setup the MySQL database

Agree to the terms and conditions and click on the right arrow to continue.

Step 3: Where Is your Source Code

Now, on the third step, select a **Local Git repository** item and click on the right arrow to configure your Azure Website credentials.

Setup a local Git repository

Step 4: New Username and Password

Great! You're now on the final step. Create a username and a secure password: these will become essential identifiers to connect to the FTP server and also to push your application code to the Git repository.

Configure Azure Website credentials

Congratulations! Your Azure Website is now up and running. You can check it by browsing to the Website url you configured in the first step. You should see the following display in your web browser:

Azure Website is running

The Microsoft Azure portal also provides a complete control panel for the Azure Website.

Azure Website Control Panel

Your Azure Website is ready! But to run a Symfony site, you need to configure just a few additional things.

Configuring the Azure Website for Symfony

This section of the tutorial details how to configure the correct version of PHP to run Symfony. It also shows you how to enable some mandatory PHP extensions and how to properly configure PHP for a production environment.

Configuring the latest PHP Runtime

Even though Symfony only requires PHP 5.3.3 to run, it's always recommended to use the most recent PHP version whenever possible. PHP 5.3 is no longer supported by the PHP core team, but you can update it easily in Azure.

To update your PHP version on Azure, go to the **Configure** tab of the control panel and select the version you want.

Enabling the most recent PHP runtime from Azure Website Control Panel

Click the **Save** button in the bottom bar to save your changes and restart the web server.



Choosing a more recent PHP version can greatly improve runtime performance. PHP 5.5 ships with a new built-in PHP accelerator called OPcache that replaces APC. On an Azure Website, OPcache is already enabled and there is no need to install and setup APC.

The following screenshot shows the output of a *phpinfo*³ script run from an Azure Website to verify that PHP 5.5 is running with OPcache enabled.

OPcache Configuration

Tweaking php.ini Configuration Settings

Microsoft Azure allows you to override the `php.ini` global configuration settings by creating a custom `.user.ini` file under the project root directory (`site/wwwroot`).

Listing 33-1

```
1 ; .user.ini
2 expose_php = Off
3 memory_limit = 256M
4 upload_max_filesize = 10M
```

None of these settings *needs* to be overridden. The default PHP configuration is already pretty good, so this is just an example to show how you can easily tweak PHP internal settings by uploading your custom `.ini` file.

You can either manually create this file on your Azure Website FTP server under the `site/wwwroot` directory or deploy it with Git. You can get your FTP server credentials from the Azure Website Control panel under the **Dashboard** tab on the right sidebar. If you want to use Git, simply put your `.user.ini` file at the root of your local repository and push your commits to your Azure Website repository.



This cookbook has a section dedicated to explaining how to configure your Azure Website Git repository and how to push the commits to be deployed. See *Deploying from Git*. You can also learn more about configuring PHP internal settings on the official *PHP MSDN documentation*⁴ page.

Enabling the PHP intl Extension

This is the tricky part of the guide! At the time of writing this cookbook, Microsoft Azure Website provided the `intl` extension, but it's not enabled by default. To enable the `intl` extension, there is no need to upload any DLL files as the `php_intl.dll` file already exists on Azure. In fact, this file just needs to be moved into the custom website extension directory.



The Microsoft Azure team is currently working on enabling the `intl` PHP extension by default. In the near future, the following steps will no longer be necessary.

To get the `php_intl.dll` file under your `site/wwwroot` directory, simply access the online **Kudu** tool by browsing to the following url:

Listing 33-2

```
1 https://[your-website-name].scm.azurewebsites.net
```

3. <http://php.net/manual/en/function.phpinfo.php>

4. <http://blogs.msdn.com/b/silverlining/archive/2012/07/10/configuring-php-in-windows-azure-websites-with-user-ini-files.aspx>

Kudu is a set of tools to manage your application. It comes with a file explorer, a command line prompt, a log stream and a configuration settings summary page. Of course, this section can only be accessed if you're logged in to your main Azure Website account.

The Kudu Panel

From the Kudu front page, click on the **Debug Console** navigation item in the main menu and choose **CMD**. This should open the **Debug Console** page that shows a file explorer and a console prompt below.

In the console prompt, type the following three commands to copy the original `php_intl.dll` extension file into a custom website `ext/` directory. This new directory must be created under the main directory `site/wwwroot`.

Listing 33-3

```
1 $ cd site\wwwroot
2 $ mkdir ext
3 $ copy "D:\Program Files (x86)\PHP\v5.5\ext\php_intl.dll" ext
```

The whole process and output should look like this:

Executing commands in the online Kudu Console prompt

To complete the activation of the `php_intl.dll` extension, you must tell Azure Website to load it from the newly created `ext` directory. This can be done by registering a global `PHP_EXTENSIONS` environment variable from the **Configure** tab of the main Azure Website Control panel.

In the **app settings** section, register the `PHP_EXTENSIONS` environment variable with the value `ext\php_intl.dll` as shown in the screenshot below:

Registering custom PHP extensions

Hit "save" to confirm your changes and restart the web server. The PHP `Intl` extension should now be available in your web server environment. The following screenshot of a *phpinfo*⁵ page verifies the `intl` extension is properly enabled:

Intl extension is enabled

Great! The PHP environment setup is now complete. Next, you'll learn how to configure the Git repository and push code to production. You'll also learn how to install and configure the Symfony app after it's deployed.

Deploying from Git

First, make sure Git is correctly installed on your local machine using the following command in your terminal:

Listing 33-4

```
1 $ git --version
```



Get your Git from the *git-scm.com*⁶ website and follow the instructions to install and configure it on your local machine.

5. <http://php.net/manual/en/function.phpinfo.php>

6. <http://git-scm.com/download>

In the Azure Website Control panel, browse the **Deployment** tab to get the Git repository URL where you should push your code:

Git deployment panel

Now, you'll want to connect your local Symfony application with this remote Git repository on Azure Website. If your Symfony application is not yet stored with Git, you must first create a Git repository in your Symfony application directory with the `git init` command and commit to it with the `git commit` command.

Also, make sure your Symfony repository has a `.gitignore` file at its root directory with at least the following contents:

Listing 33-5

```
1 /app/bootstrap.php.cache
2 /app/cache/*
3 /app/config/parameters.yml
4 /app/logs/*
5 !app/cache/.gitkeep
6 !app/logs/.gitkeep
7 /app/SymfonyRequirements.php
8 /build/
9 /vendor/
10 /bin/
11 /composer.phar
12 /web/app_dev.php
13 /web/bundles/
14 /web/config.php
```

The `.gitignore` file asks Git not to track any of the files and directories that match these patterns. This means these files won't be deployed to the Azure Website.

Now, from the command line on your local machine, type the following at the root of your Symfony project:

Listing 33-6

```
1 $ git remote add azure https://<username>@<your-website-name>.scm.azurewebsites.net:443/
2 <your-website-name>.git
   $ git push azure master
```

Don't forget to replace the values enclosed by `<` and `>` with your custom settings displayed in the **Deployment** tab of your Azure Website panel. The `git remote` command connects the Azure Website remote Git repository and assigns an alias to it with the name `azure`. The second `git push` command pushes all your commits to the remote `master` branch of your remote `azure` Git repository.

The deployment with Git should produce an output similar to the screenshot below:

Deploying files to the Git Azure Website repository

The code of the Symfony application has now been deployed to the Azure Website which you can browse from the file explorer of the Kudu application. You should see the `app/`, `src/` and `web/` directories under your `site/wwwroot` directory on the Azure Website filesystem.

Configure the Symfony Application

PHP has been configured and your code has been pushed with Git. The last step is to configure the application and install the third party dependencies it requires that aren't tracked by Git. Switch back to the online **Console** of the Kudu application and execute the following commands in it:

Listing 33-7

```

1 $ cd site\wwwroot
2 $ curl -sS https://getcomposer.org/installer | php
3 $ php -d extension=php_intl.dll composer.phar install

```

The `curl` command retrieves and downloads the Composer command line tool and installs it at the root of the `site/wwwroot` directory. Then, running the Composer `install` command downloads and installs all necessary third-party libraries.

This may take a while depending on the number of third-party dependencies you've configured in your `composer.json` file.



The `-d` switch allows you to quickly override/add any `php.ini` settings. In this command, we are forcing PHP to use the `intl` extension, because it is not enabled by default in Azure Website at the moment. Soon, this `-d` option will no longer be needed since Microsoft will enable the `intl` extension by default.

At the end of the `composer install` command, you will be prompted to fill in the values of some Symfony settings like database credentials, locale, mailer credentials, CSRF token protection, etc. These parameters come from the `app/config/parameters.yml.dist` file.

Configuring Symfony global parameters

The most important thing in this cookbook is to correctly setup your database settings. You can get your MySQL database settings on the right sidebar of the **Azure Website Dashboard** panel. Simply click on the **View Connection Strings** link to make them appear in a pop-in.

MySQL database settings

The displayed MySQL database settings should be something similar to the code below. Of course, each value depends on what you've already configured.

Listing 33-8

```

1 Database=mysymfonyMySQL;Data Source=eu-cdbr-azure-north-c.cloudapp.net;User
  Id=bff2481a5b6074;Password=bdf50b42

```

Switch back to the console and answer the prompted questions and provide the following answers. Don't forget to adapt the values below with your real values from the MySQL connection string.

Listing 33-9

```

1 database_driver: pdo_mysql
2 database_host: u-cdbr-azure-north-c.cloudapp.net
3 database_port: null
4 database_name: mysymfonyMySQL
5 database_user: bff2481a5b6074
6 database_password: bdf50b42
7 // ...

```

Don't forget to answer all the questions. It's important to set a unique random string for the `secret` variable. For the mailer configuration, Azure Website doesn't provide a built-in mailer service. You should consider configuring the host-name and credentials of some other third-party mailing service if your application needs to send emails.

Configuring Symfony

Your Symfony application is now configured and should be almost operational. The final step is to build the database schema. This can easily be done with the command line interface if you're using Doctrine.

In the online **Console** tool of the Kudu application, run the following command to mount the tables into your MySQL database.

```
Listing 33-10 1 $ php app/console doctrine:schema:update --force
```

This command builds the tables and indexes for your MySQL database. If your Symfony application is more complex than a basic Symfony Standard Edition, you may have additional commands to execute for setup (see *How to Deploy a Symfony Application*).

Make sure that your application is running by browsing the **app.php** front controller with your web browser and the following url:

```
Listing 33-11 1 http://<your-website-name>.azurewebsites.net/web/app.php
```

If Symfony is correctly installed, you should see the front page of your Symfony application showing.

Configure the Web Server

At this point, the Symfony application has been deployed and works perfectly on the Azure Website. However, the **web** folder is still part of the url, which you definitely don't want. But don't worry! You can easily configure the web server to point to the **web** folder and remove the **web** in the URL (and guarantee that nobody can access files outside of the **web** directory.)

To do this, create and deploy (see previous section about Git) the following **web.config** file. This file must be located at the root of your project next to the **composer.json** file. This file is the Microsoft IIS Server equivalent to the well-known **.htaccess** file from Apache. For a Symfony application, configure it with the following content:

```
Listing 33-12 1 <!-- web.config -->
2 <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
3 <configuration>
4   <system.webServer>
5     <rewrite>
6       <rules>
7         <clear />
8         <rule name="BlockAccessToPublic" patternSyntax="Wildcard" stopProcessing="true">
9           <match url="*" />
10          <conditions logicalGrouping="MatchAll" trackAllCaptures="false">
11            <add input="{URL}" pattern="/web/*" />
12          </conditions>
13          <action type="CustomResponse" statusCode="403" statusReason="Forbidden: Access
14 is denied." statusDescription="You do not have permission to view this directory or page
15 using the credentials that you supplied." />
16        </rule>
17        <rule name="RewriteAssetsToPublic" stopProcessing="true">
18          <match url="^(.*)"(.css|.js|.jpg|.png|.gif)$" />
19          <conditions logicalGrouping="MatchAll" trackAllCaptures="false">
20            </conditions>
21          <action type="Rewrite" url="web/{R:0}" />
22        </rule>
23        <rule name="RewriteRequestsToPublic" stopProcessing="true">
24          <match url="^(.*)" />
25          <conditions logicalGrouping="MatchAll" trackAllCaptures="false">
26            </conditions>
27          <action type="Rewrite" url="web/app.php/{R:0}" />
28        </rule>
29      </rules>
```

```
29     </rewrite>
30 </system.webServer>
    </configuration>
```

As you can see, the latest rule **RewriteRequestsToPublic** is responsible for rewriting any urls to the **web/app.php** front controller which allows you to skip the **web/** folder in the URL. The first rule called **BlockAccessToPublic** matches all url patterns that contain the **web/** folder and serves a **403 Forbidden** HTTP response instead. This example is based on Benjamin Eberlei's sample you can find on GitHub in the *SymfonyAzureEdition*⁷ bundle.

Deploy this file under the **site/wwwroot** directory of the Azure Website and browse to your application without the **web/app.php** segment in the URL.

Conclusion

Nice work! You've now deployed your Symfony application to the Microsoft Azure Website Cloud platform. You also saw that Symfony can be easily configured and executed on a Microsoft IIS web server. The process is simple and easy to implement. And as a bonus, Microsoft is continuing to reduce the number of steps needed so that deployment becomes even easier.

7. <https://github.com/beberlei/symfony-azure-edition/>



Chapter 34

Deploying to Heroku Cloud

This step by step cookbook describes how to deploy a Symfony web application to the Heroku cloud platform. Its contents are based on *the original article*¹ published by Heroku.

Setting up

To setup a new Heroku website, first *signup with Heroku*² or sign in with your credentials. Then download and install the *Heroku Toolbelt*³ on your local computer.

You can also check out the *getting Started with PHP on Heroku*⁴ guide to gain more familiarity with the specifics of working with PHP applications on Heroku.

Preparing your Application

Deploying a Symfony application to Heroku doesn't require any change in its code, but it requires some minor tweaks to its configuration.

By default, the Symfony app will log into your application's `app/log/` directory. This is not ideal as Heroku uses an *ephemeral file system*⁵. On Heroku, the best way to handle logging is using *Logplex*⁶. And the best way to send log data to Logplex is by writing to `STDERR` or `STDOUT`. Luckily, Symfony uses the excellent Monolog library for logging. So, a new log destination is just a change to a config file away.

Open the `app/config/config_prod.yml` file, locate the `monolog/handlers/nested` section (or create it if it doesn't exist yet) and change the value of `path` from `"%kernel.logs_dir%/%kernel.environment%.log"` to `"php://stderr"`:

Listing 34-1

```
1 # app/config/config_prod.yml
2 monolog:
```

-
1. <https://devcenter.heroku.com/articles/getting-started-with-symfony2>
 2. <https://signup.heroku.com/signup/dc>
 3. <https://devcenter.heroku.com/articles/getting-started-with-php#local-workstation-setup>
 4. <https://devcenter.heroku.com/articles/getting-started-with-php>
 5. <https://devcenter.heroku.com/articles/dynos#ephemeral-filesystem>
 6. <https://devcenter.heroku.com/articles/logplex>

```

3     # ...
4     handlers:
5         # ...
6         nested:
7             # ...
8             path: "php://stderr"

```

Once the application is deployed, run `heroku logs --tail` to keep the stream of logs from Heroku open in your terminal.

Creating a new Application on Heroku

To create a new Heroku application that you can push to, use the CLI `create` command:

Listing 34-2

```

1 $ heroku create
2
3 Creating mighty-hamlet-1981 in organization heroku... done, stack is cedar
4 http://mighty-hamlet-1981.herokuapp.com/ | git@heroku.com:mighty-hamlet-1981.git
5 Git remote heroku added

```

You are now ready to deploy the application as explained in the next section.

Deploying your Application on Heroku

To deploy your application to Heroku, you must first create a **Procfile**, which tells Heroku what command to use to launch the web server with the correct settings. After you've done that, you can simply `git push` and you're done!

Creating a Procfile

By default, Heroku will launch an Apache web server together with PHP to serve applications. However, two special circumstances apply to Symfony applications:

1. The document root is in the **web/** directory and not in the root directory of the application;
2. The Composer **bin-dir**, where vendor binaries (and thus Heroku's own boot scripts) are placed, is **bin/**, and not the default **vendor/bin**.



Vendor binaries are usually installed to **vendor/bin** by Composer, but sometimes (e.g. when running a Symfony Standard Edition project!), the location will be different. If in doubt, you can always run `composer config bin-dir` to figure out the right location.

Create a new file called **Procfile** (without any extension) at the root directory of the application and add just the following content:

Listing 34-3

```

1 web: bin/heroku-php-apache2 web/

```

If you prefer working on the command console, execute the following commands to create the **Procfile** file and to add it to the repository:

Listing 34-4

```

1 $ echo "web: bin/heroku-php-apache2 web/" > Procfile
2 $ git add .
3 $ git commit -m "Procfile for Apache and PHP"
4 [master 35075db] Procfile for Apache and PHP
5 1 file changed, 1 insertion(+)

```

Pushing to Heroku

Next up, it's finally time to deploy your application to Heroku. If you are doing this for the very first time, you may see a message such as the following:

Listing 34-5 The authenticity of host 'heroku.com (50.19.85.132)' can't be established.
 RSA key fingerprint is 8b:48:5e:67:0e:c9:16:47:32:f2:87:0c:1f:c8:60:ad.
 Are you sure you want to continue connecting (yes/no)?

In this case, you need to confirm by typing **yes** and hitting <Enter> key - ideally after you've *verified that the RSA key fingerprint is correct*⁷.

Then, deploy your application executing this command:

Listing 34-6

```

1 $ git push heroku master
2
3 Initializing repository, done.
4 Counting objects: 130, done.
5 Delta compression using up to 4 threads.
6 Compressing objects: 100% (107/107), done.
7 Writing objects: 100% (130/130), 70.88 KiB | 0 bytes/s, done.
8 Total 130 (delta 17), reused 0 (delta 0)
9
10 -----> PHP app detected
11
12 -----> Setting up runtime environment...
13     - PHP 5.5.12
14     - Apache 2.4.9
15     - Nginx 1.4.6
16
17 -----> Installing PHP extensions:
18     - opcache (automatic; bundled, using 'ext-opcache.ini')
19
20 -----> Installing dependencies...
21     Composer version 64ac32fca9e64eb38e50abfadc6eb6f2d0470039 2014-05-24 20:57:50
22     Loading composer repositories with package information
23     Installing dependencies from lock file
24     - ...
25
26     Generating optimized autoload files
27     Creating the "app/config/parameters.yml" file
28     Clearing the cache for the dev environment with debug true
29     Installing assets using the hard copy option
30     Installing assets for Symfony\Bundle\FrameworkBundle into web/bundles/framework
31     Installing assets for Acme\DemoBundle into web/bundles/acmedemo
32     Installing assets for Sensio\Bundle\DistributionBundle into web/bundles/
33 sensiodistribution
34
35 -----> Building runtime environment...

```

7. <https://devcenter.heroku.com/articles/git-repository-ssh-fingerprints>

```
36
37 -----> Discovering process types
38         Procfile declares types -> web
39
40 -----> Compressing... done, 61.5MB
41
42 -----> Launching... done, v3
43         http://mighty-hamlet-1981.herokuapp.com/ deployed to Heroku
44
45 To git@heroku.com:mighty-hamlet-1981.git
   * [new branch]      master -> master
```

And that's it! If you now open your browser, either by manually pointing it to the URL `heroku create` gave you, or by using the Heroku Toolbelt, the application will respond:

Listing 34-7

```
1 $ heroku open
2 Opening mighty-hamlet-1981... done
```

You should be seeing your Symphony application in your browser.



Chapter 35

How to Handle File Uploads with Doctrine

Handling file uploads with Doctrine entities is no different than handling any other file upload. In other words, you're free to move the file in your controller after handling a form submission. For examples of how to do this, see the *file type reference* page.

If you choose to, you can also integrate the file upload into your entity lifecycle (i.e. creation, update and removal). In this case, as your entity is created, updated, and removed from Doctrine, the file uploading and removal processing will take place automatically (without needing to do anything in your controller).

To make this work, you'll need to take care of a number of details, which will be covered in this cookbook entry.

Basic Setup

First, create a simple Doctrine entity class to work with:

```
Listing 35-1 1 // src/Acme/DemoBundle/Entity/Document.php
2 namespace Acme\DemoBundle\Entity;
3
4 use Doctrine\ORM\Mapping as ORM;
5 use Symfony\Component\Validator\Constraints as Assert;
6
7 /**
8  * @ORM\Entity
9  */
10 class Document
11 {
12     /**
13      * @ORM\Id
14      * @ORM\Column(type="integer")
15      * @ORM\GeneratedValue(strategy="AUTO")
16      */
17     public $id;
18
19     /**
20      * @ORM\Column(type="string", length=255)
```

```

21     * @Assert\NotBlank
22     */
23     public $name;
24
25     /**
26      * @ORM\Column(type="string", length=255, nullable=true)
27      */
28     public $path;
29
30     public function getAbsolutePath()
31     {
32         return null === $this->path
33             ? null
34             : $this->getUploadRootDir().'/'.$this->path;
35     }
36
37     public function getWebPath()
38     {
39         return null === $this->path
40             ? null
41             : $this->getUploadDir().'/'.$this->path;
42     }
43
44     protected function getUploadRootDir()
45     {
46         // the absolute directory path where uploaded
47         // documents should be saved
48         return __DIR__.'/../../../../../web/'.$this->getUploadDir();
49     }
50
51     protected function getUploadDir()
52     {
53         // get rid of the __DIR__ so it doesn't screw up
54         // when displaying uploaded doc/image in the view.
55         return 'uploads/documents';
56     }
57 }

```

The **Document** entity has a name and it is associated with a file. The **path** property stores the relative path to the file and is persisted to the database. The **getAbsolutePath()** is a convenience method that returns the absolute path to the file while the **getWebPath()** is a convenience method that returns the web path, which can be used in a template to link to the uploaded file.



If you have not done so already, you should probably read the *file* type documentation first to understand how the basic upload process works.



If you're using annotations to specify your validation rules (as shown in this example), be sure that you've enabled validation by annotation (see *validation configuration*).

To handle the actual file upload in the form, use a "virtual" **file** field. For example, if you're building your form directly in a controller, it might look like this:

Listing 35-2

```

1 public function uploadAction()
2 {
3     // ...
4
5     $form = $this->createFormBuilder($document)
6         ->add('name')
7         ->add('file')
8         ->getForm();
9
10    // ...
11 }

```

Next, create this property on your **Document** class and add some validation rules:

Listing 35-3

```

1 use Symfony\Component\HttpFoundation\File\UploadedFile;
2
3 // ...
4 class Document
5 {
6     /**
7      * @Assert\File(maxSize="6000000")
8      */
9     private $file;
10
11    /**
12     * Sets file.
13     *
14     * @param UploadedFile $file
15     */
16    public function setFile(UploadedFile $file = null)
17    {
18        $this->file = $file;
19    }
20
21    /**
22     * Get file.
23     *
24     * @return UploadedFile
25     */
26    public function getFile()
27    {
28        return $this->file;
29    }
30 }

```

Listing 35-4

```

1 # src/Acme/DemoBundle/Resources/config/validation.yml
2 Acme\DemoBundle\Entity\Document:
3     properties:
4         file:
5             - File:
6                 maxSize: 6000000

```



As you are using the **File** constraint, Symfony will automatically guess that the form field is a file upload input. That's why you did not have to set it explicitly when creating the form above (`->add('file')`).

The following controller shows you how to handle the entire process:

```
Listing 35-5 1 // ...
2 use Acme\DemoBundle\Entity\Document;
3 use Sensio\Bundle\FrameworkExtraBundle\Configuration\Template;
4 use Symfony\Component\HttpFoundation\Request;
5 // ...
6
7 /**
8  * @Template()
9  */
10 public function uploadAction(Request $request)
11 {
12     $document = new Document();
13     $form = $this->createFormBuilder($document)
14         ->add('name')
15         ->add('file')
16         ->getForm();
17
18     $form->handleRequest($request);
19
20     if ($form->isValid()) {
21         $em = $this->getDoctrine()->getManager();
22
23         $em->persist($document);
24         $em->flush();
25
26         return $this->redirect($this->generateUrl(...));
27     }
28
29     return array('form' => $form->createView());
30 }
```

The previous controller will automatically persist the **Document** entity with the submitted name, but it will do nothing about the file and the **path** property will be blank.

An easy way to handle the file upload is to move it just before the entity is persisted and then set the **path** property accordingly. Start by calling a new **upload()** method on the **Document** class, which you'll create in a moment to handle the file upload:

```
Listing 35-6 1 if ($form->isValid()) {
2     $em = $this->getDoctrine()->getManager();
3
4     $document->upload();
5
6     $em->persist($document);
7     $em->flush();
8
9     return $this->redirect(...);
10 }
```

The **upload()** method will take advantage of the *UploadedFile*¹ object, which is what's returned after a **file** field is submitted:

```
Listing 35-7 1 public function upload()
2 {
```

1. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpFoundation/File/UploadedFile.html>


```

3      // the file property can be empty if the field is not required
4      if (null === $this->getFile()) {
5          return;
6      }
7
8      // use the original file name here but you should
9      // sanitize it at least to avoid any security issues
10
11     // move takes the target directory and then the
12     // target filename to move to
13     $this->getFile()->move(
14         $this->getUploadRootDir(),
15         $this->getFile()->getClientOriginalName()
16     );
17
18     // set the path property to the filename where you've saved the file
19     $this->path = $this->getFile()->getClientOriginalName();
20
21     // clean up the file property as you won't need it anymore
22     $this->file = null;
23 }

```

Using Lifecycle Callbacks



Using lifecycle callbacks is a limited technique that has some drawbacks. If you want to remove the hardcoded `__DIR__` reference inside the `Document::getUploadRootDir()` method, the best way is to start using explicit *doctrine listeners*. There you will be able to inject kernel parameters such as `kernel.root_dir` to be able to build absolute paths.

Even if this implementation works, it suffers from a major flaw: What if there is a problem when the entity is persisted? The file would have already moved to its final location even though the entity's `path` property didn't persist correctly.

To avoid these issues, you should change the implementation so that the database operation and the moving of the file become atomic: if there is a problem persisting the entity or if the file cannot be moved, then *nothing* should happen.

To do this, you need to move the file right as Doctrine persists the entity to the database. This can be accomplished by hooking into an entity lifecycle callback:

Listing 35-8

```

1  /**
2   * @ORM\Entity
3   * @ORM\HasLifecycleCallbacks
4   */
5  class Document
6  {
7  }

```

Next, refactor the `Document` class to take advantage of these callbacks:

Listing 35-9

```

1  use Symfony\Component\HttpFoundation\File\UploadedFile;
2
3  /**

```

```

4  * @ORM\Entity
5  * @ORM\HasLifecycleCallbacks
6  */
7  class Document
8  {
9      private $temp;
10
11     /**
12      * Sets file.
13      *
14      * @param UploadedFile $file
15      */
16     public function setFile(UploadedFile $file = null)
17     {
18         $this->file = $file;
19         // check if we have an old image path
20         if (isset($this->path)) {
21             // store the old name to delete after the update
22             $this->temp = $this->path;
23             $this->path = null;
24         } else {
25             $this->path = 'initial';
26         }
27     }
28
29     /**
30      * @ORM\PrePersist()
31      * @ORM\PreUpdate()
32      */
33     public function preUpload()
34     {
35         if (null !== $this->getFile()) {
36             // do whatever you want to generate a unique name
37             $filename = sha1(uniqid(mt_rand(), true));
38             $this->path = $filename.'.'.$this->getFile()->guessExtension();
39         }
40     }
41
42     /**
43      * @ORM\PostPersist()
44      * @ORM\PostUpdate()
45      */
46     public function upload()
47     {
48         if (null === $this->getFile()) {
49             return;
50         }
51
52         // if there is an error when moving the file, an exception will
53         // be automatically thrown by move(). This will properly prevent
54         // the entity from being persisted to the database on error
55         $this->getFile()->move($this->getUploadRootDir(), $this->path);
56
57         // check if we have an old image
58         if (isset($this->temp)) {
59             // delete the old image
60             unlink($this->getUploadRootDir().'/'.$this->temp);
61             // clear the temp image path
62             $this->temp = null;

```

```

63     }
64     $this->file = null;
65 }
66
67 /**
68  * @ORM\PostRemove()
69  */
70 public function removeUpload()
71 {
72     $file = $this->getAbsolutePath();
73     if ($file) {
74         unlink($file);
75     }
76 }
77 }

```



If changes to your entity are handled by a Doctrine event listener or event subscriber, the `preUpdate()` callback must notify Doctrine about the changes being done. For full reference on `preUpdate` event restrictions, see *preUpdate*² in the Doctrine Events documentation.

The class now does everything you need: it generates a unique filename before persisting, moves the file after persisting, and removes the file if the entity is ever deleted.

Now that the moving of the file is handled atomically by the entity, the call to `$document->upload()` should be removed from the controller:

Listing 35-10

```

1  if ($form->isValid()) {
2      $em = $this->getDoctrine()->getManager();
3
4      $em->persist($document);
5      $em->flush();
6
7      return $this->redirect(...);
8  }

```



The `@ORM\PrePersist()` and `@ORM\PostPersist()` event callbacks are triggered before and after the entity is persisted to the database. On the other hand, the `@ORM\PreUpdate()` and `@ORM\PostUpdate()` event callbacks are called when the entity is updated.



The `PreUpdate` and `PostUpdate` callbacks are only triggered if there is a change in one of the entity's fields that are persisted. This means that, by default, if you modify only the `$file` property, these events will not be triggered, as the property itself is not directly persisted via Doctrine. One solution would be to use an `updated` field that's persisted to Doctrine, and to modify it manually when changing the file.

2. <http://docs.doctrine-project.org/projects/doctrine-orm/en/latest/reference/events.html#preupdate>

Using the id as the Filename

If you want to use the `id` as the name of the file, the implementation is slightly different as you need to save the extension under the `path` property, instead of the actual filename:

```
Listing 35-11 1 use Symfony\Component\HttpFoundation\File\UploadedFile;
2
3 /**
4  * @ORM\Entity
5  * @ORM\HasLifecycleCallbacks
6  */
7 class Document
8 {
9     private $temp;
10
11     /**
12      * Sets file.
13      *
14      * @param UploadedFile $file
15      */
16     public function setFile(UploadedFile $file = null)
17     {
18         $this->file = $file;
19         // check if we have an old image path
20         if (is_file($this->getAbsolutePath())) {
21             // store the old name to delete after the update
22             $this->temp = $this->getAbsolutePath();
23         } else {
24             $this->path = 'initial';
25         }
26     }
27
28     /**
29      * @ORM\PrePersist()
30      * @ORM\PreUpdate()
31      */
32     public function preUpload()
33     {
34         if (null !== $this->getFile()) {
35             $this->path = $this->getFile()->guessExtension();
36         }
37     }
38
39     /**
40      * @ORM\PostPersist()
41      * @ORM\PostUpdate()
42      */
43     public function upload()
44     {
45         if (null === $this->getFile()) {
46             return;
47         }
48
49         // check if we have an old image
50         if (isset($this->temp)) {
51             // delete the old image
52             unlink($this->temp);
53             // clear the temp image path
54             $this->temp = null;
```

```

55     }
56
57     // you must throw an exception here if the file cannot be moved
58     // so that the entity is not persisted to the database
59     // which the UploadedFile move() method does
60     $this->getFile()->move(
61         $this->getUploadRootDir(),
62         $this->id.'.'.$this->getFile()->guessExtension()
63     );
64
65     $this->setFile(null);
66 }
67
68 /**
69  * @ORM\PreRemove()
70  */
71 public function storeFilenameForRemove()
72 {
73     $this->temp = $this->getAbsolutePath();
74 }
75
76 /**
77  * @ORM\PostRemove()
78  */
79 public function removeUpload()
80 {
81     if (isset($this->temp)) {
82         unlink($this->temp);
83     }
84 }
85
86 public function getAbsolutePath()
87 {
88     return null === $this->path
89         ? null
90         : $this->getUploadRootDir().'/'.$this->id.'.'.$this->path;
91 }
92 }

```

You'll notice in this case that you need to do a little bit more work in order to remove the file. Before it's removed, you must store the file path (since it depends on the id). Then, once the object has been fully removed from the database, you can safely delete the file (in `PostRemove`).



Chapter 36

How to use Doctrine Extensions: Timestampable, Sluggable, Translatable, etc.

Doctrine2 is very flexible, and the community has already created a series of useful Doctrine extensions to help you with common entity-related tasks.

One library in particular - the *DoctrineExtensions*¹ library - provides integration functionality for *Sluggable*², *Translatable*³, *Timestampable*⁴, *Loggable*⁵, *Tree*⁶ and *Sortable*⁷ behaviors.

The usage for each of these extensions is explained in that repository.

However, to install/activate each extension you must register and activate an *Event Listener*. To do this, you have two options:

1. Use the *StofDoctrineExtensionsBundle*⁸, which integrates the above library.
2. Implement this services directly by following the documentation for integration with Symfony:
*Install Gedmo Doctrine2 extensions in Symfony2*⁹

1. <https://github.com/Atlantic18/DoctrineExtensions>

2. <https://github.com/Atlantic18/DoctrineExtensions/blob/master/doc/sluggable.md>

3. <https://github.com/Atlantic18/DoctrineExtensions/blob/master/doc/translatable.md>

4. <https://github.com/Atlantic18/DoctrineExtensions/blob/master/doc/timestampable.md>

5. <https://github.com/Atlantic18/DoctrineExtensions/blob/master/doc/loggable.md>

6. <https://github.com/Atlantic18/DoctrineExtensions/blob/master/doc/tree.md>

7. <https://github.com/Atlantic18/DoctrineExtensions/blob/master/doc/sortable.md>

8. <https://github.com/stof/StofDoctrineExtensionsBundle>

9. <https://github.com/Atlantic18/DoctrineExtensions/blob/master/doc/symfony2.md>



Chapter 37

How to Register Event Listeners and Subscribers

Doctrine packages a rich event system that fires events when almost anything happens inside the system. For you, this means that you can create arbitrary *services* and tell Doctrine to notify those objects whenever a certain action (e.g. `prePersist`) happens within Doctrine. This could be useful, for example, to create an independent search index whenever an object in your database is saved.

Doctrine defines two types of objects that can listen to Doctrine events: listeners and subscribers. Both are very similar, but listeners are a bit more straightforward. For more, see *The Event System*¹ on Doctrine's website.

The Doctrine website also explains all existing events that can be listened to.

Configuring the Listener/Subscriber

To register a service to act as an event listener or subscriber you just have to *tag* it with the appropriate name. Depending on your use-case, you can hook a listener into every DBAL connection and ORM entity manager or just into one specific DBAL connection and all the entity managers that use this connection.

Listing 37-1

```
1 doctrine:
2   dbal:
3     default_connection: default
4     connections:
5       default:
6         driver: pdo_sqlite
7         memory: true
8
9   services:
10    my.listener:
11      class: Acme\SearchBundle\EventListener\SearchIndexer
12      tags:
```

1. <http://docs.doctrine-project.org/projects/doctrine-orm/en/latest/reference/events.html>

```

13         - { name: doctrine.event_listener, event: postPersist }
14     my.listener2:
15         class: Acme\SearchBundle\EventListener\SearchIndexer2
16         tags:
17             - { name: doctrine.event_listener, event: postPersist, connection: default }
18     my.subscriber:
19         class: Acme\SearchBundle\EventListener\SearchIndexerSubscriber
20         tags:
21             - { name: doctrine.event_subscriber, connection: default }

```

Creating the Listener Class

In the previous example, a service `my.listener` was configured as a Doctrine listener on the event `postPersist`. The class behind that service must have a `postPersist` method, which will be called when the event is dispatched:

Listing 37-2

```

1  // src/Acme/SearchBundle/EventListener/SearchIndexer.php
2  namespace Acme\SearchBundle\EventListener;
3
4  use Doctrine\ORM\Event\LifecycleEventArgs;
5  use Acme\StoreBundle\Entity\Product;
6
7  class SearchIndexer
8  {
9      public function postPersist(LifecycleEventArgs $args)
10     {
11         $entity = $args->getEntity();
12         $entityManager = $args->getEntityManager();
13
14         // perhaps you only want to act on some "Product" entity
15         if ($entity instanceof Product) {
16             // ... do something with the Product
17         }
18     }
19 }

```

In each event, you have access to a `LifecycleEventArgs` object, which gives you access to both the entity object of the event and the entity manager itself.

One important thing to notice is that a listener will be listening for *all* entities in your application. So, if you're interested in only handling a specific type of entity (e.g. a `Product` entity but not a `BlogPost` entity), you should check for the entity's class type in your method (as shown above).



In Doctrine 2.4, a feature called Entity Listeners was introduced. It is a lifecycle listener class used for an entity. You can read about it in *the Doctrine Documentation*².

Creating the Subscriber Class

A Doctrine event subscriber must implement the `Doctrine\Common\EventSubscriber` interface and have an event method for each event it subscribes to:

2. <http://docs.doctrine-project.org/projects/doctrine-orm/en/latest/reference/events.html#entity-listeners>

Listing 37-3

```
1 // src/Acme/SearchBundle/EventListener/SearchIndexerSubscriber.php
2 namespace Acme\SearchBundle\EventListener;
3
4 use Doctrine\Common\EventSubscriber;
5 use Doctrine\ORM\Event\LifecycleEventArgs;
6 // for Doctrine 2.4: Doctrine\Common\Persistence\Event\LifecycleEventArgs;
7 use Acme\StoreBundle\Entity\Product;
8
9 class SearchIndexerSubscriber implements EventSubscriber
10 {
11     public function getSubscribedEvents()
12     {
13         return array(
14             'postPersist',
15             'postUpdate',
16         );
17     }
18
19     public function postUpdate(LifecycleEventArgs $args)
20     {
21         $this->index($args);
22     }
23
24     public function postPersist(LifecycleEventArgs $args)
25     {
26         $this->index($args);
27     }
28
29     public function index(LifecycleEventArgs $args)
30     {
31         $entity = $args->getEntity();
32         $entityManager = $args->getEntityManager();
33
34         // perhaps you only want to act on some "Product" entity
35         if ($entity instanceof Product) {
36             // ... do something with the Product
37         }
38     }
39 }
```



Doctrine event subscribers can not return a flexible array of methods to call for the events like the *Symfony event subscriber* can. Doctrine event subscribers must return a simple array of the event names they subscribe to. Doctrine will then expect event methods on the subscriber with the same name as each subscribed event, just as when using an event listener.

For a full reference, see chapter *The Event System*³ in the Doctrine documentation.

3. <http://docs.doctrine-project.org/projects/doctrine-orm/en/latest/reference/events.html>



Chapter 38

How to Use Doctrine DBAL



This article is about the Doctrine DBAL. Typically, you'll work with the higher level Doctrine ORM layer, which simply uses the DBAL behind the scenes to actually communicate with the database. To read more about the Doctrine ORM, see "*Databases and Doctrine*".

The *Doctrine*¹ Database Abstraction Layer (DBAL) is an abstraction layer that sits on top of *PDO*² and offers an intuitive and flexible API for communicating with the most popular relational databases. In other words, the DBAL library makes it easy to execute queries and perform other database actions.



Read the official Doctrine *DBAL Documentation*³ to learn all the details and capabilities of Doctrine's DBAL library.

To get started, configure the database connection parameters:

Listing 38-1

```
1 # app/config/config.yml
2 doctrine:
3     dbal:
4         driver:   pdo_mysql
5         dbname:  Symfony
6         user:    root
7         password: null
8         charset: UTF8
```

For full DBAL configuration options, or to learn how to configure multiple connections, see *Doctrine DBAL Configuration*.

You can then access the Doctrine DBAL connection by accessing the `database_connection` service:

Listing 38-2

-
1. <http://www.doctrine-project.org>
 2. <http://www.php.net/pdo>
 3. <http://docs.doctrine-project.org/projects/doctrine-dbal/en/latest/index.html>

```

1 class UserController extends Controller
2 {
3     public function indexAction()
4     {
5         $conn = $this->get('database_connection');
6         $users = $conn->fetchAll('SELECT * FROM users');
7
8         // ...
9     }
10 }

```

Registering custom Mapping Types

You can register custom mapping types through Symfony's configuration. They will be added to all configured connections. For more information on custom mapping types, read Doctrine's *Custom Mapping Types*⁴ section of their documentation.

Listing 38-3

```

1 # app/config/config.yml
2 doctrine:
3     dbal:
4         types:
5             custom_first: Acme\HelloBundle\Type\CustomFirst
6             custom_second: Acme\HelloBundle\Type\CustomSecond

```

Registering custom Mapping Types in the SchemaTool

The SchemaTool is used to inspect the database to compare the schema. To achieve this task, it needs to know which mapping type needs to be used for each database types. Registering new ones can be done through the configuration.

Now, map the ENUM type (not supported by DBAL by default) to the **string** mapping type:

Listing 38-4

```

1 # app/config/config.yml
2 doctrine:
3     dbal:
4         mapping_types:
5             enum: string

```

4. <http://docs.doctrine-project.org/projects/doctrine-dbal/en/latest/reference/types.html#custom-mapping-types>



Chapter 39

How to Generate Entities from an Existing Database

When starting work on a brand new project that uses a database, two different situations comes naturally. In most cases, the database model is designed and built from scratch. Sometimes, however, you'll start with an existing and probably unchangeable database model. Fortunately, Doctrine comes with a bunch of tools to help generate model classes from your existing database.



As the *Doctrine tools documentation*¹ says, reverse engineering is a one-time process to get started on a project. Doctrine is able to convert approximately 70-80% of the necessary mapping information based on fields, indexes and foreign key constraints. Doctrine can't discover inverse associations, inheritance types, entities with foreign keys as primary keys or semantical operations on associations such as cascade or lifecycle events. Some additional work on the generated entities will be necessary afterwards to design each to fit your domain model specificities.

This tutorial assumes you're using a simple blog application with the following two tables: **blog_post** and **blog_comment**. A comment record is linked to a post record thanks to a foreign key constraint.

Listing 39-1

```
1 CREATE TABLE `blog_post` (  
2   `id` bigint(20) NOT NULL AUTO_INCREMENT,  
3   `title` varchar(100) COLLATE utf8_unicode_ci NOT NULL,  
4   `content` longtext COLLATE utf8_unicode_ci NOT NULL,  
5   `created_at` datetime NOT NULL,  
6   PRIMARY KEY (`id`)  
7 ) ENGINE=InnoDB AUTO_INCREMENT=1 DEFAULT CHARSET=utf8 COLLATE=utf8_unicode_ci;  
8  
9 CREATE TABLE `blog_comment` (  
10  `id` bigint(20) NOT NULL AUTO_INCREMENT,  
11  `post_id` bigint(20) NOT NULL,  
12  `author` varchar(20) COLLATE utf8_unicode_ci NOT NULL,  
13  `content` longtext COLLATE utf8_unicode_ci NOT NULL,  
14  `created_at` datetime NOT NULL,
```

1. <http://docs.doctrine-project.org/projects/doctrine-orm/en/latest/reference/tools.html#reverse-engineering>

```

15     PRIMARY KEY (`id`),
16     KEY `blog_comment_post_id_idx` (`post_id`),
17     CONSTRAINT `blog_post_id` FOREIGN KEY (`post_id`) REFERENCES `blog_post` (`id`) ON
18     DELETE CASCADE
    ) ENGINE=InnoDB AUTO_INCREMENT=1 DEFAULT CHARSET=utf8 COLLATE=utf8_unicode_ci;

```

Before diving into the recipe, be sure your database connection parameters are correctly setup in the `app/config/parameters.yml` file (or wherever your database configuration is kept) and that you have initialized a bundle that will host your future entity class. In this tutorial it's assumed that an `AcmeBlogBundle` exists and is located under the `src/Acme/BlogBundle` folder.

The first step towards building entity classes from an existing database is to ask Doctrine to introspect the database and generate the corresponding metadata files. Metadata files describe the entity class to generate based on table fields.

Listing 39-2 1 \$ `php app/console doctrine:mapping:import --force AcmeBlogBundle xml`

This command line tool asks Doctrine to introspect the database and generate the XML metadata files under the `src/Acme/BlogBundle/Resources/config/doctrine` folder of your bundle. This generates two files: `BlogPost.orm.xml` and `BlogComment.orm.xml`.



It's also possible to generate the metadata files in YAML format by changing the last argument to `yml`.

The generated `BlogPost.orm.xml` metadata file looks as follows:

Listing 39-3

```

1 <?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
2 <doctrine-mapping xmlns="http://doctrine-project.org/schemas/orm/doctrine-mapping"
3   xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
4   xsi:schemaLocation="http://doctrine-project.org/schemas/orm/doctrine-mapping
5   http://doctrine-project.org/schemas/orm/doctrine-mapping.xsd">
6   <entity name="Acme\BlogBundle\Entity\BlogPost" table="blog_post">
7     <id name="id" type="bigint" column="id">
8       <generator strategy="IDENTITY"/>
9     </id>
10    <field name="title" type="string" column="title" length="100" nullable="false"/>
11    <field name="content" type="text" column="content" nullable="false"/>
12    <field name="createdAt" type="datetime" column="created_at" nullable="false"/>
13  </entity>
14 </doctrine-mapping>

```

Once the metadata files are generated, you can ask Doctrine to build related entity classes by executing the following two commands.

Listing 39-4

```

1 $ php app/console doctrine:mapping:convert annotation ./src
2 $ php app/console doctrine:generate:entities AcmeBlogBundle

```

The first command generates entity classes with annotation mappings. But if you want to use YAML or XML mapping instead of annotations, you should execute the second command only.



If you want to use annotations, you can safely delete the XML (or YAML) files after running these two commands.

For example, the newly created `BlogComment` entity class looks as follow:

```
Listing 39-5 1 // src/Acme/BlogBundle/Entity/BlogComment.php
2 namespace Acme\BlogBundle\Entity;
3
4 use Doctrine\ORM\Mapping as ORM;
5
6 /**
7  * Acme\BlogBundle\Entity\BlogComment
8  *
9  * @ORM\Table(name="blog_comment")
10  * @ORM\Entity
11  */
12 class BlogComment
13 {
14     /**
15      * @var integer $id
16      *
17      * @ORM\Column(name="id", type="bigint")
18      * @ORM\Id
19      * @ORM\GeneratedValue(strategy="IDENTITY")
20      */
21     private $id;
22
23     /**
24      * @var string $author
25      *
26      * @ORM\Column(name="author", type="string", length=100, nullable=false)
27      */
28     private $author;
29
30     /**
31      * @var text $content
32      *
33      * @ORM\Column(name="content", type="text", nullable=false)
34      */
35     private $content;
36
37     /**
38      * @var datetime $createdAt
39      *
40      * @ORM\Column(name="created_at", type="datetime", nullable=false)
41      */
42     private $createdAt;
43
44     /**
45      * @var BlogPost
46      *
47      * @ORM\ManyToOne(targetEntity="BlogPost")
48      * @ORM\JoinColumn(name="post_id", referencedColumnName="id")
49      */
50     private $post;
51 }
```

As you can see, Doctrine converts all table fields to pure private and annotated class properties. The most impressive thing is that it also discovered the relationship with the `BlogPost` entity class based on the foreign key constraint. Consequently, you can find a private `$post` property mapped with a `BlogPost` entity in the `BlogComment` entity class.



If you want to have a one-to-many relationship, you will need to add it manually into the entity or to the generated XML or YAML files. Add a section on the specific entities for one-to-many defining the `inversedBy` and the `mappedBy` pieces.

The generated entities are now ready to be used. Have fun!



Chapter 40

How to Work with multiple Entity Managers and Connections

You can use multiple Doctrine entity managers or connections in a Symfony application. This is necessary if you are using different databases or even vendors with entirely different sets of entities. In other words, one entity manager that connects to one database will handle some entities while another entity manager that connects to another database might handle the rest.



Using multiple entity managers is pretty easy, but more advanced and not usually required. Be sure you actually need multiple entity managers before adding in this layer of complexity.

The following configuration code shows how you can configure two entity managers:

Listing 40-1

```
1 doctrine:
2   dbal:
3     default_connection: default
4     connections:
5       default:
6         driver:   "%database_driver%"
7         host:     "%database_host%"
8         port:     "%database_port%"
9         dbname:   "%database_name%"
10        user:     "%database_user%"
11        password: "%database_password%"
12        charset:  UTF8
13      customer:
14        driver:   "%database_driver2%"
15        host:     "%database_host2%"
16        port:     "%database_port2%"
17        dbname:   "%database_name2%"
18        user:     "%database_user2%"
19        password: "%database_password2%"
20        charset:  UTF8
```



```

21
22     orm:
23         default_entity_manager: default
24         entity_managers:
25             default:
26                 connection: default
27                 mappings:
28                     AcmeDemoBundle: ~
29                     AcmeStoreBundle: ~
30             customer:
31                 connection: customer
32                 mappings:
33                     AcmeCustomerBundle: ~

```

In this case, you've defined two entity managers and called them `default` and `customer`. The `default` entity manager manages entities in the `AcmeDemoBundle` and `AcmeStoreBundle`, while the `customer` entity manager manages entities in the `AcmeCustomerBundle`. You've also defined two connections, one for each entity manager.



When working with multiple connections and entity managers, you should be explicit about which configuration you want. If you *do* omit the name of the connection or entity manager, the default (i.e. `default`) is used.

When working with multiple connections to create your databases:

Listing 40-2

```

1  # Play only with "default" connection
2  $ php app/console doctrine:database:create
3
4  # Play only with "customer" connection
5  $ php app/console doctrine:database:create --connection=customer

```

When working with multiple entity managers to update your schema:

Listing 40-3

```

1  # Play only with "default" mappings
2  $ php app/console doctrine:schema:update --force
3
4  # Play only with "customer" mappings
5  $ php app/console doctrine:schema:update --force --em=customer

```

If you *do* omit the entity manager's name when asking for it, the default entity manager (i.e. `default`) is returned:

Listing 40-4

```

1  class UserController extends Controller
2  {
3      public function indexAction()
4      {
5          // All three return the "default" entity manager
6          $em = $this->get('doctrine')->getManager();
7          $em = $this->get('doctrine')->getManager('default');
8          $em = $this->get('doctrine.orm.default_entity_manager');
9
10         // Both of these return the "customer" entity manager
11         $customerEm = $this->get('doctrine')->getManager('customer');
12         $customerEm = $this->get('doctrine.orm.customer_entity_manager');

```

```
13     }
14 }
```

You can now use Doctrine just as you did before - using the **default** entity manager to persist and fetch entities that it manages and the **customer** entity manager to persist and fetch its entities.

The same applies to repository calls:

Listing 40-5

```
1  class UserController extends Controller
2  {
3      public function indexAction()
4      {
5          // Retrieves a repository managed by the "default" em
6          $products = $this->get('doctrine')
7                      ->getRepository('AcmeStoreBundle:Product')
8                      ->findAll()
9      ;
10
11      // Explicit way to deal with the "default" em
12      $products = $this->get('doctrine')
13                  ->getRepository('AcmeStoreBundle:Product', 'default')
14                  ->findAll()
15      ;
16
17      // Retrieves a repository managed by the "customer" em
18      $customers = $this->get('doctrine')
19                  ->getRepository('AcmeCustomerBundle:Customer', 'customer')
20                  ->findAll()
21      ;
22  }
23 }
```



Chapter 41

How to Register custom DQL Functions

Doctrine allows you to specify custom DQL functions. For more information on this topic, read Doctrine's cookbook article "[DQL User Defined Functions](http://docs.doctrine-project.org/projects/doctrine-orm/en/latest/cookbook/dql-user-defined-functions.html)¹".

In Symfony, you can register your custom DQL functions as follows:

Listing 41-1

```
1  # app/config/config.yml
2  doctrine:
3      orm:
4          # ...
5          dql:
6              string_functions:
7                  test_string: Acme\HelloBundle\DQL\StringFunction
8                  second_string: Acme\HelloBundle\DQL\SecondStringFunction
9              numeric_functions:
10                 test_numeric: Acme\HelloBundle\DQL\NumericFunction
11             datetime_functions:
12                 test_datetime: Acme\HelloBundle\DQL\DatetimeFunction
```

1. <http://docs.doctrine-project.org/projects/doctrine-orm/en/latest/cookbook/dql-user-defined-functions.html>



Chapter 42

How to Define Relationships with Abstract Classes and Interfaces

One of the goals of bundles is to create discreet bundles of functionality that do not have many (if any) dependencies, allowing you to use that functionality in other applications without including unnecessary items.

Doctrine 2.2 includes a new utility called the `ResolveTargetEntityListener`, that functions by intercepting certain calls inside Doctrine and rewriting `targetEntity` parameters in your metadata mapping at runtime. It means that in your bundle you are able to use an interface or abstract class in your mappings and expect correct mapping to a concrete entity at runtime.

This functionality allows you to define relationships between different entities without making them hard dependencies.

Background

Suppose you have an *InvoiceBundle* which provides invoicing functionality and a *CustomerBundle* that contains customer management tools. You want to keep these separated, because they can be used in other systems without each other, but for your application you want to use them together.

In this case, you have an `Invoice` entity with a relationship to a non-existent object, an `InvoiceSubjectInterface`. The goal is to get the `ResolveTargetEntityListener` to replace any mention of the interface with a real object that implements that interface.

Set up

This article uses the following two basic entities (which are incomplete for brevity) to explain how to set up and use the `ResolveTargetEntityListener`.

A Customer entity:

Listing 42-1

```

1  // src/Acme/AppBundle/Entity/Customer.php
2
3  namespace Acme\AppBundle\Entity;
4
5  use Doctrine\ORM\Mapping as ORM;
6  use Acme\CustomerBundle\Entity\Customer as BaseCustomer;
7  use Acme\InvoiceBundle\Model\InvoiceSubjectInterface;
8
9  /**
10   * @ORM\Entity
11   * @ORM\Table(name="customer")
12   */
13  class Customer extends BaseCustomer implements InvoiceSubjectInterface
14  {
15      // In this example, any methods defined in the InvoiceSubjectInterface
16      // are already implemented in the BaseCustomer
17  }

```

An Invoice entity:

Listing 42-2

```

1  // src/Acme/InvoiceBundle/Entity/Invoice.php
2
3  namespace Acme\InvoiceBundle\Entity;
4
5  use Doctrine\ORM\Mapping as ORM;
6  use Acme\InvoiceBundle\Model\InvoiceSubjectInterface;
7
8  /**
9   * Represents an Invoice.
10   *
11   * @ORM\Entity
12   * @ORM\Table(name="invoice")
13   */
14  class Invoice
15  {
16      /**
17       * @ORM\ManyToOne(targetEntity="Acme\InvoiceBundle\Model\InvoiceSubjectInterface")
18       * @var InvoiceSubjectInterface
19       */
20      protected $subject;
21  }

```

An InvoiceSubjectInterface:

Listing 42-3

```

1  // src/Acme/InvoiceBundle/Model/InvoiceSubjectInterface.php
2
3  namespace Acme\InvoiceBundle\Model;
4
5  /**
6   * An interface that the invoice Subject object should implement.
7   * In most circumstances, only a single object should implement
8   * this interface as the ResolveTargetEntityListener can only
9   * change the target to a single object.
10   */
11  interface InvoiceSubjectInterface
12  {
13      // List any additional methods that your InvoiceBundle

```

```

14     // will need to access on the subject so that you can
15     // be sure that you have access to those methods.
16
17     /**
18      * @return string
19      */
20     public function getName();
21 }

```

Next, you need to configure the listener, which tells the DoctrineBundle about the replacement:

Listing 42-4

```

1 # app/config/config.yml
2 doctrine:
3     # ...
4     orm:
5         # ...
6         resolve_target_entities:
7             Acme\InvoiceBundle\Model\InvoiceSubjectInterface: Acme\AppBundle\Entity\Customer

```

Final Thoughts

With the `ResolveTargetEntityListener`, you are able to decouple your bundles, keeping them usable by themselves, but still being able to define relationships between different objects. By using this method, your bundles will end up being easier to maintain independently.



Chapter 43

How to Provide Model Classes for several Doctrine Implementations

When building a bundle that could be used not only with Doctrine ORM but also the CouchDB ODM, MongoDB ODM or PHPCR ODM, you should still only write one model class. The Doctrine bundles provide a compiler pass to register the mappings for your model classes.



For non-reusable bundles, the easiest option is to put your model classes in the default locations: **Entity** for the Doctrine ORM or **Document** for one of the ODMs. For reusable bundles, rather than duplicate model classes just to get the auto mapping, use the compiler pass.



New in version 2.3: The base mapping compiler pass was introduced in Symfony 2.3. The Doctrine bundles support it from DoctrineBundle \geq 1.2.1, MongoDBBundle \geq 3.0.0, PHPCRBundle \geq 1.0.0-alpha2 and the (unversioned) CouchDBBundle supports the compiler pass since the *CouchDB Mapping Compiler Pass pull request*¹ was merged.

If you want your bundle to support older versions of Symfony and Doctrine, you can provide a copy of the compiler pass in your bundle. See for example the *FOSUserBundle mapping configuration*² `addRegisterMappingsPass`.

In your bundle class, write the following code to register the compiler pass. This one is written for the FOSUserBundle, so parts of it will need to be adapted for your case:

Listing 43-1

```
1 use Doctrine\Bundle\DoctrineBundle\DependencyInjection\Compiler\DoctrineOrmMappingsPass;
2 use Doctrine\Bundle\MongoDBBundle\DependencyInjection\Compiler\DoctrineMongoDBMappingsPass;
3 use Doctrine\Bundle\CouchDBBundle\DependencyInjection\Compiler\DoctrineCouchDBMappingsPass;
4 use Doctrine\Bundle\PHPCRBundle\DependencyInjection\Compiler\DoctrinePhpcrMappingsPass;
5
6 class FOSUserBundle extends Bundle
7 {
```

1. <https://github.com/doctrine/DoctrineCouchDBBundle/pull/27>

2. <https://github.com/FriendsOfSymfony/FOSUserBundle/blob/master/FOSUserBundle.php>

```

8     public function build(ContainerBuilder $container)
9     {
10         parent::build($container);
11         // ...
12
13         $modelDir = realpath(__DIR__ . '/Resources/config/doctrine/model');
14         $mappings = array(
15             $modelDir => 'FOS\UserBundle\Model',
16         );
17
18         $ormCompilerClass =
19         'Doctrine\Bundle\DoctrineBundle\DependencyInjection\Compiler\DoctrineOrmMappingsPass';
20         if (class_exists($ormCompilerClass)) {
21             $container->addCompilerPass(
22                 DoctrineOrmMappingsPass::createXmlMappingDriver(
23                     $mappings,
24                     array('fos_user.model_manager_name'),
25                     'fos_user.backend_type_orm'
26                 ));
27         }
28
29         $mongoCompilerClass =
30         'Doctrine\Bundle\MongoDBBundle\DependencyInjection\Compiler\DoctrineMongoDBMappingsPass';
31         if (class_exists($mongoCompilerClass)) {
32             $container->addCompilerPass(
33                 DoctrineMongoDBMappingsPass::createXmlMappingDriver(
34                     $mappings,
35                     array('fos_user.model_manager_name'),
36                     'fos_user.backend_type_mongodb'
37                 ));
38         }
39
40         $couchCompilerClass =
41         'Doctrine\Bundle\CouchDBBundle\DependencyInjection\Compiler\DoctrineCouchDBMappingsPass';
42         if (class_exists($couchCompilerClass)) {
43             $container->addCompilerPass(
44                 DoctrineCouchDBMappingsPass::createXmlMappingDriver(
45                     $mappings,
46                     array('fos_user.model_manager_name'),
47                     'fos_user.backend_type_couchdb'
48                 ));
49         }
50
51         $phpcrCompilerClass =
52         'Doctrine\Bundle\PHPCRBundle\DependencyInjection\Compiler\DoctrinePhpcrMappingsPass';
53         if (class_exists($phpcrCompilerClass)) {
54             $container->addCompilerPass(
55                 DoctrinePhpcrMappingsPass::createXmlMappingDriver(
56                     $mappings,
57                     array('fos_user.model_manager_name'),
58                     'fos_user.backend_type_phpcr'
59                 ));
60         }
61     }
62 }

```


Note the *class_exists*³ check. This is crucial, as you do not want your bundle to have a hard dependency on all Doctrine bundles but let the user decide which to use.

The compiler pass provides factory methods for all drivers provided by Doctrine: Annotations, XML, Yaml, PHP and StaticPHP. The arguments are:

- a map/hash of absolute directory path to namespace;
- an array of container parameters that your bundle uses to specify the name of the Doctrine manager that it is using. In the above example, the FOSUserBundle stores the manager name that's being used under the `fos_user.model_manager_name` parameter. The compiler pass will append the parameter Doctrine is using to specify the name of the default manager. The first parameter found is used and the mappings are registered with that manager;
- an optional container parameter name that will be used by the compiler pass to determine if this Doctrine type is used at all. This is relevant if your user has more than one type of Doctrine bundle installed, but your bundle is only used with one type of Doctrine.



The factory method is using the `SymfonyFileLocator` of Doctrine, meaning it will only see XML and YML mapping files if they do not contain the full namespace as the filename. This is by design: the `SymfonyFileLocator` simplifies things by assuming the files are just the "short" version of the class as their filename (e.g. `BlogPost.orm.xml`)

If you also need to map a base class, you can register a compiler pass with the `DefaultFileLocator` like this. This code is simply taken from the `DoctrineOrmMappingsPass` and adapted to use the `DefaultFileLocator` instead of the `SymfonyFileLocator`:

Listing 43-2

```
1 private function buildMappingCompilerPass()
2 {
3     $arguments = array(array(realpath(__DIR__ . '/Resources/config/doctrine-base'),
4     '.orm.xml'));
5     $locator = new
6     Definition('Doctrine\Common\Persistence\Mapping\Driver\DefaultFileLocator',
7     $arguments);
8     $driver = new Definition('Doctrine\ORM\Mapping\Driver\XmlDriver',
9     array($locator));
10
11     return new DoctrineOrmMappingsPass(
12         $driver,
13         array('Full\Namespace'),
14         array('your_bundle.manager_name'),
15         'your_bundle.orm_enabled'
16     );
17 }
```

Now place your mapping file into `/Resources/config/doctrine-base` with the fully qualified class name, separated by `.` instead of `\`, for example `Other.Namespace.Model.Name.orm.xml`. You may not mix the two as otherwise the `SymfonyFileLocator` will get confused.

Adjust accordingly for the other Doctrine implementations.

3. <http://php.net/manual/en/function.class-exists.php>



Chapter 44

How to Implement a simple Registration Form

Some forms have extra fields whose values don't need to be stored in the database. For example, you may want to create a registration form with some extra fields (like a "terms accepted" checkbox field) and embed the form that actually stores the account information.

The simple User Model

You have a simple `User` entity mapped to the database:

Listing 44-1

```
1  // src/Acme/AccountBundle/Entity/User.php
2  namespace Acme\AccountBundle\Entity;
3
4  use Doctrine\ORM\Mapping as ORM;
5  use Symfony\Component\Validator\Constraints as Assert;
6  use Symfony\Bridge\Doctrine\Validator\Constraints\UniqueEntity;
7
8  /**
9   * @ORM\Entity
10   * @UniqueEntity(fields="email", message="Email already taken")
11   */
12  class User
13  {
14      /**
15       * @ORM\Id
16       * @ORM\Column(type="integer")
17       * @ORM\GeneratedValue(strategy="AUTO")
18       */
19      protected $id;
20
21      /**
22       * @ORM\Column(type="string", length=255)
23       * @Assert\NotBlank()
24       * @Assert\Email()
25       */
26      protected $email;
```

```

27
28  /**
29   * @ORM\Column(type="string", length=255)
30   * @Assert\NotBlank()
31   * @Assert\Length(max = 4096)
32   */
33  protected $plainPassword;
34
35  public function getId()
36  {
37      return $this->id;
38  }
39
40  public function getEmail()
41  {
42      return $this->email;
43  }
44
45  public function setEmail($email)
46  {
47      $this->email = $email;
48  }
49
50  public function getPlainPassword()
51  {
52      return $this->plainPassword;
53  }
54
55  public function setPlainPassword($password)
56  {
57      $this->plainPassword = $password;
58  }
59 }

```

This **User** entity contains three fields and two of them (**email** and **plainPassword**) should display on the form. The email property must be unique in the database, this is enforced by adding this validation at the top of the class.



If you want to integrate this User within the security system, you need to implement the *UserInterface* of the Security component.



Why the 4096 Password Limit?

Notice that the **plainPassword** field has a max length of 4096 characters. For security purposes (CVE-2013-5750¹), Symfony limits the plain password length to 4096 characters when encoding it. Adding this constraint makes sure that your form will give a validation error if anyone tries a super-long password.

You'll need to add this constraint anywhere in your application where your user submits a plaintext password (e.g. change password form). The only place where you don't need to worry about this is your login form, since Symfony's Security component handles this for you.

1. <http://symfony.com/blog/cve-2013-5750-security-issue-in-fosuserbundle-login-form>

Create a Form for the Model

Next, create the form for the User model:

```
Listing 44-2 1 // src/Acme/AccountBundle/Form/Type/ UserType.php
2 namespace Acme\AccountBundle\Form\Type;
3
4 use Symfony\Component\Form\AbstractType;
5 use Symfony\Component\Form\FormBuilderInterface;
6 use Symfony\Component\OptionsResolver\OptionsResolverInterface;
7
8 class UserType extends AbstractType
9 {
10     public function buildForm(FormBuilderInterface $builder, array $options)
11     {
12         $builder->add('email', 'email');
13         $builder->add('plainPassword', 'repeated', array(
14             'first_name' => 'password',
15             'second_name' => 'confirm',
16             'type' => 'password',
17         ));
18     }
19
20     public function setDefaultOptions(OptionsResolverInterface $resolver)
21     {
22         $resolver->setDefaults(array(
23             'data_class' => 'Acme\AccountBundle\Entity\User'
24         ));
25     }
26
27     public function getName()
28     {
29         return 'user';
30     }
31 }
```

There are just two fields: `email` and `plainPassword` (repeated to confirm the entered password). The `data_class` option tells the form the name of the underlying data class (i.e. your `User` entity).



To explore more things about the Form component, read *Forms*.

Embedding the User Form into a Registration Form

The form that you'll use for the registration page is not the same as the form used to simply modify the `User` (i.e. `UserType`). The registration form will contain further fields like "accept the terms", whose value won't be stored in the database.

Start by creating a simple class which represents the "registration":

```
Listing 44-3 1 // src/Acme/AccountBundle/Form/Model/Registration.php
2 namespace Acme\AccountBundle\Form\Model;
3
4 use Symfony\Component\Validator\Constraints as Assert;
```

```

5
6 use Acme\AccountBundle\Entity\User;
7
8 class Registration
9 {
10     /**
11      * @Assert\Type(type="Acme\AccountBundle\Entity\User")
12      * @Assert\Valid()
13      */
14     protected $user;
15
16     /**
17      * @Assert\NotBlank()
18      * @Assert\True()
19      */
20     protected $termsAccepted;
21
22     public function setUser(User $user)
23     {
24         $this->user = $user;
25     }
26
27     public function getUser()
28     {
29         return $this->user;
30     }
31
32     public function getTermsAccepted()
33     {
34         return $this->termsAccepted;
35     }
36
37     public function setTermsAccepted($termsAccepted)
38     {
39         $this->termsAccepted = (Boolean) $termsAccepted;
40     }
41 }

```

Next, create the form for this Registration model:

Listing 44-4

```

1 // src/Acme/AccountBundle/Form/Type/RegistrationType.php
2 namespace Acme\AccountBundle\Form\Type;
3
4 use Symfony\Component\Form\AbstractType;
5 use Symfony\Component\Form\FormBuilderInterface;
6
7 class RegistrationType extends AbstractType
8 {
9     public function buildForm(FormBuilderInterface $builder, array $options)
10     {
11         $builder->add('user', new UserType());
12         $builder->add(
13             'terms',
14             'checkbox',
15             array('property_path' => 'termsAccepted')
16         );
17         $builder->add('Register', 'submit');
18     }

```

```

19
20     public function getName()
21     {
22         return 'registration';
23     }
24 }

```

You don't need to use a special method for embedding the `UserType` form. A form is a field, too - so you can add this like any other field, with the expectation that the `Registration.user` property will hold an instance of the `User` class.

Handling the Form Submission

Next, you need a controller to handle the form. Start by creating a simple controller for displaying the registration form:

Listing 44-5

```

1  // src/Acme/AccountBundle/Controller/AccountController.php
2  namespace Acme\AccountBundle\Controller;
3
4  use Symfony\Bundle\FrameworkBundle\Controller\Controller;
5
6  use Acme\AccountBundle\Form\Type\RegistrationType;
7  use Acme\AccountBundle\Form\Model\Registration;
8
9  class AccountController extends Controller
10 {
11     public function registerAction()
12     {
13         $registration = new Registration();
14         $form = $this->createForm(new RegistrationType(), $registration, array(
15             'action' => $this->generateUrl('account_create'),
16         ));
17
18         return $this->render(
19             'AcmeAccountBundle:Account:register.html.twig',
20             array('form' => $form->createView())
21         );
22     }
23 }

```

And its template:

Listing 44-6

```

1  {% src/Acme/AccountBundle/Resources/views/Account/register.html.twig %}
2  {{ form(form) }}

```

Next, create the controller which handles the form submission. This performs the validation and saves the data into the database:

Listing 44-7

```

1  use Symfony\Component\HttpFoundation\Request;
2  // ...
3
4  public function createAction(Request $request)
5  {
6      $em = $this->getDoctrine()->getManager();

```

```

7
8     $form = $this->createForm(new RegistrationType(), new Registration());
9
10    $form->handleRequest($request);
11
12    if ($form->isValid()) {
13        $registration = $form->getData();
14
15        $em->persist($registration->getUser());
16        $em->flush();
17
18        return $this->redirect(...);
19    }
20
21    return $this->render(
22        'AcmeAccountBundle:Account:register.html.twig',
23        array('form' => $form->createView())
24    );
25 }

```

Add new Routes

Next, update your routes. If you're placing your routes inside your bundle (as shown here), don't forget to make sure that the routing file is being *imported*.

Listing 44-8

```

1 # src/Acme/AccountBundle/Resources/config/routing.yml
2 account_register:
3     path:      /register
4     defaults: { _controller: AcmeAccountBundle:Account:register }
5
6 account_create:
7     path:      /register/create
8     defaults: { _controller: AcmeAccountBundle:Account:create }

```

Update your Database Schema

Of course, since you've added a **User** entity during this tutorial, make sure that your database schema has been updated properly:

Listing 44-9

```

1 $ php app/console doctrine:schema:update --force

```

That's it! Your form now validates, and allows you to save the **User** object to the database. The extra **terms** checkbox on the **Registration** model class is used during validation, but not actually used afterwards when saving the User to the database.



Chapter 45

Console Commands

The Doctrine2 ORM integration offers several console commands under the `doctrine` namespace. To view the command list you can use the `list` command:

Listing 45-1 1 `$ php app/console list doctrine`

A list of available commands will print out. You can find out more information about any of these commands (or any Symfony command) by running the `help` command. For example, to get details about the `doctrine:database:create` task, run:

Listing 45-2 1 `$ php app/console help doctrine:database:create`

Some notable or interesting tasks include:

- `doctrine:ensure-production-settings` - checks to see if the current environment is configured efficiently for production. This should always be run in the `prod` environment:

Listing 45-3 1 `$ php app/console doctrine:ensure-production-settings --env=prod`

- `doctrine:mapping:import` - allows Doctrine to introspect an existing database and create mapping information. For more information, see *How to Generate Entities from an Existing Database*.
- `doctrine:mapping:info` - tells you all of the entities that Doctrine is aware of and whether or not there are any basic errors with the mapping.
- `doctrine:query:dql` and `doctrine:query:sql` - allow you to execute DQL or SQL queries directly from the command line.



Chapter 46

How to Send an Email

Sending emails is a classic task for any web application and one that has special complications and potential pitfalls. Instead of recreating the wheel, one solution to send emails is to use the `SwiftmailerBundle`, which leverages the power of the *Swift Mailer*¹ library.



Don't forget to enable the bundle in your kernel before using it:

Listing 46-1

```
1 public function registerBundles()
2 {
3     $bundles = array(
4         // ...
5
6         new Symfony\Bundle\SwiftmailerBundle\SwiftmailerBundle(),
7     );
8
9     // ...
10 }
```

Configuration

Before using Swift Mailer, be sure to include its configuration. The only mandatory configuration parameter is `transport`:

Listing 46-2

```
1 # app/config/config.yml
2 swiftmailer:
3     transport: smtp
4     encryption: ssl
5     auth_mode: login
6     host: smtp.gmail.com
7     username: your_username
8     password: your_password
```

1. <http://swiftmailer.org/>

The majority of the Swift Mailer configuration deals with how the messages themselves should be delivered.

The following configuration attributes are available:

- `transport` (smtp, mail, sendmail, or gmail)
- `username`
- `password`
- `host`
- `port`
- `encryption` (tls, or ssl)
- `auth_mode` (plain, login, or cram-md5)
- `spool`
 - `type` (how to queue the messages, `file` or `memory` is supported, see *How to Spool Emails*)
 - `path` (where to store the messages)
- `delivery_address` (an email address where to send ALL emails)
- `disable_delivery` (set to true to disable delivery completely)

Sending Emails

The Swift Mailer library works by creating, configuring and then sending `Swift_Message` objects. The "mailer" is responsible for the actual delivery of the message and is accessible via the `mailer` service. Overall, sending an email is pretty straightforward:

Listing 46-3

```
1 public function indexAction($name)
2 {
3     $message = \Swift_Message::newInstance()
4         ->setSubject('Hello Email')
5         ->setFrom('send@example.com')
6         ->setTo('recipient@example.com')
7         ->setBody(
8             $this->renderView(
9                 'HelloBundle:Hello:email.txt.twig',
10                array('name' => $name)
11            )
12        )
13    ;
14    $this->get('mailer')->send($message);
15
16    return $this->render(...);
17 }
```

To keep things decoupled, the email body has been stored in a template and rendered with the `renderView()` method.

The `$message` object supports many more options, such as including attachments, adding HTML content, and much more. Fortunately, Swift Mailer covers the topic of *Creating Messages*² in great detail in its documentation.

2. <http://swiftmailer.org/docs/messages.html>



Several other cookbook articles are available related to sending emails in Symfony:

- *How to Use Gmail to Send Emails*
- *How to Work with Emails during Development*
- *How to Spool Emails*



Chapter 47

How to Use Gmail to Send Emails

During development, instead of using a regular SMTP server to send emails, you might find using Gmail easier and more practical. The SwiftmailerBundle makes it really easy.



Instead of using your regular Gmail account, it's of course recommended that you create a special account.

In the development configuration file, change the `transport` setting to `gmail` and set the `username` and `password` to the Google credentials:

Listing 47-1

```
1 # app/config/config_dev.yml
2 swiftmailer:
3     transport: gmail
4     username:  your_gmail_username
5     password:  your_gmail_password
```

You're done!



If you are using the Symfony Standard Edition, configure the parameters in `parameters.yml`:

Listing 47-2

```
1 # app/config/parameters.yml
2 parameters:
3     # ...
4     mailer_transport: gmail
5     mailer_host:      ~
6     mailer_user:      your_gmail_username
7     mailer_password:  your_gmail_password
```



The `gmail` transport is simply a shortcut that uses the `smtp` transport and sets `encryption`, `auth_mode` and `host` to work with Gmail.



Chapter 48

How to Use the Cloud to Send Emails

Requirements for sending emails from a production system differ from your development setup as you don't want to be limited in the number of emails, the sending rate or the sender address. Thus, *using Gmail* or similar services is not an option. If setting up and maintaining your own reliable mail server causes you a headache there's a simple solution: Leverage the cloud to send your emails.

This cookbook shows how easy it is to integrate *Amazon's Simple Email Service (SES)*¹ into Symfony.



You can use the same technique for other mail services, as most of the time there is nothing more to it than configuring an SMTP endpoint for Swift Mailer.

In the Symfony configuration, change the Swift Mailer settings **transport**, **host**, **port** and **encryption** according to the information provided in the *SES console*². Create your individual SMTP credentials in the SES console and complete the configuration with the provided **username** and **password**:

Listing 48-1

```
1 # app/config/config.yml
2 swiftmailer:
3     transport: smtp
4     host:      email-smtp.us-east-1.amazonaws.com
5     port:      465 # different ports are available, see SES console
6     encryption: tls # TLS encryption is required
7     username:  AWS_ACCESS_KEY # to be created in the SES console
8     password:  AWS_SECRET_KEY # to be created in the SES console
```

The **port** and **encryption** keys are not present in the Symfony Standard Edition configuration by default, but you can simply add them as needed.

And that's it, you're ready to start sending emails through the cloud!

1. <http://aws.amazon.com/ses>

2. <https://console.aws.amazon.com/ses>



If you are using the Symfony Standard Edition, configure the parameters in `parameters.yml` and use them in your configuration files. This allows for different Swift Mailer configurations for each installation of your application. For instance, use Gmail during development and the cloud in production.

Listing 48-2

```
1 # app/config/parameters.yml
2 parameters:
3     # ...
4     mailer_transport: smtp
5     mailer_host:      email-smtp.us-east-1.amazonaws.com
6     mailer_port:      465 # different ports are available, see SES console
7     mailer_encryption: tls # TLS encryption is required
8     mailer_user:      AWS_ACCESS_KEY # to be created in the SES console
9     mailer_password:  AWS_SECRET_KEY # to be created in the SES console
```



If you intend to use Amazon SES, please note the following:

- You have to sign up to *Amazon Web Services (AWS)*³;
- Every sender address used in the **From** or **Return-Path** (bounce address) header needs to be confirmed by the owner. You can also confirm an entire domain;
- Initially you are in a restricted sandbox mode. You need to request production access before being allowed to send to arbitrary recipients;
- SES may be subject to a charge.

3. <http://aws.amazon.com>



Chapter 49

How to Work with Emails during Development

When developing an application which sends email, you will often not want to actually send the email to the specified recipient during development. If you are using the SwiftmailerBundle with Symfony, you can easily achieve this through configuration settings without having to make any changes to your application's code at all. There are two main choices when it comes to handling email during development: (a) disabling the sending of email altogether or (b) sending all email to a specific address.

Disabling Sending

You can disable sending email by setting the `disable_delivery` option to `true`. This is the default in the `test` environment in the Standard distribution. If you do this in the `test` specific config then email will not be sent when you run tests, but will continue to be sent in the `prod` and `dev` environments:

Listing 49-1

```
1 # app/config/config_test.yml
2 swiftmailer:
3     disable_delivery: true
```

If you'd also like to disable deliver in the `dev` environment, simply add this same configuration to the `config_dev.yml` file.

Sending to a Specified Address

You can also choose to have all email sent to a specific address, instead of the address actually specified when sending the message. This can be done via the `delivery_address` option:

Listing 49-2

```
1 # app/config/config_dev.yml
2 swiftmailer:
3     delivery_address: dev@example.com
```

Now, suppose you're sending an email to `recipient@example.com`.

Listing 49-3

```

1 public function indexAction($name)
2 {
3     $message = \Swift_Message::newInstance()
4         ->setSubject('Hello Email')
5         ->setFrom('send@example.com')
6         ->setTo('recipient@example.com')
7         ->setBody(
8             $this->renderView(
9                 'HelloBundle:Hello:email.txt.twig',
10                 array('name' => $name)
11             )
12         )
13     ;
14     $this->get('mailer')->send($message);
15
16     return $this->render(...);
17 }

```

In the **dev** environment, the email will instead be sent to **dev@example.com**. Swift Mailer will add an extra header to the email, **X-Swift-To**, containing the replaced address, so you can still see who it would have been sent to.



In addition to the **to** addresses, this will also stop the email being sent to any **CC** and **BCC** addresses set for it. Swift Mailer will add additional headers to the email with the overridden addresses in them. These are **X-Swift-Cc** and **X-Swift-Bcc** for the **CC** and **BCC** addresses respectively.

Viewing from the Web Debug Toolbar

You can view any email sent during a single response when you are in the **dev** environment using the Web Debug Toolbar. The email icon in the toolbar will show how many emails were sent. If you click it, a report will open showing the details of the sent emails.

If you're sending an email and then immediately redirecting to another page, the web debug toolbar will not display an email icon or a report on the next page.

Instead, you can set the **intercept_redirects** option to **true** in the **config_dev.yml** file, which will cause the redirect to stop and allow you to open the report with details of the sent emails.

Listing 49-4

```

1 # app/config/config_dev.yml
2 web_profiler:
3     intercept_redirects: true

```



Alternatively, you can open the profiler after the redirect and search by the submit URL used on the previous request (e.g. **/contact/handle**). The profiler's search feature allows you to load the profiler information for any past requests.



Chapter 50

How to Spool Emails

When you are using the `SwiftmailerBundle` to send an email from a Symfony application, it will default to sending the email immediately. You may, however, want to avoid the performance hit of the communication between Swift Mailer and the email transport, which could cause the user to wait for the next page to load while the email is sending. This can be avoided by choosing to "spool" the emails instead of sending them directly. This means that Swift Mailer does not attempt to send the email but instead saves the message to somewhere such as a file. Another process can then read from the spool and take care of sending the emails in the spool. Currently only spooling to file or memory is supported by Swift Mailer.

Spool Using Memory

When you use spooling to store the emails to memory, they will get sent right before the kernel terminates. This means the email only gets sent if the whole request got executed without any unhandled Exception or any errors. To configure swiftmailer with the memory option, use the following configuration:

Listing 50-1

```
1 # app/config/config.yml
2 swiftmailer:
3     # ...
4     spool: { type: memory }
```

Spool Using a File

In order to use the spool with a file, use the following configuration:

Listing 50-2

```
1 # app/config/config.yml
2 swiftmailer:
3     # ...
4     spool:
```

```
5     type: file
6     path: /path/to/spool
```



If you want to store the spool somewhere with your project directory, remember that you can use the `%kernel.root_dir%` parameter to reference the project's root:

Listing 50-3 1 `path: "%kernel.root_dir%/spool"`

Now, when your app sends an email, it will not actually be sent but instead added to the spool. Sending the messages from the spool is done separately. There is a console command to send the messages in the spool:

Listing 50-4 1 `$ php app/console swiftmailer:spool:send --env=prod`

It has an option to limit the number of messages to be sent:

Listing 50-5 1 `$ php app/console swiftmailer:spool:send --message-limit=10 --env=prod`

You can also set the time limit in seconds:

Listing 50-6 1 `$ php app/console swiftmailer:spool:send --time-limit=10 --env=prod`

Of course you will not want to run this manually in reality. Instead, the console command should be triggered by a cron job or scheduled task and run at a regular interval.



Chapter 51

How to Test that an Email is Sent in a functional Test

Sending e-mails with Symfony is pretty straightforward thanks to the `SwiftmailerBundle`, which leverages the power of the *Swift Mailer*¹ library.

To functionally test that an email was sent, and even assert the email subject, content or any other headers, you can use *the Symfony Profiler*.

Start with an easy controller action that sends an e-mail:

Listing 51-1

```
1 public function sendEmailAction($name)
2 {
3     $message = \Swift_Message::newInstance()
4         ->setSubject('Hello Email')
5         ->setFrom('send@example.com')
6         ->setTo('recipient@example.com')
7         ->setBody('You should see me from the profiler!')
8     ;
9
10    $this->get('mailer')->send($message);
11
12    return $this->render(...);
13 }
```



Don't forget to enable the profiler as explained in *How to Use the Profiler in a Functional Test*.

In your functional test, use the `swiftmailer` collector on the profiler to get information about the messages sent on the previous request:

Listing 51-2

1. <http://swiftmailer.org/>

```

1  // src/Acme/DemoBundle/Tests/Controller/MailControllerTest.php
2  use Symfony\Bundle\FrameworkBundle\Test\WebTestCase;
3
4  class MailControllerTest extends WebTestCase
5  {
6      public function testMailIsSentAndContentIsOk()
7      {
8          $client = static::createClient();
9
10         // Enable the profiler for the next request (it does nothing if the profiler is
11         not available)
12         $client->enableProfiler();
13
14         $crawler = $client->request('POST', '/path/to/above/action');
15
16         $mailCollector = $client->getProfile()->getCollector('swiftmailer');
17
18         // Check that an e-mail was sent
19         $this->assertEquals(1, $mailCollector->getMessageCount());
20
21         $collectedMessages = $mailCollector->getMessages();
22         $message = $collectedMessages[0];
23
24         // Asserting e-mail data
25         $this->assertInstanceOf('Swift_Message', $message);
26         $this->assertEquals('Hello Email', $message->getSubject());
27         $this->assertEquals('send@example.com', key($message->getFrom()));
28         $this->assertEquals('recipient@example.com', key($message->getTo()));
29         $this->assertEquals(
30             'You should see me from the profiler!',
31             $message->getBody()
32         );
33     }
34 }

```



Chapter 52

How to Setup before and after Filters

It is quite common in web application development to need some logic to be executed just before or just after your controller actions acting as filters or hooks.

In symfony1, this was achieved with the `preExecute` and `postExecute` methods. Most major frameworks have similar methods but there is no such thing in Symfony2. The good news is that there is a much better way to interfere with the Request -> Response process using the *EventDispatcher component*.

Token Validation Example

Imagine that you need to develop an API where some controllers are public but some others are restricted to one or some clients. For these private features, you might provide a token to your clients to identify themselves.

So, before executing your controller action, you need to check if the action is restricted or not. If it is restricted, you need to validate the provided token.



Please note that for simplicity in this recipe, tokens will be defined in config and neither database setup nor authentication via the Security component will be used.

Before Filters with the `kernel.controller` Event

First, store some basic token configuration using `config.yml` and the `parameters` key:

Listing 52-1

```
1 # app/config/config.yml
2 parameters:
3     tokens:
4         client1: pass1
5         client2: pass2
```

Tag Controllers to Be Checked

A `kernel.controller` listener gets notified on *every* request, right before the controller is executed. So, first, you need some way to identify if the controller that matches the request needs token validation.

A clean and easy way is to create an empty interface and make the controllers implement it:

```
Listing 52-2 1 namespace Acme\DemoBundle\Controller;
2
3 interface TokenAuthenticatedController
4 {
5     // ...
6 }
```

A controller that implements this interface simply looks like this:

```
Listing 52-3 1 namespace Acme\DemoBundle\Controller;
2
3 use Acme\DemoBundle\Controller\TokenAuthenticatedController;
4 use Symfony\Bundle\FrameworkBundle\Controller\Controller;
5
6 class FooController extends Controller implements TokenAuthenticatedController
7 {
8     // An action that needs authentication
9     public function barAction()
10    {
11        // ...
12    }
13 }
```

Creating an Event Listener

Next, you'll need to create an event listener, which will hold the logic that you want executed before your controllers. If you're not familiar with event listeners, you can learn more about them at *How to Create an Event Listener*:

```
Listing 52-4 1 // src/Acme/DemoBundle/EventListener/TokenListener.php
2 namespace Acme\DemoBundle\EventListener;
3
4 use Acme\DemoBundle\Controller\TokenAuthenticatedController;
5 use Symfony\Component\HttpKernel\Exception\AccessDeniedHttpException;
6 use Symfony\Component\HttpKernel\Event\FilterControllerEvent;
7
8 class TokenListener
9 {
10     private $tokens;
11
12     public function __construct($tokens)
13     {
14         $this->tokens = $tokens;
15     }
16
17     public function onKernelController(FilterControllerEvent $event)
18     {
19         $controller = $event->getController();
20
21         /*
```

```

22      * $controller passed can be either a class or a Closure.
23      * This is not usual in Symfony but it may happen.
24      * If it is a class, it comes in array format
25      */
26      if (!is_array($controller)) {
27          return;
28      }
29
30      if ($controller[0] instanceof TokenAuthenticatedController) {
31          $token = $event->getRequest()->query->get('token');
32          if (!in_array($token, $this->tokens)) {
33              throw new AccessDeniedHttpException('This action needs a valid token!');
34          }
35      }
36  }
37 }

```

Registering the Listener

Finally, register your listener as a service and tag it as an event listener. By listening on `kernel.controller`, you're telling Symfony that you want your listener to be called just before any controller is executed.

Listing 52-5

```

1  # app/config/config.yml (or inside your services.yml)
2  services:
3      demo.tokens.action_listener:
4          class: Acme\DemoBundle\EventListener\TokenListener
5          arguments: ["%tokens%"]
6          tags:
7              - { name: kernel.event_listener, event: kernel.controller, method:
onKernelController }

```

With this configuration, your `TokenListener onKernelController` method will be executed on each request. If the controller that is about to be executed implements `TokenAuthenticatedController`, token authentication is applied. This lets you have a "before" filter on any controller that you want.

After Filters with the `kernel.response` Event

In addition to having a "hook" that's executed *before* your controller, you can also add a hook that's executed *after* your controller. For this example, imagine that you want to add a sha1 hash (with a salt using that token) to all responses that have passed this token authentication.

Another core Symfony event - called `kernel.response` - is notified on every request, but after the controller returns a `Response` object. Creating an "after" listener is as easy as creating a listener class and registering it as a service on this event.

For example, take the `TokenListener` from the previous example and first record the authentication token inside the request attributes. This will serve as a basic flag that this request underwent token authentication:

Listing 52-6

```

1  public function onKernelController(FilterControllerEvent $event)
2  {
3      // ...
4

```

```

5     if ($controller[0] instanceof TokenAuthenticatedController) {
6         $token = $event->getRequest()->query->get('token');
7         if (!in_array($token, $this->tokens)) {
8             throw new AccessDeniedHttpException('This action needs a valid token!');
9         }
10
11         // mark the request as having passed token authentication
12         $event->getRequest()->attributes->set('auth_token', $token);
13     }
14 }

```

Now, add another method to this class - `onKernelResponse` - that looks for this flag on the request object and sets a custom header on the response if it's found:

Listing 52-7

```

1 // add the new use statement at the top of your file
2 use Symfony\Component\HttpKernel\Event\FilterResponseEvent;
3
4 public function onKernelResponse(FilterResponseEvent $event)
5 {
6     // check to see if onKernelController marked this as a token "auth'ed" request
7     if (!$token = $event->getRequest()->attributes->get('auth_token')) {
8         return;
9     }
10
11     $response = $event->getResponse();
12
13     // create a hash and set it as a response header
14     $hash = sha1($response->getContent().$token);
15     $response->headers->set('X-CONTENT-HASH', $hash);
16 }

```

Finally, a second "tag" is needed on the service definition to notify Symfony that the `onKernelResponse` event should be notified for the `kernel.response` event:

Listing 52-8

```

1 # app/config/config.yml (or inside your services.yml)
2 services:
3     demo.tokens.action_listener:
4         class: Acme\DemoBundle\EventListener\TokenListener
5         arguments: ["%tokens%"]
6         tags:
7             - { name: kernel.event_listener, event: kernel.controller, method:
8 onKernelController }
9             - { name: kernel.event_listener, event: kernel.response, method:
onKernelResponse }

```

That's it! The `TokenListener` is now notified before every controller is executed (`onKernelController`) and after every controller returns a response (`onKernelResponse`). By making specific controllers implement the `TokenAuthenticatedController` interface, your listener knows which controllers it should take action on. And by storing a value in the request's "attributes" bag, the `onKernelResponse` method knows to add the extra header. Have fun!



Chapter 53

How to Extend a Class without Using Inheritance

To allow multiple classes to add methods to another one, you can define the magic `__call()` method in the class you want to be extended like this:

Listing 53-1

```
1 class Foo
2 {
3     // ...
4
5     public function __call($method, $arguments)
6     {
7         // create an event named 'foo.method_is_not_found'
8         $event = new HandleUndefinedMethodEvent($this, $method, $arguments);
9         $this->dispatcher->dispatch('foo.method_is_not_found', $event);
10
11         // no listener was able to process the event? The method does not exist
12         if (!$event->isProcessed()) {
13             throw new \Exception(sprintf('Call to undefined method %s::%s.',
14 get_class($this), $method));
15         }
16
17         // return the listener returned value
18         return $event->getReturnValue();
19     }
20 }
```

This uses a special `HandleUndefinedMethodEvent` that should also be created. This is a generic class that could be reused each time you need to use this pattern of class extension:

Listing 53-2

```
1 use Symfony\Component\EventDispatcher\Event;
2
3 class HandleUndefinedMethodEvent extends Event
4 {
5     protected $subject;
```

```

6     protected $method;
7     protected $arguments;
8     protected $returnValue;
9     protected $isProcessed = false;
10
11     public function __construct($subject, $method, $arguments)
12     {
13         $this->subject = $subject;
14         $this->method = $method;
15         $this->arguments = $arguments;
16     }
17
18     public function getSubject()
19     {
20         return $this->subject;
21     }
22
23     public function getMethod()
24     {
25         return $this->method;
26     }
27
28     public function getArguments()
29     {
30         return $this->arguments;
31     }
32
33     /**
34      * Sets the value to return and stops other listeners from being notified
35      */
36     public function setReturnValue($val)
37     {
38         $this->returnValue = $val;
39         $this->isProcessed = true;
40         $this->stopPropagation();
41     }
42
43     public function getReturnValue()
44     {
45         return $this->returnValue;
46     }
47
48     public function isProcessed()
49     {
50         return $this->isProcessed;
51     }
52 }

```

Next, create a class that will listen to the `foo.method_is_not_found` event and *add* the method `bar()`:

Listing 53-3

```

1 class Bar
2 {
3     public function onFooMethodIsNotFound(HandleUndefinedMethodEvent $event)
4     {
5         // only respond to the calls to the 'bar' method
6         if ('bar' != $event->getMethod()) {
7             // allow another listener to take care of this unknown method
8             return;
9         }
10    }
11 }

```

```

9         }
10
11         // the subject object (the foo instance)
12         $foo = $event->getSubject();
13
14         // the bar method arguments
15         $arguments = $event->getArguments();
16
17         // ... do something
18
19         // set the return value
20         $event->setReturnValue($someValue);
21     }
22 }

```

Finally, add the new `bar` method to the `Foo` class by registering an instance of `Bar` with the `foo.method_is_not_found` event:

Listing 53-4

```

1 $bar = new Bar();
2 $dispatcher->addListener('foo.method_is_not_found', array($bar, 'onFooMethodIsNotFound'));

```



Chapter 54

How to Customize a Method Behavior without Using Inheritance

Doing something before or after a Method Call

If you want to do something just before, or just after a method is called, you can dispatch an event respectively at the beginning or at the end of the method:

```
Listing 54-1 1 class Foo
2 {
3     // ...
4
5     public function send($foo, $bar)
6     {
7         // do something before the method
8         $event = new FilterBeforeSendEvent($foo, $bar);
9         $this->dispatcher->dispatch('foo.pre_send', $event);
10
11         // get $foo and $bar from the event, they may have been modified
12         $foo = $event->getFoo();
13         $bar = $event->getBar();
14
15         // the real method implementation is here
16         $ret = ...;
17
18         // do something after the method
19         $event = new FilterSendReturnValue($ret);
20         $this->dispatcher->dispatch('foo.post_send', $event);
21
22         return $event->getReturnValue();
23     }
24 }
```

In this example, two events are thrown: `foo.pre_send`, before the method is executed, and `foo.post_send` after the method is executed. Each uses a custom Event class to communicate information to the listeners of the two events. These event classes would need to be created by you and should allow, in this example, the variables `$foo`, `$bar` and `$ret` to be retrieved and set by the listeners.

For example, assuming the `FilterSendReturnValue` has a `setReturnValue` method, one listener might look like this:

Listing 54-2

```
1 public function onFooPostSend(FilterSendReturnValue $event)
2 {
3     $ret = $event->getReturnValue();
4     // modify the original ``$ret`` value
5
6     $event->setReturnValue($ret);
7 }
```



Chapter 55

How to use Expressions in Security, Routing, Services, and Validation



New in version 2.4: The expression functionality was introduced in Symfony 2.4.

In Symfony 2.4, a powerful *ExpressionLanguage* component was added to Symfony. This allows us to add highly customized logic inside configuration.

The Symfony Framework leverages expressions out of the box in the following ways:

- *Configuring services;*
- *Route matching conditions;*
- *Checking security and access controls with `allow_if`;*
- *Validation.*

For more information about how to create and work with expressions, see *The Expression Syntax*.



Chapter 56

How to Customize Form Rendering

Symfony gives you a wide variety of ways to customize how a form is rendered. In this guide, you'll learn how to customize every possible part of your form with as little effort as possible whether you use Twig or PHP as your templating engine.

Form Rendering Basics

Recall that the label, error and HTML widget of a form field can easily be rendered by using the `form_row` Twig function or the `row` PHP helper method:

Listing 56-1 1 `{{ form_row(form.age) }}`

You can also render each of the three parts of the field individually:

Listing 56-2 1 `<div>`
2 `{{ form_label(form.age) }}`
3 `{{ form_errors(form.age) }}`
4 `{{ form_widget(form.age) }}`
5 `</div>`

In both cases, the form label, errors and HTML widget are rendered by using a set of markup that ships standard with Symfony. For example, both of the above templates would render:

Listing 56-3 1 `<div>`
2 `<label for="form_age">Age</label>`
3 ``
4 `This field is required`
5 ``
6 `<input type="number" id="form_age" name="form[age]" />`
7 `</div>`

To quickly prototype and test a form, you can render the entire form with just one line:

Listing 56-4

```
1 {{ form_widget(form) }}
```

The remainder of this recipe will explain how every part of the form's markup can be modified at several different levels. For more information about form rendering in general, see *Rendering a Form in a Template*.

What are Form Themes?

Symfony uses form fragments - a small piece of a template that renders just one part of a form - to render each part of a form - field labels, errors, **input** text fields, **select** tags, etc.

The fragments are defined as blocks in Twig and as template files in PHP.

A *theme* is nothing more than a set of fragments that you want to use when rendering a form. In other words, if you want to customize one portion of how a form is rendered, you'll import a *theme* which contains a customization of the appropriate form fragments.

Symfony comes with a default theme (*form_div_layout.html.twig*¹ in Twig and `FrameworkBundle:Form` in PHP) that defines each and every fragment needed to render every part of a form.

In the next section you will learn how to customize a theme by overriding some or all of its fragments.

For example, when the widget of an **integer** type field is rendered, an **input number** field is generated

Listing 56-5 1 {{ form_widget(form.age) }}

renders:

Listing 56-6 1 <input type="number" id="form_age" name="form[age]" required="required" value="33" />

Internally, Symfony uses the `integer_widget` fragment to render the field. This is because the field type is **integer** and you're rendering its **widget** (as opposed to its **label** or **errors**).

In Twig that would default to the block `integer_widget` from the *form_div_layout.html.twig*² template.

In PHP it would rather be the `integer_widget.html.php` file located in the `FrameworkBundle/Resources/views/Form` folder.

The default implementation of the `integer_widget` fragment looks like this:

Listing 56-7 1 *{# form_div_layout.html.twig #}*
2 {% block integer_widget %}
3 {% set type = type|default('number') %}
4 {{ block('form_widget_simple') }}
5 {% endblock integer_widget %}

As you can see, this fragment itself renders another fragment - `form_widget_simple`:

Listing 56-8 1 *{# form_div_layout.html.twig #}*
2 {% block form_widget_simple %}
3 {% set type = type|default('text') %}
4 <input type="{{ type }}" {{ block('widget_attributes') }} {% if value is not empty
5 %}value="{{ value }}" {% endif %}/>
6 {% endblock form_widget_simple %}

1. https://github.com/symfony/symfony/blob/master/src/Symfony/Bridge/Twig/Resources/views/Form/form_div_layout.html.twig

2. https://github.com/symfony/symfony/blob/master/src/Symfony/Bridge/Twig/Resources/views/Form/form_div_layout.html.twig

The point is, the fragments dictate the HTML output of each part of a form. To customize the form output, you just need to identify and override the correct fragment. A set of these form fragment customizations is known as a form "theme". When rendering a form, you can choose which form theme(s) you want to apply.

In Twig a theme is a single template file and the fragments are the blocks defined in this file.

In PHP a theme is a folder and the fragments are individual template files in this folder.



Knowing which Block to Customize

In this example, the customized fragment name is `integer_widget` because you want to override the HTML `widget` for all `integer` field types. If you need to customize `textarea` fields, you would customize `textarea_widget`.

As you can see, the fragment name is a combination of the field type and which part of the field is being rendered (e.g. `widget`, `label`, `errors`, `row`). As such, to customize how errors are rendered for just input `text` fields, you should customize the `text_errors` fragment.

More commonly, however, you'll want to customize how errors are displayed across *all* fields. You can do this by customizing the `form_errors` fragment. This takes advantage of field type inheritance. Specifically, since the `text` type extends from the `form` type, the Form component will first look for the type-specific fragment (e.g. `text_errors`) before falling back to its parent fragment name if it doesn't exist (e.g. `form_errors`).

For more information on this topic, see *Form Fragment Naming*.

Form Theming

To see the power of form theming, suppose you want to wrap every input `number` field with a `div` tag. The key to doing this is to customize the `integer_widget` fragment.

Form Theming in Twig

When customizing the form field block in Twig, you have two options on *where* the customized form block can live:

Method	Pros	Cons
Inside the same template as the form	Quick and easy	Can't be reused in other templates
Inside a separate template	Can be reused by many templates	Requires an extra template to be created

Both methods have the same effect but are better in different situations.

Method 1: Inside the same Template as the Form

The easiest way to customize the `integer_widget` block is to customize it directly in the template that's actually rendering the form.

Listing 56-9

```
1 {% extends '::base.html.twig' %}
2
```

```

3 {% form_theme form _self %}
4
5 {% block integer_widget %}
6     <div class="integer_widget">
7         {% set type = type|default('number') %}
8         {{ block('form_widget_simple') }}
9     </div>
10 {% endblock %}
11
12 {% block content %}
13     {# ... render the form #}
14
15     {{ form_row(form.age) }}
16 {% endblock %}

```

By using the special `{% form_theme form _self %}` tag, Twig looks inside the same template for any overridden form blocks. Assuming the `form.age` field is an `integer` type field, when its widget is rendered, the customized `integer_widget` block will be used.

The disadvantage of this method is that the customized form block can't be reused when rendering other forms in other templates. In other words, this method is most useful when making form customizations that are specific to a single form in your application. If you want to reuse a form customization across several (or all) forms in your application, read on to the next section.

Method 2: Inside a separate Template

You can also choose to put the customized `integer_widget` form block in a separate template entirely. The code and end-result are the same, but you can now re-use the form customization across many templates:

Listing 56-10

```

1 {# src/Acme/DemoBundle/Resources/views/Form/fields.html.twig #}
2 {% block integer_widget %}
3     <div class="integer_widget">
4         {% set type = type|default('number') %}
5         {{ block('form_widget_simple') }}
6     </div>
7 {% endblock %}

```

Now that you've created the customized form block, you need to tell Symfony to use it. Inside the template where you're actually rendering your form, tell Symfony to use the template via the `form_theme` tag:

Listing 56-11

```

1 {% form_theme form 'AcmeDemoBundle:Form:fields.html.twig' %}
2
3 {{ form_widget(form.age) }}

```

When the `form.age` widget is rendered, Symfony will use the `integer_widget` block from the new template and the `input` tag will be wrapped in the `div` element specified in the customized block.

Multiple Templates

A form can also be customized by applying several templates. To do this, pass the name of all the templates as an array using the `with` keyword:

Listing 56-12

```

1 {% form_theme form with [ '::common.html.twig', 'Form:fields.html.twig',
2                           'AcmeDemoBundle:Form:fields.html.twig' ] %}
3
4 {# ... #}

```

The templates can be located at different bundles and they can even be stored at the global `app/Resources/views/` directory.

Child Forms

You can also apply a form theme to a specific child of your form:

Listing 56-13 1 {% form_theme form.child 'AcmeDemoBundle:Form:fields.html.twig' %}

This is useful when you want to have a custom theme for a nested form that's different than the one of your main form. Just specify both your themes:

Listing 56-14 1 {% form_theme form 'AcmeDemoBundle:Form:fields.html.twig' %}
 2
 3 {% form_theme form.child 'AcmeDemoBundle:Form:fields_child.html.twig' %}

Form Theming in PHP

When using PHP as a templating engine, the only method to customize a fragment is to create a new template file - this is similar to the second method used by Twig.

The template file must be named after the fragment. You must create a `integer_widget.html.php` file in order to customize the `integer_widget` fragment.

Listing 56-15 1 <!-- src/Acme/DemoBundle/Resources/views/Form/integer_widget.html.php -->
 2 <div class="integer_widget">
 3 <?php echo \$view['form']->block(\$form, 'form_widget_simple', array('type' =>
 4 isset(\$type) ? \$type : "number")) ?>
 </div>

Now that you've created the customized form template, you need to tell Symfony to use it. Inside the template where you're actually rendering your form, tell Symfony to use the theme via the `setTheme` helper method:

Listing 56-16 1 <?php \$view['form']->setTheme(\$form, array('AcmeDemoBundle:Form')); ?>
 2
 3 <?php \$view['form']->widget(\$form['age']) ?>

When the `form.age` widget is rendered, Symfony will use the customized `integer_widget.html.php` template and the `input` tag will be wrapped in the `div` element.

If you want to apply a theme to a specific child form, pass it to the `setTheme` method:

Listing 56-17 1 <?php \$view['form']->setTheme(\$form['child'], 'AcmeDemoBundle:Form/Child'); ?>

Referencing base Form Blocks (Twig specific)

So far, to override a particular form block, the best method is to copy the default block from *form_div_layout.html.twig*³, paste it into a different template, and then customize it. In many cases, you can avoid doing this by referencing the base block when customizing it.

This is easy to do, but varies slightly depending on if your form block customizations are in the same template as the form or a separate template.

Referencing Blocks from inside the same Template as the Form

Import the blocks by adding a `use` tag in the template where you're rendering the form:

```
Listing 56-18 1 {% use 'form_div_layout.html.twig' with integer_widget as base_integer_widget %}
```

Now, when the blocks from *form_div_layout.html.twig*⁴ are imported, the `integer_widget` block is called `base_integer_widget`. This means that when you redefine the `integer_widget` block, you can reference the default markup via `base_integer_widget`:

```
Listing 56-19 1 {% block integer_widget %}
2     <div class="integer_widget">
3         {{ block('base_integer_widget') }}
4     </div>
5 {% endblock %}
```

Referencing base Blocks from an external Template

If your form customizations live inside an external template, you can reference the base block by using the `parent()` Twig function:

```
Listing 56-20 1 {%# src/Acme/DemoBundle/Resources/views/Form/fields.html.twig #}
2 {% extends 'form_div_layout.html.twig' %}
3
4 {% block integer_widget %}
5     <div class="integer_widget">
6         {{ parent() }}
7     </div>
8 {% endblock %}
```



It is not possible to reference the base block when using PHP as the templating engine. You have to manually copy the content from the base block to your new template file.

Making Application-wide Customizations

If you'd like a certain form customization to be global to your application, you can accomplish this by making the form customizations in an external template and then importing it inside your application configuration.

3. https://github.com/symfony/symfony/blob/master/src/Symfony/Bridge/Twig/Resources/views/Form/form_div_layout.html.twig

4. https://github.com/symfony/symfony/blob/master/src/Symfony/Bridge/Twig/Resources/views/Form/form_div_layout.html.twig

Twig

By using the following configuration, any customized form blocks inside the `AcmeDemoBundle:Form:fields.html.twig` template will be used globally when a form is rendered.

```
Listing 56-21 1 # app/config/config.yml
2 twig:
3     form:
4         resources:
5             - 'AcmeDemoBundle:Form:fields.html.twig'
6     # ...
```

By default, Twig uses a *div* layout when rendering forms. Some people, however, may prefer to render forms in a *table* layout. Use the `form_table_layout.html.twig` resource to use such a layout:

```
Listing 56-22 1 # app/config/config.yml
2 twig:
3     form:
4         resources: ['form_table_layout.html.twig']
5     # ...
```

If you only want to make the change in one template, add the following line to your template file rather than adding the template as a resource:

```
Listing 56-23 1 {% form_theme form 'form_table_layout.html.twig' %}
```

Note that the `form` variable in the above code is the form view variable that you passed to your template.

PHP

By using the following configuration, any customized form fragments inside the `src/Acme/DemoBundle/Resources/views/Form` folder will be used globally when a form is rendered.

```
Listing 56-24 1 # app/config/config.yml
2 framework:
3     templating:
4         form:
5             resources:
6                 - 'AcmeDemoBundle:Form'
7     # ...
```

By default, the PHP engine uses a *div* layout when rendering forms. Some people, however, may prefer to render forms in a *table* layout. Use the `FrameworkBundle:FormTable` resource to use such a layout:

```
Listing 56-25 1 # app/config/config.yml
2 framework:
3     templating:
4         form:
5             resources:
6                 - 'FrameworkBundle:FormTable'
```

If you only want to make the change in one template, add the following line to your template file rather than adding the template as a resource:

```
Listing 56-26 1 <?php $view['form']->setTheme($form, array('FrameworkBundle:FormTable')); ?>
```

Note that the `$form` variable in the above code is the form view variable that you passed to your template.

How to Customize an individual Field

So far, you've seen the different ways you can customize the widget output of all text field types. You can also customize individual fields. For example, suppose you have two `text` fields in a `product` form - `name` and `description` - but you only want to customize one of the fields. This can be accomplished by customizing a fragment whose name is a combination of the field's `id` attribute and which part of the field is being customized. For example, to customize the `name` field only:

```
Listing 56-27 1 {% form_theme form _self %}
                2
                3 {% block _product_name_widget %}
                4     <div class="text_widget">
                5         {{ block('form_widget_simple') }}
                6     </div>
                7 {% endblock %}
                8
                9 {{ form_widget(form.name) }}
```

Here, the `_product_name_widget` fragment defines the template to use for the field whose `id` is `product_name` (and name is `product[name]`).



The `product` portion of the field is the form name, which may be set manually or generated automatically based on your form type name (e.g. `ProductType` equates to `product`). If you're not sure what your form name is, just view the source of your generated form.

If you want to change the `product` or `name` portion of the block name `_product_name_widget` you can set the `block_name` option in your form type:

```
Listing 56-28 1 use Symfony\Component\Form\FormBuilderInterface;
                2
                3 public function buildForm(FormBuilderInterface $builder, array $options)
                4 {
                5     // ...
                6
                7     $builder->add('name', 'text', array(
                8         'block_name' => 'custom_name',
                9     ));
                10 }
```

Then the block name will be `_product_custom_name_widget`.

You can also override the markup for an entire field row using the same method:

```
Listing 56-29 1 {% form_theme form _self %}
                2
                3 {% block _product_name_row %}
                4     <div class="name_row">
                5         {{ form_label(form) }}
                6         {{ form_errors(form) }}
                7         {{ form_widget(form) }}
                8     </div>
                9 {% endblock %}
```

```
10
11 {{ form_row(form.name) }}
```

Other common Customizations

So far, this recipe has shown you several different ways to customize a single piece of how a form is rendered. The key is to customize a specific fragment that corresponds to the portion of the form you want to control (see *naming form blocks*).

In the next sections, you'll see how you can make several common form customizations. To apply these customizations, use one of the methods described in the *Form Theming* section.

Customizing Error Output



The Form component only handles *how* the validation errors are rendered, and not the actual validation error messages. The error messages themselves are determined by the validation constraints you apply to your objects. For more information, see the chapter on *validation*.

There are many different ways to customize how errors are rendered when a form is submitted with errors. The error messages for a field are rendered when you use the `form_errors` helper:

```
Listing 56-30 1 {{ form_errors(form.age) }}
```

By default, the errors are rendered inside an unordered list:

```
Listing 56-31 1 <ul>
2             <li>This field is required</li>
3             </ul>
```

To override how errors are rendered for *all* fields, simply copy, paste and customize the `form_errors` fragment.

```
Listing 56-32 1 {# form_errors.html.twig #}
2 {% block form_errors %}
3     {% spaceless %}
4         {% if errors|length > 0 %}
5             <ul>
6                 {% for error in errors %}
7                     <li>{{ error.message }}</li>
8                 {% endfor %}
9             </ul>
10            {% endif %}
11        {% endspaceless %}
12    {% endblock form_errors %}
```



See *Form Theming* for how to apply this customization.

You can also customize the error output for just one specific field type. To customize *only* the markup used for these errors, follow the same directions as above but put the contents in a relative `_errors` block (or file in case of PHP templates). For example: `text_errors` (or `text_errors.html.php`).



See *Form Fragment Naming* to find out which specific block or file you have to customize.

Certain errors that are more global to your form (i.e. not specific to just one field) are rendered separately, usually at the top of your form:

Listing 56-33 1 `{{ form_errors(form) }}`

To customize *only* the markup used for these errors, follow the same directions as above, but now check if the `compound` variable is set to `true`. If it is `true`, it means that what's being currently rendered is a collection of fields (e.g. a whole form), and not just an individual field.

Listing 56-34

```
1  {%# form_errors.html.twig %}
2  {% block form_errors %}
3      {% spaceless %}
4      {% if errors|length > 0 %}
5          {% if compound %}
6              <ul>
7                  {% for error in errors %}
8                      <li>{{ error.message }}</li>
9                  {% endfor %}
10             </ul>
11         {% else %}
12             {%# ... display the errors for a single field %}
13         {% endif %}
14     {% endif %}
15     {% endspaceless %}
16 {% endblock form_errors %}
```

Customizing the "Form Row"

When you can manage it, the easiest way to render a form field is via the `form_row` function, which renders the label, errors and HTML widget of a field. To customize the markup used for rendering *all* form field rows, override the `form_row` fragment. For example, suppose you want to add a class to the `div` element around each row:

Listing 56-35

```
1  {%# form_row.html.twig %}
2  {% block form_row %}
3      <div class="form_row">
4          {{ form_label(form) }}
5          {{ form_errors(form) }}
6          {{ form_widget(form) }}
7      </div>
8  {% endblock form_row %}
```



See *Form Theming* for how to apply this customization.

Adding a "Required" Asterisk to Field Labels

If you want to denote all of your required fields with a required asterisk (*), you can do this by customizing the `form_label` fragment.

In Twig, if you're making the form customization inside the same template as your form, modify the `use` tag and add the following:

```
Listing 56-36 1 {% use 'form_div_layout.html.twig' with form_label as base_form_label %}
2
3 {% block form_label %}
4     {{ block('base_form_label') }}
5
6     {% if required %}
7         <span class="required" title="This field is required">*</span>
8     {% endif %}
9 {% endblock %}
```

In Twig, if you're making the form customization inside a separate template, use the following:

```
Listing 56-37 1 {% extends 'form_div_layout.html.twig' %}
2
3 {% block form_label %}
4     {{ parent() }}
5
6     {% if required %}
7         <span class="required" title="This field is required">*</span>
8     {% endif %}
9 {% endblock %}
```

When using PHP as a templating engine you have to copy the content from the original template:

```
Listing 56-38 1 <!-- form_label.html.php -->
2
3 <!-- original content -->
4 <?php if ($required) { $label_attr['class'] = trim((isset($label_attr['class']) ?
5 $label_attr['class'] : '').' required'); } ?>
6 <?php if (!$compound) { $label_attr['for'] = $id; } ?>
7 <?php if (!$label) { $label = $view['form']->humanize($name); } ?>
8 <label <?php foreach ($label_attr as $k => $v) { printf('%s="%s" ', $view->escape($k),
9 $view->escape($v)); } ?><?php echo $view->escape($view['translator']->trans($label,
10 array(), $translation_domain)) ?></label>
11
12 <!-- customization -->
13 <?php if ($required) : ?>
14     <span class="required" title="This field is required">*</span>
15 <?php endif ?>
```



See *Form Theming* for how to apply this customization.



Using CSS only

By default, `label` tags of required fields are rendered with a `required` CSS class. Thus, you can also add an asterisk using CSS only:

Listing 56-39

```

1  label.required:before {
2      content: "* ";
3  }
```

Adding "help" Messages

You can also customize your form widgets to have an optional "help" message.

In Twig, if you're making the form customization inside the same template as your form, modify the `use` tag and add the following:

Listing 56-40

```

1  {% use 'form_div_layout.html.twig' with form_widget_simple as base_form_widget_simple %}
2
3  {% block form_widget_simple %}
4      {{ block('base_form_widget_simple') }}
5
6      {% if help is defined %}
7          <span class="help">{{ help }}</span>
8      {% endif %}
9  {% endblock %}
```

In Twig, if you're making the form customization inside a separate template, use the following:

Listing 56-41

```

1  {% extends 'form_div_layout.html.twig' %}
2
3  {% block form_widget_simple %}
4      {{ parent() }}
5
6      {% if help is defined %}
7          <span class="help">{{ help }}</span>
8      {% endif %}
9  {% endblock %}
```

When using PHP as a templating engine you have to copy the content from the original template:

Listing 56-42

```

1  <!-- form_widget_simple.html.php -->
2
3  <!-- Original content -->
4  <input
5      type="<?php echo isset($type) ? $view->escape($type) : 'text' ?>"
6      <?php if (!empty($value)): ?>value="<?php echo $view->escape($value) ?>"<?php endif ?>
7      <?php echo $view['form']->block($form, 'widget_attributes') ?>
8  />
9
10 <!-- Customization -->
11 <?php if (isset($help)) : ?>
12     <span class="help"><?php echo $view->escape($help) ?></span>
13 <?php endif ?>
```

To render a help message below a field, pass in a `help` variable:

Listing 56-43 1 `{{ form_widget(form.title, {'help': 'foobar'}) }}`



See *Form Theming* for how to apply this customization.

Using Form Variables

Most of the functions available for rendering different parts of a form (e.g. the form widget, form label, form errors, etc.) also allow you to make certain customizations directly. Look at the following example:

Listing 56-44 1 `{# render a widget, but add a "foo" class to it #}`
2 `{{ form_widget(form.name, {'attr': {'class': 'foo'}}) }}`

The array passed as the second argument contains form "variables". For more details about this concept in Twig, see *More about Form Variables*.



Chapter 57

How to Use Data Transformers

You'll often find the need to transform the data the user entered in a form into something else for use in your program. You could easily do this manually in your controller, but what if you want to use this specific form in different places?

Say you have a one-to-one relation of Task to Issue, e.g. a Task optionally has an issue linked to it. Adding a listbox with all possible issues can eventually lead to a really long listbox in which it is impossible to find something. You might want to add a textbox instead, where the user can simply enter the issue number.

You could try to do this in your controller, but it's not the best solution. It would be better if this issue were automatically converted to an Issue object. This is where Data Transformers come into play.

Creating the Transformer

First, create an `IssueToNumberTransformer` class - this class will be responsible for converting to and from the issue number and the `Issue` object:

```
Listing 57-1 1 // src/Acme/TaskBundle/Form/DataTransformer/IssueToNumberTransformer.php
2 namespace Acme\TaskBundle\Form\DataTransformer;
3
4 use Symfony\Component\Form\DataTransformerInterface;
5 use Symfony\Component\Form\Exception\TransformationFailedException;
6 use Doctrine\Common\Persistence\ObjectManager;
7 use Acme\TaskBundle\Entity\Issue;
8
9 class IssueToNumberTransformer implements DataTransformerInterface
10 {
11     /**
12      * @var ObjectManager
13      */
14     private $om;
15
16     /**
17      * @param ObjectManager $om
18      */
19     public function __construct(ObjectManager $om)
```

```

20 {
21     $this->om = $om;
22 }
23
24 /**
25  * Transforms an object (issue) to a string (number).
26  *
27  * @param Issue|null $issue
28  * @return string
29  */
30 public function transform($issue)
31 {
32     if (null === $issue) {
33         return "";
34     }
35
36     return $issue->getNumber();
37 }
38
39 /**
40  * Transforms a string (number) to an object (issue).
41  *
42  * @param string $number
43  *
44  * @return Issue|null
45  *
46  * @throws TransformationFailedException if object (issue) is not found.
47  */
48 public function reverseTransform($number)
49 {
50     if (!$number) {
51         return null;
52     }
53
54     $issue = $this->om
55         ->getRepository('AcmeTaskBundle:Issue')
56         ->findOneBy(array('number' => $number))
57     ;
58
59     if (null === $issue) {
60         throw new TransformationFailedException(sprintf(
61             'An issue with number "%s" does not exist!',
62             $number
63         ));
64     }
65
66     return $issue;
67 }
68 }

```



If you want a new issue to be created when an unknown number is entered, you can instantiate it rather than throwing the `TransformationFailedException`.



When `null` is passed to the `transform()` method, your transformer should return an equivalent value of the type it is transforming to (e.g. an empty string, 0 for integers or 0.0 for floats).

Using the Transformer

Now that you have the transformer built, you just need to add it to your issue field in some form.

You can also use transformers without creating a new custom form type by calling `addModelTransformer` (or `addViewTransformer` - see Model and View Transformers) on any field builder:

Listing 57-2

```

1 use Symfony\Component\Form\FormBuilderInterface;
2 use Acme\TaskBundle\Form\DataTransformer\IssueToNumberTransformer;
3
4 class TaskType extends AbstractType
5 {
6     public function buildForm(FormBuilderInterface $builder, array $options)
7     {
8         // ...
9
10        // this assumes that the entity manager was passed in as an option
11        $entityManager = $options['em'];
12        $transformer = new IssueToNumberTransformer($entityManager);
13
14        // add a normal text field, but add your transformer to it
15        $builder->add(
16            $builder->create('issue', 'text')
17                ->addModelTransformer($transformer)
18        );
19    }
20
21    public function setDefaultOptions(OptionsResolverInterface $resolver)
22    {
23        $resolver
24            ->setDefaults(array(
25                'data_class' => 'Acme\TaskBundle\Entity\Task',
26            ))
27            ->setRequired(array(
28                'em',
29            ))
30            ->setAllowedTypes(array(
31                'em' => 'Doctrine\Common\Persistence\ObjectManager',
32            ));
33
34        // ...
35    }
36
37    // ...
38 }
```

This example requires that you pass in the entity manager as an option when creating your form. Later, you'll learn how you could create a custom `issue` field type to avoid needing to do this in your controller:

Listing 57-3

```

1 $taskForm = $this->createForm(new TaskType(), $task, array(
2     'em' => $this->getDoctrine()->getManager(),
3 ));
```

Cool, you're done! Your user will be able to enter an issue number into the text field and it will be transformed back into an Issue object. This means that, after a successful submission, the Form framework will pass a real Issue object to `Task::setIssue()` instead of the issue number.

If the issue isn't found, a form error will be created for that field and its error message can be controlled with the `invalid_message` field option.



Notice that adding a transformer requires using a slightly more complicated syntax when adding the field. The following is **wrong**, as the transformer would be applied to the entire form, instead of just this field:

```
Listing 57-4 1 // THIS IS WRONG - TRANSFORMER WILL BE APPLIED TO THE ENTIRE FORM
2 // see above example for correct code
3 $builder->add('issue', 'text')
4     ->addModelTransformer($transformer);
```

Model and View Transformers

In the above example, the transformer was used as a "model" transformer. In fact, there are two different types of transformers and three different types of underlying data.

../../../../images/DataTransformersTypes.png

In any form, the three different types of data are:

1. **Model data** - This is the data in the format used in your application (e.g. an **Issue** object). If you call `Form::getData` or `Form::setData`, you're dealing with the "model" data.
2. **Norm Data** - This is a normalized version of your data, and is commonly the same as your "model" data (though not in our example). It's not commonly used directly.
3. **View Data** - This is the format that's used to fill in the form fields themselves. It's also the format in which the user will submit the data. When you call `Form::submit($data)`, the `$data` is in the "view" data format.

The two different types of transformers help convert to and from each of these types of data:

Model transformers:

- `transform`: "model data" => "norm data"
- `reverseTransform`: "norm data" => "model data"

View transformers:

- `transform`: "norm data" => "view data"
- `reverseTransform`: "view data" => "norm data"

Which transformer you need depends on your situation.

To use the view transformer, call `addViewTransformer`.

So why Use the Model Transformer?

In this example, the field is a **text** field, and a text field is always expected to be a simple, scalar format in the "norm" and "view" formats. For this reason, the most appropriate transformer was the "model" transformer (which converts to/from the *norm* format - string issue number - to the *model* format - Issue object).

The difference between the transformers is subtle and you should always think about what the "norm" data for a field should really be. For example, the "norm" data for a `text` field is a string, but is a `DateTime` object for a `date` field.

Using Transformers in a custom Field Type

In the above example, you applied the transformer to a normal `text` field. This was easy, but has two downsides:

- 1) You need to always remember to apply the transformer whenever you're adding a field for issue numbers.
- 2) You need to worry about passing in the `em` option whenever you're creating a form that uses the transformer.

Because of these, you may choose to *create a custom field type*. First, create the custom field type class:

```
Listing 57-5 1 // src/Acme/TaskBundle/Form/Type/IssueSelectorType.php
2 namespace Acme\TaskBundle\Form\Type;
3
4 use Symfony\Component\Form\AbstractType;
5 use Symfony\Component\Form\FormBuilderInterface;
6 use Acme\TaskBundle\Form\DataTransformer\IssueToNumberTransformer;
7 use Doctrine\Common\Persistence\ObjectManager;
8 use Symfony\Component\OptionsResolver\OptionsResolverInterface;
9
10 class IssueSelectorType extends AbstractType
11 {
12     /**
13      * @var ObjectManager
14      */
15     private $om;
16
17     /**
18      * @param ObjectManager $om
19      */
20     public function __construct(ObjectManager $om)
21     {
22         $this->om = $om;
23     }
24
25     public function buildForm(FormBuilderInterface $builder, array $options)
26     {
27         $transformer = new IssueToNumberTransformer($this->om);
28         $builder->addModelTransformer($transformer);
29     }
30
31     public function setDefaultOptions(OptionsResolverInterface $resolver)
32     {
33         $resolver->setDefaults(array(
34             'invalid_message' => 'The selected issue does not exist',
35         ));
36     }
37
38     public function getParent()
39     {
40         return 'text';
41     }
42 }
```



```

43     public function getName()
44     {
45         return 'issue_selector';
46     }
47 }

```

Next, register your type as a service and tag it with `form.type` so that it's recognized as a custom field type:

Listing 57-6

```

1  services:
2      acme_demo.type.issue_selector:
3          class: Acme\TaskBundle\Form\Type\IssueSelectorType
4          arguments: ["@doctrine.orm.entity_manager"]
5          tags:
6              - { name: form.type, alias: issue_selector }

```

Now, whenever you need to use your special `issue_selector` field type, it's quite easy:

Listing 57-7

```

1  // src/Acme/TaskBundle/Form/Type/TaskType.php
2  namespace Acme\TaskBundle\Form\Type;
3
4  use Symfony\Component\Form\AbstractType;
5  use Symfony\Component\Form\FormBuilderInterface;
6
7  class TaskType extends AbstractType
8  {
9      public function buildForm(FormBuilderInterface $builder, array $options)
10     {
11         $builder
12             ->add('task')
13             ->add('dueDate', null, array('widget' => 'single_text'))
14             ->add('issue', 'issue_selector');
15     }
16
17     public function getName()
18     {
19         return 'task';
20     }
21 }

```



Chapter 58

How to Dynamically Modify Forms Using Form Events

Often times, a form can't be created statically. In this entry, you'll learn how to customize your form based on three common use-cases:

1. *Customizing your Form Based on the Underlying Data*

Example: you have a "Product" form and need to modify/add/remove a field

based on the data on the underlying Product being edited.

2. *How to dynamically Generate Forms Based on user Data*

Example: you create a "Friend Message" form and need to build a drop-down that contains only users that are friends with the *current* authenticated user.

3. *Dynamic Generation for Submitted Forms*

Example: on a registration form, you have a "country" field and a "state" field which should populate dynamically based on the value in the "country" field.

If you wish to learn more about the basics behind form events, you can take a look at the *Form Events* documentation.

Customizing your Form Based on the Underlying Data

Before jumping right into dynamic form generation, hold on and recall what a bare form class looks like:

```
Listing 58-1 1 // src/Acme/DemoBundle/Form/Type/ProductType.php
2 namespace Acme\DemoBundle\Form\Type;
3
4 use Symfony\Component\Form\AbstractType;
5 use Symfony\Component\Form\FormBuilderInterface;
6 use Symfony\Component\OptionsResolver\OptionsResolverInterface;
7
8 class ProductType extends AbstractType
```

```

9 {
10     public function buildForm(FormBuilderInterface $builder, array $options)
11     {
12         $builder->add('name');
13         $builder->add('price');
14     }
15
16     public function setDefaultOptions(OptionsResolverInterface $resolver)
17     {
18         $resolver->setDefaults(array(
19             'data_class' => 'Acme\DemoBundle\Entity\Product'
20         ));
21     }
22
23     public function getName()
24     {
25         return 'product';
26     }
27 }

```



If this particular section of code isn't already familiar to you, you probably need to take a step back and first review the *Forms* chapter before proceeding.

Assume for a moment that this form utilizes an imaginary "Product" class that has only two properties ("name" and "price"). The form generated from this class will look the exact same regardless if a new Product is being created or if an existing product is being edited (e.g. a product fetched from the database).

Suppose now, that you don't want the user to be able to change the **name** value once the object has been created. To do this, you can rely on Symfony's *EventDispatcher* system to analyze the data on the object and modify the form based on the Product object's data. In this entry, you'll learn how to add this level of flexibility to your forms.

Adding an Event Listener to a Form Class

So, instead of directly adding that **name** widget, the responsibility of creating that particular field is delegated to an event listener:

Listing 58-2

```

1 // src/Acme/DemoBundle/Form/Type/ProductType.php
2 namespace Acme\DemoBundle\Form\Type;
3
4 // ...
5 use Symfony\Component\Form\FormEvent;
6 use Symfony\Component\Form\FormEvents;
7
8 class ProductType extends AbstractType
9 {
10     public function buildForm(FormBuilderInterface $builder, array $options)
11     {
12         $builder->add('price');
13
14         $builder->addEventListener(FormEvents::PRE_SET_DATA, function (FormEvent $event) {
15             // ... adding the name field if needed
16         });
17     }
18 }

```

```

17     }
18
19     // ...
20 }

```

The goal is to create a `name` field *only* if the underlying `Product` object is new (e.g. hasn't been persisted to the database). Based on that, the event listener might look like the following:

Listing 58-3

```

1 // ...
2 public function buildForm(FormBuilderInterface $builder, array $options)
3 {
4     // ...
5     $builder->addEventListener(FormEvents::PRE_SET_DATA, function (FormEvent $event) {
6         $product = $event->getData();
7         $form = $event->getForm();
8
9         // check if the Product object is "new"
10        // If no data is passed to the form, the data is "null".
11        // This should be considered a new "Product"
12        if (!$product || null === $product->getId()) {
13            $form->add('name', 'text');
14        }
15    });
16 }

```



The `FormEvents::PRE_SET_DATA` line actually resolves to the string `form.pre_set_data`. *FormEvents*¹ serves an organizational purpose. It is a centralized location in which you can find all of the various form events available. You can view the full list of form events via the *FormEvents*² class.

Adding an Event Subscriber to a Form Class

For better reusability or if there is some heavy logic in your event listener, you can also move the logic for creating the `name` field to an *event subscriber*:

Listing 58-4

```

1 // src/Acme/DemoBundle/Form/Type/ProductType.php
2 namespace Acme\DemoBundle\Form\Type;
3
4 // ...
5 use Acme\DemoBundle\Form\EventListener\AddNameFieldSubscriber;
6
7 class ProductType extends AbstractType
8 {
9     public function buildForm(FormBuilderInterface $builder, array $options)
10    {
11        $builder->add('price');
12
13        $builder->addEventSubscriber(new AddNameFieldSubscriber());
14    }
15 }

```

1. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Form/FormEvents.html>

2. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Form/FormEvents.html>

```

16     // ...
17 }

```

Now the logic for creating the name field resides in its own subscriber class:

Listing 58-5

```

1  // src/Acme/DemoBundle/Form/EventListener/AddNameFieldSubscriber.php
2  namespace Acme\DemoBundle\Form\EventListener;
3
4  use Symfony\Component\Form\FormEvent;
5  use Symfony\Component\Form\FormEvents;
6  use Symfony\Component\EventDispatcher\EventSubscriberInterface;
7
8  class AddNameFieldSubscriber implements EventSubscriberInterface
9  {
10     public static function getSubscribedEvents()
11     {
12         // Tells the dispatcher that you want to listen on the form.pre_set_data
13         // event and that the preSetData method should be called.
14         return array(FormEvents::PRE_SET_DATA => 'preSetData');
15     }
16
17     public function preSetData(FormEvent $event)
18     {
19         $product = $event->getData();
20         $form = $event->getForm();
21
22         if (!$product || null === $product->getId()) {
23             $form->add('name', 'text');
24         }
25     }
26 }

```

How to dynamically Generate Forms Based on user Data

Sometimes you want a form to be generated dynamically based not only on data from the form but also on something else - like some data from the current user. Suppose you have a social website where a user can only message people marked as friends on the website. In this case, a "choice list" of whom to message should only contain users that are the current user's friends.

Creating the Form Type

Using an event listener, your form might look like this:

Listing 58-6

```

1  // src/Acme/DemoBundle/Form/Type/FriendMessageFormType.php
2  namespace Acme\DemoBundle\Form\Type;
3
4  use Symfony\Component\Form\AbstractType;
5  use Symfony\Component\Form\FormBuilderInterface;
6  use Symfony\Component\Form\FormEvents;
7  use Symfony\Component\Form\FormEvent;
8  use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\SecurityContext;
9  use Symfony\Component\OptionsResolver\OptionsResolverInterface;
10
11 class FriendMessageFormType extends AbstractType

```

```

12 {
13     public function buildForm(FormBuilderInterface $builder, array $options)
14     {
15         $builder
16             ->add('subject', 'text')
17             ->add('body', 'textarea')
18         ;
19         $builder->addEventListener(FormEvents::PRE_SET_DATA, function (FormEvent $event) {
20             // ... add a choice list of friends of the current application user
21         });
22     }
23
24     public function getName()
25     {
26         return 'acme_friend_message';
27     }
28
29     public function setDefaultOptions(OptionsResolverInterface $resolver)
30     {
31     }
32 }

```

The problem is now to get the current user and create a choice field that contains only this user's friends. Luckily it is pretty easy to inject a service inside of the form. This can be done in the constructor:

Listing 58-7

```

1 private $securityContext;
2
3 public function __construct(SecurityContext $securityContext)
4 {
5     $this->securityContext = $securityContext;
6 }

```



You might wonder, now that you have access to the User (through the security context), why not just use it directly in `buildForm` and omit the event listener? This is because doing so in the `buildForm` method would result in the whole form type being modified and not just this one form instance. This may not usually be a problem, but technically a single form type could be used on a single request to create many forms or fields.

Customizing the Form Type

Now that you have all the basics in place you can take advantage of the `SecurityContext` and fill in the listener logic:

Listing 58-8

```

1 // src/Acme/DemoBundle/FormType/FriendMessageFormType.php
2
3 use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\SecurityContext;
4 use Doctrine\ORM\EntityRepository;
5 // ...
6
7 class FriendMessageFormType extends AbstractType
8 {
9     private $securityContext;
10
11     public function __construct(SecurityContext $securityContext)

```

```

12     {
13         $this->securityContext = $securityContext;
14     }
15
16     public function buildForm(FormBuilderInterface $builder, array $options)
17     {
18         $builder
19             ->add('subject', 'text')
20             ->add('body', 'textarea')
21         ;
22
23         // grab the user, do a quick sanity check that one exists
24         $user = $this->securityContext->getToken()->getUser();
25         if (!$user) {
26             throw new \LogicException(
27                 'The FriendMessageType cannot be used without an authenticated user!'
28             );
29         }
30
31         $builder->addEventListener(
32             FormEvents::PRE_SET_DATA,
33             function (FormEvent $event) use ($user) {
34                 $form = $event->getForm();
35
36                 $formOptions = array(
37                     'class' => 'Acme\DemoBundle\Entity\User',
38                     'property' => 'fullName',
39                     'query_builder' => function (EntityRepository $er) use ($user) {
40                         // build a custom query
41                         // return $er->createQueryBuilder('u')->addOrderBy('fullName',
42                         'DESC');
43
44                         // or call a method on your repository that returns the query
45                         builder
46
47                         // the $er is an instance of your UserRepository
48                         // return $er->createOrderByFullNameQueryBuilder();
49                     },
50                 );
51
52                 // create the field, this is similar the $builder->add()
53                 // field name, field type, data, options
54                 $form->add('friend', 'entity', $formOptions);
55             }
56         );
57
58         // ...
59     }

```



The `multiple` and `expanded` form options will default to false because the type of the friend field is `entity`.

Using the Form

Our form is now ready to use and there are two possible ways to use it inside of a controller:

1. create it manually and remember to pass the security context to it;

or

2. define it as a service.

a) Creating the Form manually

This is very simple, and is probably the better approach unless you're using your new form type in many places or embedding it into other forms:

```
Listing 58-9 1 class FriendMessageController extends Controller
2 {
3     public function newAction(Request $request)
4     {
5         $securityContext = $this->container->get('security.context');
6         $form = $this->createForm(
7             new FriendMessageFormType($securityContext)
8         );
9
10        // ...
11    }
12 }
```

b) Defining the Form as a Service

To define your form as a service, just create a normal service and then tag it with *form.type*.

```
Listing 58-10 1 # app/config/config.yml
2 services:
3     acme.form.friend_message:
4         class: Acme\DemoBundle\Form\Type\FriendMessageFormType
5         arguments: ["@security.context"]
6         tags:
7             - { name: form.type, alias: acme_friend_message }
```

If you wish to create it from within a controller or any other service that has access to the form factory, you then use:

```
Listing 58-11 1 use Symfony\Component\DependencyInjection\ContainerAware;
2
3 class FriendMessageController extends ContainerAware
4 {
5     public function newAction(Request $request)
6     {
7         $form = $this->get('form.factory')->create('acme_friend_message');
8
9         // ...
10    }
11 }
```

If you extend the `Symfony\Bundle\FrameworkBundle\Controller\Controller` class, you can simply call:

```
Listing 58-12 1 $form = $this->createForm('acme_friend_message');
```

You can also easily embed the form type into another form:

Listing 58-13


```

1 // inside some other "form type" class
2 public function buildForm(FormBuilderInterface $builder, array $options)
3 {
4     $builder->add('message', 'acme_friend_message');
5 }

```

Dynamic Generation for Submitted Forms

Another case that can appear is that you want to customize the form specific to the data that was submitted by the user. For example, imagine you have a registration form for sports gatherings. Some events will allow you to specify your preferred position on the field. This would be a **choice** field for example. However the possible choices will depend on each sport. Football will have attack, defense, goalkeeper etc... Baseball will have a pitcher but will not have a goalkeeper. You will need the correct options in order for validation to pass.

The meetup is passed as an entity field to the form. So we can access each sport like this:

Listing 58-14

```

1 // src/Acme/DemoBundle/Form/Type/SportMeetupType.php
2 namespace Acme\DemoBundle\Form\Type;
3
4 use Symfony\Component\Form\AbstractType;
5 use Symfony\Component\Form\FormBuilderInterface;
6 use Symfony\Component\Form\FormEvent;
7 use Symfony\Component\Form\FormEvents;
8 // ...
9
10 class SportMeetupType extends AbstractType
11 {
12     public function buildForm(FormBuilderInterface $builder, array $options)
13     {
14         $builder
15             ->add('sport', 'entity', array(
16                 'class'      => 'AcmeDemoBundle:Sport',
17                 'empty_value' => '',
18             ))
19         ;
20
21         $builder->addEventListener(
22             FormEvents::PRE_SET_DATA,
23             function (FormEvent $event) {
24                 $form = $event->getForm();
25
26                 // this would be your entity, i.e. SportMeetup
27                 $data = $event->getData();
28
29                 $sport = $data->getSport();
30                 $positions = null === $sport ? array() : $sport->getAvailablePositions();
31
32                 $form->add('position', 'entity', array(
33                     'class'      => 'AcmeDemoBundle:Position',
34                     'empty_value' => '',
35                     'choices'    => $positions,
36                 ));
37             }
38         );
39     }

```

```

40
41     // ...
42 }

```

When you're building this form to display to the user for the first time, then this example works perfectly. However, things get more difficult when you handle the form submission. This is because the `PRE_SET_DATA` event tells us the data that you're starting with (e.g. an empty `SportMeetup` object), *not* the submitted data.

On a form, we can usually listen to the following events:

- `PRE_SET_DATA`
- `POST_SET_DATA`
- `PRE_SUBMIT`
- `SUBMIT`
- `POST_SUBMIT`



New in version 2.3: The events `PRE_SUBMIT`, `SUBMIT` and `POST_SUBMIT` were introduced in Symfony 2.3. Before, they were named `PRE_BIND`, `BIND` and `POST_BIND`.

The key is to add a `POST_SUBMIT` listener to the field that your new field depends on. If you add a `POST_SUBMIT` listener to a form child (e.g. `sport`), and add new children to the parent form, the Form component will detect the new field automatically and map it to the submitted client data.

The type would now look like:

```

Listing 58-15 1 // src/Acme/DemoBundle/Form/Type/SportMeetupType.php
2 namespace Acme\DemoBundle\Form\Type;
3
4 // ...
5 use Symfony\Component\Form\FormInterface;
6 use Acme\DemoBundle\Entity\Sport;
7
8 class SportMeetupType extends AbstractType
9 {
10     public function buildForm(FormBuilderInterface $builder, array $options)
11     {
12         $builder
13             ->add('sport', 'entity', array(
14                 'class' => 'AcmeDemoBundle:Sport',
15                 'empty_value' => '',
16             ));
17     };
18
19     $formModifier = function (FormInterface $form, Sport $sport = null) {
20         $positions = null === $sport ? array() : $sport->getAvailablePositions();
21
22         $form->add('position', 'entity', array(
23             'class' => 'AcmeDemoBundle:Position',
24             'empty_value' => '',
25             'choices' => $positions,
26         ));
27     };
28
29     $builder->addEventListener(

```

```

30         FormEvents::PRE_SET_DATA,
31         function (FormEvent $event) use ($formModifier) {
32             // this would be your entity, i.e. SportMeetup
33             $data = $event->getData();
34
35             $formModifier($event->getForm(), $data->getSport());
36         }
37     );
38
39     $builder->get('sport')->addEventListener(
40         FormEvents::POST_SUBMIT,
41         function (FormEvent $event) use ($formModifier) {
42             // It's important here to fetch $event->getForm()->getData(), as
43             // $event->getData() will get you the client data (that is, the ID)
44             $sport = $event->getForm()->getData();
45
46             // since we've added the listener to the child, we'll have to pass on
47             // the parent to the callback functions!
48             $formModifier($event->getForm()->getParent(), $sport);
49         }
50     );
51 }
52
53 // ...
54 }

```

You can see that you need to listen on these two events and have different callbacks only because in two different scenarios, the data that you can use is available in different events. Other than that, the listeners always perform exactly the same things on a given form.

One piece that is still missing is the client-side updating of your form after the sport is selected. This should be handled by making an AJAX call back to your application. Assume that you have a sport meetup creation controller:

Listing 58-16

```

1 // src/Acme/DemoBundle/Controller/MeetupController.php
2 namespace Acme\DemoBundle\Controller;
3
4 use Symfony\Bundle\FrameworkBundle\Controller\Controller;
5 use Symfony\Component\HttpFoundation\Request;
6 use Acme\DemoBundle\Entity\SportMeetup;
7 use Acme\DemoBundle\Form\Type\SportMeetupType;
8 // ...
9
10 class MeetupController extends Controller
11 {
12     public function createAction(Request $request)
13     {
14         $meetup = new SportMeetup();
15         $form = $this->createForm(new SportMeetupType(), $meetup);
16         $form->handleRequest($request);
17         if ($form->isValid()) {
18             // ... save the meetup, redirect etc.
19         }
20
21         return $this->render(
22             'AcmeDemoBundle:Meetup:create.html.twig',
23             array('form' => $form->createView())
24         );

```

```

25     }
26
27     // ...
28 }

```

The associated template uses some JavaScript to update the **position** form field according to the current selection in the **sport** field:

Listing 58-17

```

1  {# src/Acme/DemoBundle/Resources/views/Meetup/create.html.twig #}
2  {{ form_start(form) }}
3      {{ form_row(form.sport) }} {# <select id="meetup_sport" ... #}
4      {{ form_row(form.position) }} {# <select id="meetup_position" ... #}
5      {# ... #}
6  {{ form_end(form) }}
7
8  <script>
9      var $sport = $('#meetup_sport');
10     // When sport gets selected ...
11     $sport.change(function() {
12         // ... retrieve the corresponding form.
13         var $form = $(this).closest('form');
14         // Simulate form data, but only include the selected sport value.
15         var data = {};
16         data[$sport.attr('name')] = $sport.val();
17         // Submit data via AJAX to the form's action path.
18         $.ajax({
19             url : $form.attr('action'),
20             type: $form.attr('method'),
21             data : data,
22             success: function(html) {
23                 // Replace current position field ...
24                 $('#meetup_position').replaceWith(
25                     // ... with the returned one from the AJAX response.
26                     $(html).find('#meetup_position')
27                 );
28                 // Position field now displays the appropriate positions.
29             }
30         });
31     });
32 </script>

```

The major benefit of submitting the whole form to just extract the updated **position** field is that no additional server-side code is needed; all the code from above to generate the submitted form can be reused.

Suppressing Form Validation

To suppress form validation you can use the `POST_SUBMIT` event and prevent the *ValidationListener*³ from being called.

The reason for needing to do this is that even if you set `group_validation` to `false` there are still some integrity checks executed. For example an uploaded file will still be checked to see if it is too large and the form will still check to see if non-existing fields were submitted. To disable all of this, use a listener:

Listing 58-18

3. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Form/Extension/Validator/EventListener/ValidationListener.html>

```

1 use Symfony\Component\Form\FormBuilderInterface;
2 use Symfony\Component\Form\FormEvents;
3
4 public function buildForm(FormBuilderInterface $builder, array $options)
5 {
6     $builder->addEventListener(FormEvents::POST_SUBMIT, function ($event) {
7         $event->stopPropagation();
8     }, 900); // Always set a higher priority than ValidationListener
9
10    // ...
11 }

```



By doing this, you may accidentally disable something more than just form validation, since the POST_SUBMIT event may have other listeners.



Chapter 59

How to Embed a Collection of Forms

In this entry, you'll learn how to create a form that embeds a collection of many other forms. This could be useful, for example, if you had a **Task** class and you wanted to edit/create/remove many **Tag** objects related to that Task, right inside the same form.



In this entry, it's loosely assumed that you're using Doctrine as your database store. But if you're not using Doctrine (e.g. Propel or just a database connection), it's all very similar. There are only a few parts of this tutorial that really care about "persistence".

If you *are* using Doctrine, you'll need to add the Doctrine metadata, including the **ManyToMany** association mapping definition on the Task's **tags** property.

First, suppose that each **Task** belongs to multiple **Tag** objects. Start by creating a simple **Task** class:

```
Listing 59-1 1 // src/Acme/TaskBundle/Entity/Task.php
2 namespace Acme\TaskBundle\Entity;
3
4 use Doctrine\Common\Collections\ArrayCollection;
5
6 class Task
7 {
8     protected $description;
9
10    protected $tags;
11
12    public function __construct()
13    {
14        $this->tags = new ArrayCollection();
15    }
16
17    public function getDescription()
18    {
19        return $this->description;
20    }
21
22    public function setDescription($description)
```

```

23     {
24         $this->description = $description;
25     }
26
27     public function getTags()
28     {
29         return $this->tags;
30     }
31 }

```



The `ArrayCollection` is specific to Doctrine and is basically the same as using an `array` (but it must be an `ArrayCollection` if you're using Doctrine).

Now, create a `Tag` class. As you saw above, a `Task` can have many `Tag` objects:

Listing 59-2

```

1 // src/Acme/TaskBundle/Entity/Tag.php
2 namespace Acme\TaskBundle\Entity;
3
4 class Tag
5 {
6     public $name;
7 }

```



The `name` property is public here, but it can just as easily be protected or private (but then it would need `getName` and `setName` methods).

Then, create a form class so that a `Tag` object can be modified by the user:

Listing 59-3

```

1 // src/Acme/TaskBundle/Form/Type/TagType.php
2 namespace Acme\TaskBundle\Form\Type;
3
4 use Symfony\Component\Form\AbstractType;
5 use Symfony\Component\Form\FormBuilderInterface;
6 use Symfony\Component\OptionsResolver\OptionsResolverInterface;
7
8 class TagType extends AbstractType
9 {
10     public function buildForm(FormBuilderInterface $builder, array $options)
11     {
12         $builder->add('name');
13     }
14
15     public function setDefaultOptions(OptionsResolverInterface $resolver)
16     {
17         $resolver->setDefaults(array(
18             'data_class' => 'Acme\TaskBundle\Entity\Tag',
19         ));
20     }
21
22     public function getName()
23     {
24         return 'tag';
25     }
26 }

```

```

25     }
26 }

```

With this, you have enough to render a tag form by itself. But since the end goal is to allow the tags of a `Task` to be modified right inside the task form itself, create a form for the `Task` class.

Notice that you embed a collection of `TagType` forms using the `collection` field type:

Listing 59-4

```

1  // src/Acme/TaskBundle/Form/Type/TaskType.php
2  namespace Acme\TaskBundle\Form\Type;
3
4  use Symfony\Component\Form\AbstractType;
5  use Symfony\Component\Form\FormBuilderInterface;
6  use Symfony\Component\OptionsResolver\OptionsResolverInterface;
7
8  class TaskType extends AbstractType
9  {
10     public function buildForm(FormBuilderInterface $builder, array $options)
11     {
12         $builder->add('description');
13
14         $builder->add('tags', 'collection', array('type' => new TagType()));
15     }
16
17     public function setDefaultOptions(OptionsResolverInterface $resolver)
18     {
19         $resolver->setDefaults(array(
20             'data_class' => 'Acme\TaskBundle\Entity\Task',
21         ));
22     }
23
24     public function getName()
25     {
26         return 'task';
27     }
28 }

```

In your controller, you'll now initialize a new instance of `TaskType`:

Listing 59-5

```

1  // src/Acme/TaskBundle/Controller/TaskController.php
2  namespace Acme\TaskBundle\Controller;
3
4  use Acme\TaskBundle\Entity\Task;
5  use Acme\TaskBundle\Entity\Tag;
6  use Acme\TaskBundle\Form\Type\TaskType;
7  use Symfony\Component\HttpFoundation\Request;
8  use Symfony\Bundle\FrameworkBundle\Controller\Controller;
9
10 class TaskController extends Controller
11 {
12     public function newAction(Request $request)
13     {
14         $task = new Task();
15
16         // dummy code - this is here just so that the Task has some tags
17         // otherwise, this isn't an interesting example
18         $tag1 = new Tag();
19         $tag1->name = 'tag1';

```



```

20     $task->getTags()->add($tag1);
21     $tag2 = new Tag();
22     $tag2->name = 'tag2';
23     $task->getTags()->add($tag2);
24     // end dummy code
25
26     $form = $this->createForm(new TaskType(), $task);
27
28     $form->handleRequest($request);
29
30     if ($form->isValid()) {
31         // ... maybe do some form processing, like saving the Task and Tag objects
32     }
33
34     return $this->render('AcmeTaskBundle:Task:new.html.twig', array(
35         'form' => $form->createView(),
36     ));
37 }
38 }

```

The corresponding template is now able to render both the **description** field for the task form as well as all the **TagType** forms for any tags that are already related to this **Task**. In the above controller, I added some dummy code so that you can see this in action (since a **Task** has zero tags when first created).

Listing 59-6

```

1  {# src/Acme/TaskBundle/Resources/views/Task/new.html.twig #}
2
3  {# ... #}
4
5  {{ form_start(form) }}
6      {# render the task's only field: description #}
7      {{ form_row(form.description) }}
8
9      <h3>Tags</h3>
10     <ul class="tags">
11         {# iterate over each existing tag and render its only field: name #}
12         {% for tag in form.tags %}
13             <li>{{ form_row(tag.name) }}</li>
14         {% endfor %}
15     </ul>
16 {{ form_end(form) }}
17
18 {# ... #}

```

When the user submits the form, the submitted data for the **tags** field are used to construct an **ArrayCollection** of **Tag** objects, which is then set on the **tag** field of the **Task** instance.

The **tags** collection is accessible naturally via **\$task->getTags()** and can be persisted to the database or used however you need.

So far, this works great, but this doesn't allow you to dynamically add new tags or delete existing tags. So, while editing existing tags will work great, your user can't actually add any new tags yet.



In this entry, you embed only one collection, but you are not limited to this. You can also embed nested collection as many level down as you like. But if you use Xdebug in your development setup, you may receive a `Maximum function nesting level of '100' reached, aborting!` error. This is due to the `xdebug.max_nesting_level` PHP setting, which defaults to 100.

This directive limits recursion to 100 calls which may not be enough for rendering the form in the template if you render the whole form at once (e.g. `form_widget(form)`). To fix this you can set this directive to a higher value (either via a `php.ini` file or via `ini_set`¹, for example in `app/autoload.php`) or render each form field by hand using `form_row`.

Allowing "new" Tags with the "Prototype"

Allowing the user to dynamically add new tags means that you'll need to use some JavaScript. Previously you added two tags to your form in the controller. Now let the user add as many tag forms as they need directly in the browser. This will be done through a bit of JavaScript.

The first thing you need to do is to let the form collection know that it will receive an unknown number of tags. So far you've added two tags and the form type expects to receive exactly two, otherwise an error will be thrown: `This form should not contain extra fields`. To make this flexible, add the `allow_add` option to your collection field:

Listing 59-7

```
1 // src/Acme/TaskBundle/Form/Type/TaskType.php
2
3 // ...
4 use Symfony\Component\Form\FormBuilderInterface;
5
6 public function buildForm(FormBuilderInterface $builder, array $options)
7 {
8     $builder->add('description');
9
10    $builder->add('tags', 'collection', array(
11        'type'          => new TagType(),
12        'allow_add'     => true,
13    ));
14 }
```

In addition to telling the field to accept any number of submitted objects, the `allow_add` also makes a `"prototype"` variable available to you. This `"prototype"` is a little `"template"` that contains all the HTML to be able to render any new `"tag"` forms. To render it, make the following change to your template:

Listing 59-8

```
1 <ul class="tags" data-prototype="{ { form_widget(form.tags.vars.prototype)|e }}">
2     ...
3 </ul>
```



If you render your whole `"tags"` sub-form at once (e.g. `form_row(form.tags)`), then the `prototype` is automatically available on the outer `div` as the `data-prototype` attribute, similar to what you see above.

1. <http://php.net/manual/en/function.ini-set.php>



The `form.tags.vars.prototype` is a form element that looks and feels just like the individual `form_widget(tag)` elements inside your `for` loop. This means that you can call `form_widget`, `form_row` or `form_label` on it. You could even choose to render only one of its fields (e.g. the `name` field):

Listing 59-9 1 `{{ form_widget(form.tags.vars.prototype.name)|e }}`

On the rendered page, the result will look something like this:

Listing 59-10 1 `<ul class="tags" data-prototype="<div><label class="required">&__name__</label><div id="task_tags__name__"><div><label for="task_tags__name__" class="required">Name</label><input type="text" id="task_tags__name__" name="task[tags][__name__][name]" required="required" maxlength="255" /></div></div></div></div></code>`

The goal of this section will be to use JavaScript to read this attribute and dynamically add new tag forms when the user clicks a "Add a tag" link. To make things simple, this example uses jQuery and assumes you have it included somewhere on your page.

Add a `script` tag somewhere on your page so you can start writing some JavaScript.

First, add a link to the bottom of the "tags" list via JavaScript. Second, bind to the "click" event of that link so you can add a new tag form (`addTagForm` will be show next):

Listing 59-11 1 `var $collectionHolder;`
 2
 3 `// setup an "add a tag" link`
 4 `var $addTagLink = $('Add a tag');`
 5 `var $newLinkLi = $('').append($addTagLink);`
 6
 7 `jQuery(document).ready(function() {`
 8 `// Get the ul that holds the collection of tags`
 9 `$collectionHolder = $('ul.tags');`
 10
 11 `// add the "add a tag" anchor and li to the tags ul`
 12 `$collectionHolder.append($newLinkLi);`
 13
 14 `// count the current form inputs we have (e.g. 2), use that as the new`
 15 `// index when inserting a new item (e.g. 2)`
 16 `$collectionHolder.data('index', $collectionHolder.find(':input').length);`
 17
 18 `$addTagLink.on('click', function(e) {`
 19 `// prevent the link from creating a "#" on the URL`
 20 `e.preventDefault();`
 21
 22 `// add a new tag form (see next code block)`
 23 `addTagForm($collectionHolder, $newLinkLi);`
 24 `});`
 25 `});`

The `addTagForm` function's job will be to use the `data-prototype` attribute to dynamically add a new form when this link is clicked. The `data-prototype` HTML contains the tag text input element with a name of `task[tags][__name__][name]` and id of `task_tags__name__name`. The `__name__` is a little "placeholder", which you'll replace with a unique, incrementing number (e.g. `task[tags][3][name]`).

The actual code needed to make this all work can vary quite a bit, but here's one example:

```
Listing 59-12 1 function addTagForm($collectionHolder, $newLinkLi) {
2     // Get the data-prototype explained earlier
3     var prototype = $collectionHolder.data('prototype');
4
5     // get the new index
6     var index = $collectionHolder.data('index');
7
8     // Replace '__name__' in the prototype's HTML to
9     // instead be a number based on how many items we have
10    var newForm = prototype.replace(/__name__/g, index);
11
12    // increase the index with one for the next item
13    $collectionHolder.data('index', index + 1);
14
15    // Display the form in the page in an li, before the "Add a tag" link li
16    var $newFormLi = $('<li></li>').append(newForm);
17    $newLinkLi.before($newFormLi);
18 }
```



It is better to separate your JavaScript in real JavaScript files than to write it inside the HTML as is done here.

Now, each time a user clicks the **Add a tag** link, a new sub form will appear on the page. When the form is submitted, any new tag forms will be converted into new **Tag** objects and added to the **tags** property of the **Task** object.

You can find a working example in this [JSFiddle](#)².

To make handling these new tags easier, add an "adder" and a "remover" method for the tags in the **Task** class:

```
Listing 59-13 1 // src/Acme/TaskBundle/Entity/Task.php
2 namespace Acme\TaskBundle\Entity;
3
4 // ...
5 class Task
6 {
7     // ...
8
9     public function addTag(Tag $tag)
10    {
11        $this->tags->add($tag);
12    }
13
14    public function removeTag(Tag $tag)
15    {
16        // ...
17    }
18 }
```

Next, add a **by_reference** option to the **tags** field and set it to **false**:

2. <http://jsfiddle.net/847Kf/4/>

Listing 59-14

```

1  // src/Acme/TaskBundle/Form/Type/TaskType.php
2
3  // ...
4  public function buildForm(FormBuilderInterface $builder, array $options)
5  {
6      // ...
7
8      $builder->add('tags', 'collection', array(
9          // ...
10         'by_reference' => false,
11     ));
12 }

```

With these two changes, when the form is submitted, each new **Tag** object is added to the **Task** class by calling the **addTag** method. Before this change, they were added internally by the form by calling **\$task->getTags()->add(\$tag)**. That was just fine, but forcing the use of the "adder" method makes handling these new **Tag** objects easier (especially if you're using Doctrine, which we talk about next!).



If no **addTag** **and** **removeTag** method is found, the form will still use **setTag** even if **by_reference** is **false**. You'll learn more about the **removeTag** method later in this article.



Doctrine: Cascading Relations and saving the "Inverse" side

To save the new tags with Doctrine, you need to consider a couple more things. First, unless you iterate over all of the new `Tag` objects and call `$em->persist($tag)` on each, you'll receive an error from Doctrine:

A new entity was found through the relationship `Acme\TaskBundle\Entity\Task#tags` that was not configured to cascade persist operations for entity...

To fix this, you may choose to "cascade" the persist operation automatically from the `Task` object to any related tags. To do this, add the `cascade` option to your `ManyToOne` metadata:

```
Listing 59-15 1 // src/Acme/TaskBundle/Entity/Task.php
2
3 // ...
4
5 /**
6  * @ORM\ManyToOne(targetEntity="Tag", cascade={"persist"})
7  */
8 protected $tags;
```

A second potential issue deals with the *Owning Side and Inverse Side*³ of Doctrine relationships. In this example, if the "owning" side of the relationship is "Task", then persistence will work fine as the tags are properly added to the Task. However, if the owning side is on "Tag", then you'll need to do a little bit more work to ensure that the correct side of the relationship is modified.

The trick is to make sure that the single "Task" is set on each "Tag". One easy way to do this is to add some extra logic to `addTag()`, which is called by the form type since `by_reference` is set to `false`:

```
Listing 59-16 1 // src/Acme/TaskBundle/Entity/Task.php
2
3 // ...
4 public function addTag(Tag $tag)
5 {
6     $tag->addTask($this);
7
8     $this->tags->add($tag);
9 }
```

Inside `Tag`, just make sure you have an `addTask` method:

```
Listing 59-17 1 // src/Acme/TaskBundle/Entity/Tag.php
2
3 // ...
4 public function addTask(Task $task)
5 {
6     if (!$this->tasks->contains($task)) {
7         $this->tasks->add($task);
8     }
9 }
```

If you have a one-to-many relationship, then the workaround is similar, except that you can simply call `setTask` from inside `addTag`.

3. <http://docs.doctrine-project.org/en/latest/reference/unitofwork-associations.html>

Allowing Tags to be Removed

The next step is to allow the deletion of a particular item in the collection. The solution is similar to allowing tags to be added.

Start by adding the `allow_delete` option in the form Type:

```
Listing 59-18 1 // src/Acme/TaskBundle/Form/Type/TaskType.php
2
3 // ...
4 public function buildForm(FormBuilderInterface $builder, array $options)
5 {
6     // ...
7
8     $builder->add('tags', 'collection', array(
9         // ...
10        'allow_delete' => true,
11    ));
12 }
```

Now, you need to put some code into the `removeTag` method of `Task`:

```
Listing 59-19 1 // src/Acme/TaskBundle/Entity/Task.php
2
3 // ...
4 class Task
5 {
6     // ...
7
8     public function removeTag(Tag $tag)
9     {
10        $this->tags->removeElement($tag);
11    }
12 }
```

Template Modifications

The `allow_delete` option has one consequence: if an item of a collection isn't sent on submission, the related data is removed from the collection on the server. The solution is thus to remove the form element from the DOM.

First, add a "delete this tag" link to each tag form:

```
Listing 59-20 1 jQuery(document).ready(function() {
2     // Get the ul that holds the collection of tags
3     $collectionHolder = $('ul.tags');
4
5     // add a delete link to all of the existing tag form li elements
6     $collectionHolder.find('li').each(function() {
7         addTagFormDeleteLink($(this));
8     });
9
10    // ... the rest of the block from above
11 });
12
13 function addTagForm() {
14     // ...
15 }
```

```

15
16     // add a delete link to the new form
17     addTagFormDeleteLink($newFormLi);
18 }

```

The `addTagFormDeleteLink` function will look something like this:

Listing 59-21

```

1  function addTagFormDeleteLink($tagFormLi) {
2      var $removeFormA = $('<a href="#">delete this tag</a>');
3      $tagFormLi.append($removeFormA);
4
5      $removeFormA.on('click', function(e) {
6          // prevent the link from creating a "#" on the URL
7          e.preventDefault();
8
9          // remove the li for the tag form
10         $tagFormLi.remove();
11     });
12 }

```

When a tag form is removed from the DOM and submitted, the removed `Tag` object will not be included in the collection passed to `setTags`. Depending on your persistence layer, this may or may not be enough to actually remove the relationship between the removed `Tag` and `Task` object.



Doctrine: Ensuring the database persistence

When removing objects in this way, you may need to do a little bit more work to ensure that the relationship between the `Task` and the removed `Tag` is properly removed.

In Doctrine, you have two sides of the relationship: the owning side and the inverse side. Normally in this case you'll have a many-to-many relationship and the deleted tags will disappear and persist correctly (adding new tags also works effortlessly).

But if you have a one-to-many relationship or a many-to-many relationship with a `mappedBy` on the `Task` entity (meaning `Task` is the "inverse" side), you'll need to do more work for the removed tags to persist correctly.

In this case, you can modify the controller to remove the relationship on the removed tag. This assumes that you have some `editAction` which is handling the "update" of your `Task`:

```
Listing 59-22 1 // src/Acme/TaskBundle/Controller/TaskController.php
2
3 use Doctrine\Common\Collections\ArrayCollection;
4
5 // ...
6 public function editAction($id, Request $request)
7 {
8     $em = $this->getDoctrine()->getManager();
9     $task = $em->getRepository('AcmeTaskBundle:Task')->find($id);
10
11     if (!$task) {
12         throw $this->createNotFoundException('No task found for id '.$id);
13     }
14
15     $originalTags = new ArrayCollection();
16
17     // Create an ArrayCollection of the current Tag objects in the database
18     foreach ($task->getTags() as $tag) {
19         $originalTags->add($tag);
20     }
21
22     $editForm = $this->createForm(new TaskType(), $task);
23
24     $editForm->handleRequest($request);
25
26     if ($editForm->isValid()) {
27
28         // remove the relationship between the tag and the Task
29         foreach ($originalTags as $tag) {
30             if (false === $task->getTags()->contains($tag)) {
31                 // remove the Task from the Tag
32                 $tag->getTasks()->removeElement($task);
33
34                 // if it was a many-to-one relationship, remove the relationship
35                 like this // $tag->setTask(null);
36
37                 $em->persist($tag);
38
39                 // if you wanted to delete the Tag entirely, you can also do that
40                 // $em->remove($tag);
41             }
42         }
43
44         $em->persist($task);
45     }
```

```

46         $em->flush();
47
48         // redirect back to some edit page
49         return $this->redirect($this->generateUrl('task_edit', array('id' => $id)));
50     }
51
52     // render some form template
53 }

```

As you can see, adding and removing the elements correctly can be tricky. Unless you have a many-to-many relationship where Task is the "owning" side, you'll need to do extra work to make sure that the relationship is properly updated (whether you're adding new tags or removing existing tags) on each Tag object itself.



Chapter 60

How to Create a Custom Form Field Type

Symfony comes with a bunch of core field types available for building forms. However there are situations where you may want to create a custom form field type for a specific purpose. This recipe assumes you need a field definition that holds a person's gender, based on the existing choice field. This section explains how the field is defined, how you can customize its layout and finally, how you can register it for use in your application.

Defining the Field Type

In order to create the custom field type, first you have to create the class representing the field. In this situation the class holding the field type will be called **GenderType** and the file will be stored in the default location for form fields, which is `<BundleName>\Form\Type`. Make sure the field extends *AbstractType*¹:

Listing 60-1

```
1 // src/Acme/DemoBundle/Form/Type/GenderType.php
2 namespace Acme\DemoBundle\Form\Type;
3
4 use Symfony\Component\Form\AbstractType;
5 use Symfony\Component\OptionsResolver\OptionsResolverInterface;
6
7 class GenderType extends AbstractType
8 {
9     public function setDefaultOptions(OptionsResolverInterface $resolver)
10     {
11         $resolver->setDefaults(array(
12             'choices' => array(
13                 'm' => 'Male',
14                 'f' => 'Female',
15             )
16         ));
17     }
18
19     public function getParent()
20     {
```

1. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Form/AbstractType.html>

```

21     return 'choice';
22 }
23
24 public function getName()
25 {
26     return 'gender';
27 }
28 }

```



The location of this file is not important - the `Form\Type` directory is just a convention.

Here, the return value of the `getParent` function indicates that you're extending the `choice` field type. This means that, by default, you inherit all of the logic and rendering of that field type. To see some of the logic, check out the *ChoiceType*² class. There are three methods that are particularly important:

- `buildForm()` - Each field type has a `buildForm` method, which is where you configure and build any field(s). Notice that this is the same method you use to setup *your* forms, and it works the same here.
- `buildView()` - This method is used to set any extra variables you'll need when rendering your field in a template. For example, in *ChoiceType*³, a `multiple` variable is set and used in the template to set (or not set) the `multiple` attribute on the `select` field. See *Creating a Template for the Field* for more details.
- `setDefaultOptions()` - This defines options for your form type that can be used in `buildForm()` and `buildView()`. There are a lot of options common to all fields (see *form Field Type*), but you can create any others that you need here.



If you're creating a field that consists of many fields, then be sure to set your "parent" type as `form` or something that extends `form`. Also, if you need to modify the "view" of any of your child types from your parent type, use the `finishView()` method.

The `getName()` method returns an identifier which should be unique in your application. This is used in various places, such as when customizing how your form type will be rendered.

The goal of this field was to extend the choice type to enable selection of a gender. This is achieved by fixing the `choices` to a list of possible genders.

Creating a Template for the Field

Each field type is rendered by a template fragment, which is determined in part by the value of your `getName()` method. For more information, see *What are Form Themes?*.

In this case, since the parent field is `choice`, you don't *need* to do any work as the custom field type will automatically be rendered like a `choice` type. But for the sake of this example, suppose that when your field is "expanded" (i.e. radio buttons or checkboxes, instead of a select field), you want to always render it in a `ul` element. In your form theme template (see above link for details), create a `gender_widget` block to handle this:

Listing 60-2

2. <https://github.com/symfony/symfony/blob/master/src/Symfony/Component/Form/Extension/Core/Type/ChoiceType.php>

3. <https://github.com/symfony/symfony/blob/master/src/Symfony/Component/Form/Extension/Core/Type/ChoiceType.php>

```

1  {# src/Acme/DemoBundle/Resources/views/Form/fields.html.twig #}
2  {% block gender_widget %}
3      {% spaceless %}
4          {% if expanded %}
5              <ul {{ block('widget_container_attributes') }}>
6                  {% for child in form %}
7                      <li>
8                          {{ form_widget(child) }}
9                          {{ form_label(child) }}
10                     </li>
11                 {% endfor %}
12             </ul>
13         {% else %}
14             {# just let the choice widget render the select tag #}
15             {{ block('choice_widget') }}
16         {% endif %}
17     {% endspaceless %}
18 {% endblock %}

```



Make sure the correct widget prefix is used. In this example the name should be `gender_widget`, according to the value returned by `getName`. Further, the main config file should point to the custom form template so that it's used when rendering all forms.

When using Twig this is:

Listing 60-3

```

1  # app/config/config.yml
2  twig:
3      form:
4          resources:
5              - 'AcmeDemoBundle:Form:fields.html.twig'

```

For the PHP templating engine, your configuration should look like this:

Listing 60-4

```

1  # app/config/config.yml
2  framework:
3      templating:
4          form:
5              resources:
6                  - 'AcmeDemoBundle:Form'

```

Using the Field Type

You can now use your custom field type immediately, simply by creating a new instance of the type in one of your forms:

Listing 60-5

```

1  // src/Acme/DemoBundle/Form/Type/AuthorType.php
2  namespace Acme\DemoBundle\Form\Type;
3
4  use Symfony\Component\Form\AbstractType;
5  use Symfony\Component\Form\FormBuilderInterface;
6
7  class AuthorType extends AbstractType
8  {

```

```

9     public function buildForm(FormBuilderInterface $builder, array $options)
10    {
11        $builder->add('gender_code', new GenderType(), array(
12            'empty_value' => 'Choose a gender',
13        ));
14    }
15 }

```

But this only works because the `GenderType()` is very simple. What if the gender codes were stored in configuration or in a database? The next section explains how more complex field types solve this problem.

Creating your Field Type as a Service

So far, this entry has assumed that you have a very simple custom field type. But if you need access to configuration, a database connection, or some other service, then you'll want to register your custom type as a service. For example, suppose that you're storing the gender parameters in configuration:

Listing 60-6

```

1 # app/config/config.yml
2 parameters:
3     genders:
4         m: Male
5         f: Female

```

To use the parameter, define your custom field type as a service, injecting the `genders` parameter value as the first argument to its to-be-created `__construct` function:

Listing 60-7

```

1 # src/Acme/DemoBundle/Resources/config/services.yml
2 services:
3     acme_demo.form.type.gender:
4         class: Acme\DemoBundle\Form\Type\GenderType
5         arguments:
6             - "%genders%"
7         tags:
8             - { name: form.type, alias: gender }

```



Make sure the services file is being imported. See *Importing Configuration with imports* for details.

Be sure that the `alias` attribute of the tag corresponds with the value returned by the `getName` method defined earlier. You'll see the importance of this in a moment when you use the custom field type. But first, add a `__construct` method to `GenderType`, which receives the gender configuration:

Listing 60-8

```

1 // src/Acme/DemoBundle/Form/Type/GenderType.php
2 namespace Acme\DemoBundle\Form\Type;
3
4 use Symfony\Component\OptionsResolver\OptionsResolverInterface;
5
6 // ...
7
8 // ...

```

```

9  class GenderType extends AbstractType
10 {
11     private $genderChoices;
12
13     public function __construct(array $genderChoices)
14     {
15         $this->genderChoices = $genderChoices;
16     }
17
18     public function setDefaultOptions(OptionsResolverInterface $resolver)
19     {
20         $resolver->setDefaults(array(
21             'choices' => $this->genderChoices,
22         ));
23     }
24
25     // ...
26 }

```

Great! The `GenderType` is now fueled by the configuration parameters and registered as a service. Additionally, because you used the `form.type` alias in its configuration, using the field is now much easier:

Listing 60-9

```

1  // src/Acme/DemoBundle/Form/Type/AuthorType.php
2  namespace Acme\DemoBundle\Form\Type;
3
4  use Symfony\Component\Form\FormBuilderInterface;
5
6  // ...
7
8  class AuthorType extends AbstractType
9  {
10     public function buildForm(FormBuilderInterface $builder, array $options)
11     {
12         $builder->add('gender_code', 'gender', array(
13             'empty_value' => 'Choose a gender',
14         ));
15     }
16 }

```

Notice that instead of instantiating a new instance, you can just refer to it by the alias used in your service configuration, `gender`. Have fun!



Chapter 61

How to Create a Form Type Extension

Custom form field types are great when you need field types with a specific purpose, such as a gender selector, or a VAT number input.

But sometimes, you don't really need to add new field types - you want to add features on top of existing types. This is where form type extensions come in.

Form type extensions have 2 main use-cases:

1. You want to add a **generic feature to several types** (such as adding a "help" text to every field type);
2. You want to add a **specific feature to a single type** (such as adding a "download" feature to the "file" field type).

In both those cases, it might be possible to achieve your goal with custom form rendering, or custom form field types. But using form type extensions can be cleaner (by limiting the amount of business logic in templates) and more flexible (you can add several type extensions to a single form type).

Form type extensions can achieve most of what custom field types can do, but instead of being field types of their own, **they plug into existing types**.

Imagine that you manage a **Media** entity, and that each media is associated to a file. Your **Media** form uses a file type, but when editing the entity, you would like to see its image automatically rendered next to the file input.

You could of course do this by customizing how this field is rendered in a template. But field type extensions allow you to do this in a nice DRY fashion.

Defining the Form Type Extension

Your first task will be to create the form type extension class (called **ImageTypeExtension** in this article). By standard, form extensions usually live in the **Form\Extension** directory of one of your bundles.

When creating a form type extension, you can either implement the *FormTypeExtensionInterface*¹ interface or extend the *AbstractTypeExtension*² class. In most cases, it's easier to extend the abstract class:

1. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Form/FormTypeExtensionInterface.html>

2. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Form/AbstractTypeExtension.html>

Listing 61-1

```

1 // src/Acme/DemoBundle/Form/Extension/ImageTypeExtension.php
2 namespace Acme\DemoBundle\Form\Extension;
3
4 use Symfony\Component\Form\AbstractTypeExtension;
5
6 class ImageTypeExtension extends AbstractTypeExtension
7 {
8     /**
9      * Returns the name of the type being extended.
10     *
11     * @return string The name of the type being extended
12     */
13     public function getExtendedType()
14     {
15         return 'file';
16     }
17 }

```

The only method you **must** implement is the `getExtendedType` function. It is used to indicate the name of the form type that will be extended by your extension.



The value you return in the `getExtendedType` method corresponds to the value returned by the `getName` method in the form type class you wish to extend.

In addition to the `getExtendedType` function, you will probably want to override one of the following methods:

- `buildForm()`
- `buildView()`
- `setDefaultOptions()`
- `finishView()`

For more information on what those methods do, you can refer to the *Creating Custom Field Types* cookbook article.

Registering your Form Type Extension as a Service

The next step is to make Symfony aware of your extension. All you need to do is to declare it as a service by using the `form.type_extension` tag:

Listing 61-2

```

1 services:
2     acme_demo_bundle.image_type_extension:
3         class: Acme\DemoBundle\Form\Extension\ImageTypeExtension
4         tags:
5             - { name: form.type_extension, alias: file }

```

The `alias` key of the tag is the type of field that this extension should be applied to. In your case, as you want to extend the `file` field type, you will use `file` as an alias.

Adding the extension Business Logic

The goal of your extension is to display nice images next to file inputs (when the underlying model contains images). For that purpose, suppose that you use an approach similar to the one described in *How to handle File Uploads with Doctrine*: you have a Media model with a file property (corresponding to the file field in the form) and a path property (corresponding to the image path in the database):

```
Listing 61-3 1 // src/Acme/DemoBundle/Entity/Media.php
2 namespace Acme\DemoBundle\Entity;
3
4 use Symfony\Component\Validator\Constraints as Assert;
5
6 class Media
7 {
8     // ...
9
10    /**
11     * @var string The path - typically stored in the database
12     */
13    private $path;
14
15    /**
16     * @var \Symfony\Component\HttpFoundation\File\UploadedFile
17     * @Assert\File(maxSize="2M")
18     */
19    public $file;
20
21    // ...
22
23    /**
24     * Get the image URL
25     *
26     * @return null|string
27     */
28    public function getWebPath()
29    {
30        // ... $webPath being the full image URL, to be used in templates
31
32        return $webPath;
33    }
34 }
```

Your form type extension class will need to do two things in order to extend the **file** form type:

1. Override the `setDefaultOptions` method in order to add an `image_path` option;
2. Override the `buildForm` and `buildView` methods in order to pass the image URL to the view.

The logic is the following: when adding a form field of type **file**, you will be able to specify a new option: **image_path**. This option will tell the file field how to get the actual image URL in order to display it in the view:

```
Listing 61-4 1 // src/Acme/DemoBundle/Form/Extension/ImageTypeExtension.php
2 namespace Acme\DemoBundle\Form\Extension;
3
4 use Symfony\Component\Form\AbstractTypeExtension;
5 use Symfony\Component\Form\FormView;
6 use Symfony\Component\Form\FormInterface;
7 use Symfony\Component\PropertyAccess\PropertyAccess;
8 use Symfony\Component\OptionsResolver\OptionsResolverInterface;
```

```

9
10 class ImageTypeExtension extends AbstractTypeExtension
11 {
12     /**
13      * Returns the name of the type being extended.
14      *
15      * @return string The name of the type being extended
16      */
17     public function getExtendedType()
18     {
19         return 'file';
20     }
21
22     /**
23      * Add the image_path option
24      *
25      * @param OptionsResolverInterface $resolver
26      */
27     public function setDefaultOptions(OptionsResolverInterface $resolver)
28     {
29         $resolver->setOptional(array('image_path'));
30     }
31
32     /**
33      * Pass the image URL to the view
34      *
35      * @param FormView $view
36      * @param FormInterface $form
37      * @param array $options
38      */
39     public function buildView(FormView $view, FormInterface $form, array $options)
40     {
41         if (array_key_exists('image_path', $options)) {
42             $parentData = $form->getParent()->getData();
43
44             if (null !== $parentData) {
45                 $accessor = PropertyAccess::createPropertyAccessor();
46                 $imageUrl = $accessor->getValue($parentData, $options['image_path']);
47             } else {
48                 $imageUrl = null;
49             }
50
51             // set an "image_url" variable that will be available when rendering this field
52             $view->vars['image_url'] = $imageUrl;
53         }
54     }
55 }
56 }

```

Override the File Widget Template Fragment

Each field type is rendered by a template fragment. Those template fragments can be overridden in order to customize form rendering. For more information, you can refer to the *What are Form Themes?* article.

In your extension class, you have added a new variable (`image_url`), but you still need to take advantage of this new variable in your templates. Specifically, you need to override the `file_widget` block:

Listing 61-5

```

1  {# src/Acme/DemoBundle/Resources/views/Form/fields.html.twig #}
2  {% extends 'form_div_layout.html.twig' %}
3
4  {% block file_widget %}
5      {% spaceless %}
6
7          {{ block('form_widget') }}
8          {% if image_url is not null %}
9              
10         {% endif %}
11
12     {% endspaceless %}
13 {% endblock %}

```



You will need to change your config file or explicitly specify how you want your form to be themed in order for Symfony to use your overridden block. See *What are Form Themes?* for more information.

Using the Form Type Extension

From now on, when adding a field of type `file` in your form, you can specify an `image_path` option that will be used to display an image next to the file field. For example:

Listing 61-6

```

1  // src/Acme/DemoBundle/Form/Type/MediaType.php
2  namespace Acme\DemoBundle\Form\Type;
3
4  use Symfony\Component\Form\AbstractType;
5  use Symfony\Component\Form\FormBuilderInterface;
6
7  class MediaType extends AbstractType
8  {
9      public function buildForm(FormBuilderInterface $builder, array $options)
10     {
11         $builder
12             ->add('name', 'text')
13             ->add('file', 'file', array('image_path' => 'webPath'));
14     }
15
16     public function getName()
17     {
18         return 'media';
19     }
20 }

```

When displaying the form, if the underlying model has already been associated with an image, you will see it displayed next to the file input.



Chapter 62

How to Reduce Code Duplication with "inherit_data"



New in version 2.3: This `inherit_data` option was introduced in Symfony 2.3. Before, it was known as `virtual`.

The `inherit_data` form field option can be very useful when you have some duplicated fields in different entities. For example, imagine you have two entities, a `Company` and a `Customer`:

Listing 62-1

```
1 // src/Acme/HelloBundle/Entity/Company.php
2 namespace Acme\HelloBundle\Entity;
3
4 class Company
5 {
6     private $name;
7     private $website;
8
9     private $address;
10    private $zipcode;
11    private $city;
12    private $country;
13 }
```

Listing 62-2

```
1 // src/Acme/HelloBundle/Entity/Customer.php
2 namespace Acme\HelloBundle\Entity;
3
4 class Customer
5 {
6     private $firstName;
7     private $lastName;
8 }
```

```

9     private $address;
10    private $zipcode;
11    private $city;
12    private $country;
13 }

```

As you can see, each entity shares a few of the same fields: address, zipcode, city, country. Start with building two forms for these entities, `CompanyType` and `CustomerType`:

Listing 62-3

```

1  // src/Acme/HelloBundle/Form/Type/CompanyType.php
2  namespace Acme\HelloBundle\Form\Type;
3
4  use Symfony\Component\Form\AbstractType;
5  use Symfony\Component\Form\FormBuilderInterface;
6
7  class CompanyType extends AbstractType
8  {
9      public function buildForm(FormBuilderInterface $builder, array $options)
10     {
11         $builder
12             ->add('name', 'text')
13             ->add('website', 'text');
14     }
15 }

```

Listing 62-4

```

1  // src/Acme/HelloBundle/Form/Type/CustomerType.php
2  namespace Acme\HelloBundle\Form\Type;
3
4  use Symfony\Component\Form\FormBuilderInterface;
5  use Symfony\Component\Form\AbstractType;
6
7  class CustomerType extends AbstractType
8  {
9      public function buildForm(FormBuilderInterface $builder, array $options)
10     {
11         $builder
12             ->add('firstName', 'text')
13             ->add('lastName', 'text');
14     }
15 }

```

Instead of including the duplicated fields address, zipcode, city and country in both of these forms, create a third form called `LocationType` for that:

Listing 62-5

```

1  // src/Acme/HelloBundle/Form/Type/LocationType.php
2  namespace Acme\HelloBundle\Form\Type;
3
4  use Symfony\Component\Form\AbstractType;
5  use Symfony\Component\Form\FormBuilderInterface;
6  use Symfony\Component\OptionsResolver\OptionsResolverInterface;
7
8  class LocationType extends AbstractType
9  {
10     public function buildForm(FormBuilderInterface $builder, array $options)
11     {
12         $builder

```

```

13         ->add('address', 'textarea')
14         ->add('zipcode', 'text')
15         ->add('city', 'text')
16         ->add('country', 'text');
17     }
18
19     public function setDefaultOptions(OptionsResolverInterface $resolver)
20     {
21         $resolver->setDefaults(array(
22             'inherit_data' => true
23         ));
24     }
25
26     public function getName()
27     {
28         return 'location';
29     }
30 }

```

The location form has an interesting option set, namely `inherit_data`. This option lets the form inherit its data from its parent form. If embedded in the company form, the fields of the location form will access the properties of the `Company` instance. If embedded in the customer form, the fields will access the properties of the `Customer` instance instead. Easy, eh?



Instead of setting the `inherit_data` option inside `LocationType`, you can also (just like with any option) pass it in the third argument of `$builder->add()`.

Finally, make this work by adding the location form to your two original forms:

Listing 62-6

```

1 // src/Acme/HelloBundle/Form/Type/CompanyType.php
2 public function buildForm(FormBuilderInterface $builder, array $options)
3 {
4     // ...
5
6     $builder->add('foo', new LocationType(), array(
7         'data_class' => 'Acme\HelloBundle\Entity\Company'
8     ));
9 }

```

Listing 62-7

```

1 // src/Acme/HelloBundle/Form/Type/CustomerType.php
2 public function buildForm(FormBuilderInterface $builder, array $options)
3 {
4     // ...
5
6     $builder->add('bar', new LocationType(), array(
7         'data_class' => 'Acme\HelloBundle\Entity\Customer'
8     ));
9 }

```

That's it! You have extracted duplicated field definitions to a separate location form that you can reuse wherever you need it.



Forms with the `inherit_data` option set cannot have `*_SET_DATA` event listeners.



Chapter 63

How to Unit Test your Forms

The Form component consists of 3 core objects: a form type (implementing *FormTypeInterface*¹), the *Form*² and the *FormView*³.

The only class that is usually manipulated by programmers is the form type class which serves as a form blueprint. It is used to generate the **Form** and the **FormView**. You could test it directly by mocking its interactions with the factory but it would be complex. It is better to pass it to **FormFactory** like it is done in a real application. It is simple to bootstrap and you can trust the Symfony components enough to use them as a testing base.

There is already a class that you can benefit from for simple **FormTypes** testing: *TypeTestCase*⁴. It is used to test the core types and you can use it to test your types too.



New in version 2.3: The **TypeTestCase** has moved to the `Symfony\Component\Form\Test` namespace in 2.3. Previously, the class was located in `Symfony\Component\Form\Tests\Extension\Core\Type`.



Depending on the way you installed your Symfony or Symfony Form component the tests may not be downloaded. Use the `--prefer-source` option with Composer if this is the case.

The Basics

The simplest **TypeTestCase** implementation looks like the following:

Listing 63-1

```
1 // src/Acme/TestBundle/Tests/Form/Type/TypeTest.php
2 namespace Acme\TestBundle\Tests\Form\Type;
```

-
1. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Form/FormTypeInterface.html>
 2. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Form/Form.html>
 3. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Form/FormView.html>
 4. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Form/Test/TypeTestCase.html>

```

3
4 use Acme\TestBundle\Form\Type\TestedType;
5 use Acme\TestBundle\Model\TestObject;
6 use Symfony\Component\Form\Test\TypeTestCase;
7
8 class TestedTypeTest extends TypeTestCase
9 {
10     public function testSubmitValidData()
11     {
12         $formData = array(
13             'test' => 'test',
14             'test2' => 'test2',
15         );
16
17         $type = new TestedType();
18         $form = $this->factory->create($type);
19
20         $object = new TestObject();
21         $object->fromArray($formData);
22
23         // submit the data to the form directly
24         $form->submit($formData);
25
26         $this->assertTrue($form->isSynchronized());
27         $this->assertEquals($object, $form->getData());
28
29         $view = $form->createView();
30         $children = $view->children;
31
32         foreach (array_keys($formData) as $key) {
33             $this->assertArrayHasKey($key, $children);
34         }
35     }
36 }

```

So, what does it test? Here comes a detailed explanation.

First you verify if the **FormType** compiles. This includes basic class inheritance, the **buildForm** function and options resolution. This should be the first test you write:

Listing 63-2

```

1 $type = new TestedType();
2 $form = $this->factory->create($type);

```

This test checks that none of your data transformers used by the form failed. The *isSynchronized()*⁵ method is only set to **false** if a data transformer throws an exception:

Listing 63-3

```

1 $form->submit($formData);
2 $this->assertTrue($form->isSynchronized());

```



Don't test the validation: it is applied by a listener that is not active in the test case and it relies on validation configuration. Instead, unit test your custom constraints directly.

5. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Form/FormInterface.html#isSynchronized\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Form/FormInterface.html#isSynchronized())

Next, verify the submission and mapping of the form. The test below checks if all the fields are correctly specified:

```
Listing 63-4 1 $this->assertEquals($object, $form->getData());
```

Finally, check the creation of the `FormView`. You should check if all widgets you want to display are available in the `children` property:

```
Listing 63-5 1 $view = $form->createView();
2 $children = $view->children;
3
4 foreach (array_keys($formData) as $key) {
5     $this->assertArrayHasKey($key, $children);
6 }
```

Adding a Type your Form Depends on

Your form may depend on other types that are defined as services. It might look like this:

```
Listing 63-6 1 // src/Acme/TestBundle/Form/Type/TestedType.php
2
3 // ... the buildForm method
4 $builder->add('acme_test_child_type');
```

To create your form correctly, you need to make the type available to the form factory in your test. The easiest way is to register it manually before creating the parent form using the `PreloadedExtension` class:

```
Listing 63-7 1 // src/Acme/TestBundle/Tests/Form/Type/TestedTypeTests.php
2 namespace Acme\TestBundle\Tests\Form\Type;
3
4 use Acme\TestBundle\Form\Type\TestedType;
5 use Acme\TestBundle\Model\TestObject;
6 use Symfony\Component\Form\Test\TypeTestCase;
7 use Symfony\Component\Form\PreloadedExtension;
8
9 class TestedTypeTest extends TypeTestCase
10 {
11     protected function getExtensions()
12     {
13         $childType = new TestChildType();
14         return array(new PreloadedExtension(array(
15             $childType->getName() => $childType,
16         ), array()));
17     }
18
19     public function testSubmitValidData()
20     {
21         $type = new TestedType();
22         $form = $this->factory->create($type);
23
24         // ... your test
25     }
26 }
```



Make sure the child type you add is well tested. Otherwise you may be getting errors that are not related to the form you are currently testing but to its children.

Adding custom Extensions

It often happens that you use some options that are added by *form extensions*. One of the cases may be the `ValidatorExtension` with its `invalid_message` option. The `TypeTestCase` loads only the core form extension so an "Invalid option" exception will be raised if you try to use it for testing a class that depends on other extensions. You need add those extensions to the factory object:

```
Listing 63-8 1 // src/Acme/TestBundle/Tests/Form/Type/TestedTypeTests.php
2 namespace Acme\TestBundle\Tests\Form\Type;
3
4 use Acme\TestBundle\Form\Type\TestedType;
5 use Acme\TestBundle\Model\TestObject;
6 use Symfony\Component\Form\Test\TypeTestCase;
7 use Symfony\Component\Form\Forms;
8 use Symfony\Component\Form\FormBuilder;
9 use Symfony\Component\Form\Extension\Validator\Type\FormTypeValidatorExtension;
10 use Symfony\Component\Validator\ConstraintViolationList;
11
12 class TestedTypeTest extends TypeTestCase
13 {
14     protected function setUp()
15     {
16         parent::setUp();
17
18         $validator =
19 $this->getMock('Symfony\Component\Validator\Validator\ValidatorInterface');
20         $validator->method('validate')->will($this->returnValue(new
21 ConstraintViolationList()));
22
23         $this->factory = Forms::createFormFactoryBuilder()
24             ->addExtensions($this->getExtensions())
25             ->addTypeExtension(
26                 new FormTypeValidatorExtension(
27                     $validator
28                 )
29             )
30             ->addTypeGuesser(
31                 $this->getMockBuilder(
32                     'Symfony\Component\Form\Extension\Validator\ValidatorTypeGuesser'
33                 )
34                 ->disableOriginalConstructor()
35                 ->getMock()
36             )
37             ->getFormFactory();
38
39         $this->dispatcher =
40 $this->getMock('Symfony\Component\EventDispatcher\EventDispatcherInterface');
41         $this->builder = new FormBuilder(null, null, $this->dispatcher, $this->factory);
42     }
43
44     // ... your tests
45 }
```

Testing against different Sets of Data

If you are not familiar yet with PHPUnit's *data providers*⁶, this might be a good opportunity to use them:

```
Listing 63-9 1 // src/Acme/TestBundle/Tests/Form/Type/TestedTypeTests.php
2 namespace Acme\TestBundle\Tests\Form\Type;
3
4 use Acme\TestBundle\Form\Type\TestedType;
5 use Acme\TestBundle\Model\TestObject;
6 use Symfony\Component\Form\Test\TypeTestCase;
7
8 class TestedTypeTest extends TypeTestCase
9 {
10
11     /**
12      * @dataProvider getValidTestData
13      */
14     public function testForm($data)
15     {
16         // ... your test
17     }
18
19     public function getValidTestData()
20     {
21         return array(
22             array(
23                 'data' => array(
24                     'test' => 'test',
25                     'test2' => 'test2',
26                 ),
27             ),
28             array(
29                 'data' => array(),
30             ),
31             array(
32                 'data' => array(
33                     'test' => null,
34                     'test2' => null,
35                 ),
36             ),
37         );
38     }
39 }
```

The code above will run your test three times with 3 different sets of data. This allows for decoupling the test fixtures from the tests and easily testing against multiple sets of data.

You can also pass another argument, such as a boolean if the form has to be synchronized with the given set of data or not etc.

6. <http://www.phpunit.de/manual/current/en/writing-tests-for-phpunit.html#writing-tests-for-phpunit.data-providers>



Chapter 64

How to Configure empty Data for a Form Class

The `empty_data` option allows you to specify an empty data set for your form class. This empty data set would be used if you submit your form, but haven't called `setData()` on your form or passed in data when you created your form. For example:

Listing 64-1

```
1 public function indexAction()  
2 {  
3     $blog = ...;  
4  
5     // $blog is passed in as the data, so the empty_data option is not needed  
6     $form = $this->createForm(new BlogType(), $blog);  
7  
8     // no data is passed in, so empty_data is used to get the "starting data"  
9     $form = $this->createForm(new BlogType());  
10 }
```

By default, `empty_data` is set to `null`. Or, if you have specified a `data_class` option for your form class, it will default to a new instance of that class. That instance will be created by calling the constructor with no arguments.

If you want to override this default behavior, there are two ways to do this.

Option 1: Instantiate a new Class

One reason you might use this option is if you want to use a constructor that takes arguments. Remember, the default `data_class` option calls that constructor with no arguments:

Listing 64-2

```
1 // src/Acme/DemoBundle/Form/Type/BlogType.php  
2  
3 // ...  
4 use Symfony\Component\Form\AbstractType;  
5 use Acme\DemoBundle\Entity\Blog;  
6 use Symfony\Component\OptionsResolver\OptionsResolverInterface;  
7
```

```

8 class BlogType extends AbstractType
9 {
10     private $someDependency;
11
12     public function __construct($someDependency)
13     {
14         $this->someDependency = $someDependency;
15     }
16     // ...
17
18     public function setDefaultOptions(OptionsResolverInterface $resolver)
19     {
20         $resolver->setDefaults(array(
21             'empty_data' => new Blog($this->someDependency),
22         ));
23     }
24 }

```

You can instantiate your class however you want. In this example, we pass some dependency into the **BlogType** when we instantiate it, then use that to instantiate the **Blog** class. The point is, you can set `empty_data` to the exact "new" object that you want to use.

Option 2: Provide a Closure

Using a closure is the preferred method, since it will only create the object if it is needed.

The closure must accept a **FormInterface** instance as the first argument:

Listing 64-3

```

1 use Symfony\Component\OptionsResolver\OptionsResolverInterface;
2 use Symfony\Component\Form\FormInterface;
3 // ...
4
5 public function setDefaultOptions(OptionsResolverInterface $resolver)
6 {
7     $resolver->setDefaults(array(
8         'empty_data' => function (FormInterface $form) {
9             return new Blog($form->get('title')->getData());
10        },
11    ));
12 }

```



Chapter 65

How to Use the submit() Function to Handle Form Submissions



New in version 2.3: The `handleRequest()`¹ method was introduced in Symfony 2.3.

With the `handleRequest()` method, it is really easy to handle form submissions:

Listing 65-1

```
1 use Symfony\Component\HttpFoundation\Request;
2 // ...
3
4 public function newAction(Request $request)
5 {
6     $form = $this->createFormBuilder()
7         // ...
8         ->getForm();
9
10    $form->handleRequest($request);
11
12    if ($form->isValid()) {
13        // perform some action...
14
15        return $this->redirect($this->generateUrl('task_success'));
16    }
17
18    return $this->render('AcmeTaskBundle:Default:new.html.twig', array(
19        'form' => $form->createView(),
20    ));
21 }
```

1. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Form/FormInterface.html#handleRequest\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Form/FormInterface.html#handleRequest())



To see more about this method, read *Handling Form Submissions*.

Calling Form::submit() manually



New in version 2.3: Before Symfony 2.3, the `submit()` method was known as `bind()`.

In some cases, you want better control over when exactly your form is submitted and what data is passed to it. Instead of using the *handleRequest()*² method, pass the submitted data directly to *submit()*³:

Listing 65-2

```
1 use Symfony\Component\HttpFoundation\Request;
2 // ...
3
4 public function newAction(Request $request)
5 {
6     $form = $this->createFormBuilder()
7         // ...
8         ->getForm();
9
10    if ($request->isMethod('POST')) {
11        $form->submit($request->request->get($form->getName()));
12
13        if ($form->isValid()) {
14            // perform some action...
15
16            return $this->redirect($this->generateUrl('task_success'));
17        }
18    }
19
20    return $this->render('AcmeTaskBundle:Default:new.html.twig', array(
21        'form' => $form->createView(),
22    ));
23 }
```



Forms consisting of nested fields expect an array in *submit()*⁴. You can also submit individual fields by calling *submit()*⁵ directly on the field:

Listing 65-3 1 `$form->get('firstName')->submit('Fabien');`

2. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Form/FormInterface.html#handleRequest\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Form/FormInterface.html#handleRequest())

3. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Form/FormInterface.html#submit\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Form/FormInterface.html#submit())

4. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Form/FormInterface.html#submit\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Form/FormInterface.html#submit())

5. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Form/FormInterface.html#submit\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Form/FormInterface.html#submit())

Passing a Request to Form::submit() (Deprecated)



New in version 2.3: Before Symfony 2.3, the `submit` method was known as `bind`.

Before Symfony 2.3, the `submit()`⁶ method accepted a *Request*⁷ object as a convenient shortcut to the previous example:

Listing 65-4

```
1 use Symfony\Component\HttpFoundation\Request;
2 // ...
3
4 public function newAction(Request $request)
5 {
6     $form = $this->createFormBuilder()
7         // ...
8         ->getForm();
9
10    if ($request->isMethod('POST')) {
11        $form->submit($request);
12
13        if ($form->isValid()) {
14            // perform some action...
15
16            return $this->redirect($this->generateUrl('task_success'));
17        }
18    }
19
20    return $this->render('AcmeTaskBundle:Default:new.html.twig', array(
21        'form' => $form->createView(),
22    ));
23 }
```

Passing the *Request*⁸ directly to `submit()`⁹ still works, but is deprecated and will be removed in Symfony 3.0. You should use the method `handleRequest()`¹⁰ instead.

6. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Form/FormInterface.html#submit\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Form/FormInterface.html#submit())

7. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpFoundation/Request.html>

8. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpFoundation/Request.html>

9. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Form/FormInterface.html#submit\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Form/FormInterface.html#submit())

10. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Form/FormInterface.html#handleRequest\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Form/FormInterface.html#handleRequest())



Chapter 66

How to Use the virtual Form Field Option

As of Symfony 2.3, the `virtual` option is renamed to `inherit_data`. You can read everything about the new option in *"How to Reduce Code Duplication with `inherit_data`"*.



Chapter 67

How to Use Monolog to Write Logs

*Monolog*¹ is a logging library for PHP 5.3 used by Symfony. It is inspired by the Python LogBook library.

Usage

To log a message simply get the **logger** service from the container in your controller:

Listing 67-1

```
1 public function indexAction()  
2 {  
3     $logger = $this->get('logger');  
4     $logger->info('I just got the logger');  
5     $logger->error('An error occurred');  
6  
7     // ...  
8 }
```

The **logger** service has different methods for different logging levels. See *LoggerInterface*² for details on which methods are available.

Handlers and Channels: Writing Logs to different Locations

In Monolog each logger defines a logging channel, which organizes your log messages into different "categories". Then, each channel has a stack of handlers to write the logs (the handlers can be shared).



When injecting the logger in a service you can *use a custom channel* control which "channel" the logger will log to.

1. <https://github.com/Seldaek/monolog>

2. <https://github.com/php-fig/log/blob/master/Psr/Log/LoggerInterface.php>

The basic handler is the **StreamHandler** which writes logs in a stream (by default in the `app/logs/prod.log` in the prod environment and `app/logs/dev.log` in the dev environment).

Monolog comes also with a powerful built-in handler for the logging in prod environment: **FingersCrossedHandler**. It allows you to store the messages in a buffer and to log them only if a message reaches the action level (**error** in the configuration provided in the Standard Edition) by forwarding the messages to another handler.

Using several Handlers

The logger uses a stack of handlers which are called successively. This allows you to log the messages in several ways easily.

Listing 67-2

```
1 # app/config/config.yml
2 monolog:
3     handlers:
4         applog:
5             type: stream
6             path: /var/log/symfony.log
7             level: error
8         main:
9             type: fingers_crossed
10            action_level: warning
11            handler: file
12        file:
13            type: stream
14            level: debug
15        syslog:
16            type: syslog
17            level: error
```

The above configuration defines a stack of handlers which will be called in the order where they are defined.



The handler named "file" will not be included in the stack itself as it is used as a nested handler of the `fingers_crossed` handler.



If you want to change the config of MonologBundle in another config file you need to redefine the whole stack. It cannot be merged because the order matters and a merge does not allow to control the order.

Changing the Formatter

The handler uses a **Formatter** to format the record before logging it. All Monolog handlers use an instance of `Monolog\Formatter\LineFormatter` by default but you can replace it easily. Your formatter must implement `Monolog\Formatter\FormatterInterface`.

Listing 67-3

```
1 # app/config/config.yml
2 services:
3     my_formatter:
4         class: Monolog\Formatter\JsonFormatter
5 monolog:
6     handlers:
```

```

7         file:
8             type: stream
9             level: debug
10            formatter: my_formatter

```

Adding some extra Data in the Log Messages

Monolog allows to process the record before logging it to add some extra data. A processor can be applied for the whole handler stack or only for a specific handler.

A processor is simply a callable receiving the record as its first argument.

Processors are configured using the `monolog.processor` DIC tag. See the *reference about it*.

Adding a Session/Request Token

Sometimes it is hard to tell which entries in the log belong to which session and/or request. The following example will add a unique token for each request using a processor.

Listing 67-4

```

1 namespace Acme\MyBundle;
2
3 use Symfony\Component\HttpFoundation\Session\Session;
4
5 class SessionRequestProcessor
6 {
7     private $session;
8     private $token;
9
10    public function __construct(Session $session)
11    {
12        $this->session = $session;
13    }
14
15    public function processRecord(array $record)
16    {
17        if (null === $this->token) {
18            try {
19                $this->token = substr($this->session->getId(), 0, 8);
20            } catch (\RuntimeException $e) {
21                $this->token = '????????';
22            }
23            $this->token .= '-' . substr(uniqid(), -8);
24        }
25        $record['extra']['token'] = $this->token;
26
27        return $record;
28    }
29 }

```

Listing 67-5

```

1 # app/config/config.yml
2 services:
3     monolog.formatter.session_request:
4         class: Monolog\Formatter\LineFormatter
5         arguments:
6             - "[%datetime%] [%extra.token%] %%channel%%.%%level_name%%: %%message%%\n"

```

```

7
8     monolog.processor.session_request:
9         class: Acme\MyBundle\SessionRequestProcessor
10        arguments: ["@session"]
11        tags:
12            - { name: monolog.processor, method: processRecord }
13
14    monolog:
15        handlers:
16            main:
17                type: stream
18                path: "%kernel.logs_dir%/%kernel.environment%.log"
19                level: debug
20                formatter: monolog.formatter.session_request

```



If you use several handlers, you can also register a processor at the handler level or at the channel level instead of registering it globally (see the following sections).

Registering Processors per Handler

You can register a processor per handler using the `handler` option of the `monolog.processor` tag:

Listing 67-6

```

1 # app/config/config.yml
2 services:
3     monolog.processor.session_request:
4         class: Acme\MyBundle\SessionRequestProcessor
5         arguments: ["@session"]
6         tags:
7             - { name: monolog.processor, method: processRecord, handler: main }

```

Registering Processors per Channel

You can register a processor per channel using the `channel` option of the `monolog.processor` tag:

Listing 67-7

```

1 # app/config/config.yml
2 services:
3     monolog.processor.session_request:
4         class: Acme\MyBundle\SessionRequestProcessor
5         arguments: ["@session"]
6         tags:
7             - { name: monolog.processor, method: processRecord, channel: main }

```



Chapter 68

How to Configure Monolog to Email Errors

*Monolog*¹ can be configured to send an email when an error occurs with an application. The configuration for this requires a few nested handlers in order to avoid receiving too many emails. This configuration looks complicated at first but each handler is fairly straight forward when it is broken down.

Listing 68-1

```
1  # app/config/config_prod.yml
2  monolog:
3      handlers:
4          mail:
5              type:          fingers_crossed
6              # 500 errors are logged at the critical level
7              action_level: critical
8              # to also log 400 level errors (but not 404's):
9              # action_level: error
10             # excluded_404:
11             #     - ^/
12             handler:        buffered
13         buffered:
14             type:           buffer
15             handler:        swift
16         swift:
17             type:           swift_mailer
18             from_email:     error@example.com
19             to_email:       error@example.com
20             # or list of recipients
21             # to_email:     [dev1@example.com, dev2@example.com, ...]
22             subject:        An Error Occurred!
23             level:          debug
```

The **mail** handler is a **fingers_crossed** handler which means that it is only triggered when the action level, in this case **critical** is reached. It then logs everything including messages below the action level. The **critical** level is only triggered for 5xx HTTP code errors. The **handler** setting means that the output is then passed onto the **buffered** handler.

1. <https://github.com/Seldaek/monolog>



If you want both 400 level and 500 level errors to trigger an email, set the `action_level` to `error` instead of `critical`. See the code above for an example.

The `buffered` handler simply keeps all the messages for a request and then passes them onto the nested handler in one go. If you do not use this handler then each message will be emailed separately. This is then passed to the `swift` handler. This is the handler that actually deals with emailing you the error. The settings for this are straightforward, the to and from addresses and the subject.

You can combine these handlers with other handlers so that the errors still get logged on the server as well as the emails being sent:

Listing 68-2

```
1 # app/config/config_prod.yml
2 monolog:
3     handlers:
4         main:
5             type: fingers_crossed
6             action_level: critical
7             handler: grouped
8         grouped:
9             type: group
10            members: [streamed, buffered]
11        streamed:
12            type: stream
13            path: "%kernel.logs_dir%/%kernel.environment%.log"
14            level: debug
15        buffered:
16            type: buffer
17            handler: swift
18        swift:
19            type: swift_mailer
20            from_email: error@example.com
21            to_email: error@example.com
22            subject: An Error Occurred!
23            level: debug
```

This uses the `group` handler to send the messages to the two group members, the `buffered` and the `stream` handlers. The messages will now be both written to the log file and emailed.



Chapter 69

How to Configure Monolog to Display Console Messages



New in version 2.4: This feature was introduced to the MonologBridge in Symfony 2.4.

It is possible to use the console to print messages for certain *verbosity levels* using the *OutputInterface*¹ instance that is passed when a command gets executed.

Alternatively, you can use the standalone PSR-3 logger provided with the console component.

When a lot of logging has to happen, it's cumbersome to print information depending on the verbosity settings (-v, -vv, -vvv) because the calls need to be wrapped in conditions. The code quickly gets verbose or dirty. For example:

```
Listing 69-1 1 use Symfony\Component\Console\Input\InputInterface;
2 use Symfony\Component\Console\Output\OutputInterface;
3
4 protected function execute(InputInterface $input, OutputInterface $output)
5 {
6     if ($output->getVerbosity() >= OutputInterface::VERBOSITY_DEBUG) {
7         $output->writeln('Some info');
8     }
9
10    if ($output->getVerbosity() >= OutputInterface::VERBOSITY_VERBOSE) {
11        $output->writeln('Some more info');
12    }
13 }
```

1. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Console/Output/OutputInterface.html>

Instead of using these semantic methods to test for each of the verbosity levels, the *MonologBridge*² provides a *ConsoleHandler*³ that listens to console events and writes log messages to the console output depending on the current log level and the console verbosity.

The example above could then be rewritten as:

```
Listing 69-2 1 use Symfony\Component\Console\Input\InputInterface;
2 use Symfony\Component\Console\Output\OutputInterface;
3
4 protected function execute(InputInterface $input, OutputInterface $output)
5 {
6     // assuming the Command extends ContainerAwareCommand...
7     $logger = $this->getContainer()->get('logger');
8     $logger->debug('Some info');
9
10    $logger->notice('Some more info');
11 }
```

Depending on the verbosity level that the command is run in and the user's configuration (see below), these messages may or may not be displayed to the console. If they are displayed, they are timestamped and colored appropriately. Additionally, error logs are written to the error output (php://stderr). There is no need to conditionally handle the verbosity settings anymore.

The Monolog console handler is enabled in the Monolog configuration. This is the default in Symfony Standard Edition 2.4 too.

```
Listing 69-3 1 # app/config/config.yml
2 monolog:
3     handlers:
4         console:
5             type: console
```

With the `verbosity_levels` option you can adapt the mapping between verbosity and log level. In the given example it will also show notices in normal verbosity mode (instead of warnings only). Additionally, it will only use messages logged with the custom `my_channel` channel and it changes the display style via a custom formatter (see the *MonologBundle reference* for more information):

```
Listing 69-4 1 # app/config/config.yml
2 monolog:
3     handlers:
4         console:
5             type: console
6             verbosity_levels:
7                 VERBOSITY_NORMAL: NOTICE
8             channels: my_channel
9             formatter: my_formatter
```

```
Listing 69-5 1 # app/config/services.yml
2 services:
3     my_formatter:
4         class: Symfony\Bridge\Monolog\Formatter\ConsoleFormatter
5         arguments:
6             - "[%datetime%] %start_tag%%message%%end_tag% (%level_name%)
              %%context%% %%extra%%\n"
```

2. <https://github.com/symfony/MonologBridge>

3. <https://github.com/symfony/MonologBridge/blob/master/Handler/ConsoleHandler.php>



Chapter 70

How to Configure Monolog to Exclude 404 Errors from the Log



New in version 2.4: This feature was introduced to the MonologBundle 2.4, which was first packaged with Symfony 2.4.

Sometimes your logs become flooded with unwanted 404 HTTP errors, for example, when an attacker scans your app for some well-known application paths (e.g. `/phpmyadmin`). When using a **fingers_crossed** handler, you can exclude logging these 404 errors based on a regular expression in the MonologBundle configuration:

Listing 70-1

```
1 # app/config/config.yml
2 monolog:
3     handlers:
4         main:
5             # ...
6             type: fingers_crossed
7             handler: ...
8             excluded_404s:
9                 - ^/phpmyadmin
```



Chapter 71

How to Log Messages to different Files

The Symfony Standard Edition contains a bunch of channels for logging: `doctrine`, `event`, `security` and `request`. Each channel corresponds to a logger service (`monolog.logger.XXX`) in the container and is injected to the concerned service. The purpose of channels is to be able to organize different types of log messages.

By default, Symfony logs every message into a single file (regardless of the channel).

Switching a Channel to a different Handler

Now, suppose you want to log the `doctrine` channel to a different file.

To do so, just create a new handler and configure it like this:

Listing 71-1

```
1 # app/config/config.yml
2 monolog:
3     handlers:
4         main:
5             type:      stream
6             path:      /var/log/symfony.log
7             channels:  ["!doctrine"]
8         doctrine:
9             type:      stream
10            path:      /var/log/doctrine.log
11            channels:  [doctrine]
```

YAML Specification

You can specify the configuration by many forms:

Listing 71-2

```
1 channels: ~      # Include all the channels
2
3 channels: foo    # Include only channel "foo"
```

```
4 channels: "!foo" # Include all channels, except "foo"
5
6 channels: [foo, bar] # Include only channels "foo" and "bar"
7 channels: ["!foo", "!bar"] # Include all channels, except "foo" and "bar"
```

Creating your own Channel

You can change the channel monolog logs to one service at a time. This is done either via the *configuration* below or by tagging your service with *monolog.logger* and specifying which channel the service should log to. With the tag, the logger that is injected into that service is preconfigured to use the channel you've specified.

Configure Additional Channels without Tagged Services



New in version 2.4: This feature was introduced to the MonologBundle 2.4, which was first packaged with Symfony 2.4.

With MonologBundle 2.4 you can configure additional channels without the need to tag your services:

Listing 71-3

```
1 # app/config/config.yml
2 monolog:
3     channels: ["foo", "bar"]
```

With this, you can now send log messages to the `foo` channel by using the automatically registered logger service `monolog.logger.foo`.

Learn more from the Cookbook

- *How to Use Monolog to Write Logs*



Chapter 72

How to Create a custom Data Collector

The Symfony *Profiler* delegates data collecting to data collectors. Symfony comes bundled with a few of them, but you can easily create your own.

Creating a custom Data Collector

Creating a custom data collector is as simple as implementing the *DataCollectorInterface*¹:

Listing 72-1

```
1 interface DataCollectorInterface
2 {
3     /**
4      * Collects data for the given Request and Response.
5      *
6      * @param Request $request A Request instance
7      * @param Response $response A Response instance
8      * @param \Exception $exception An Exception instance
9      */
10    function collect(Request $request, Response $response, \Exception $exception = null);
11
12    /**
13     * Returns the name of the collector.
14     *
15     * @return string The collector name
16     */
17    function getName();
18 }
```

The `getName()` method must return a unique name. This is used to access the information later on (see *How to Use the Profiler in a Functional Test* for instance).

The `collect()` method is responsible for storing the data it wants to give access to in local properties.

1. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpKernel/DataCollector/DataCollectorInterface.html>



As the profiler serializes data collector instances, you should not store objects that cannot be serialized (like PDO objects), or you need to provide your own `serialize()` method.

Most of the time, it is convenient to extend *DataCollector*² and populate the `$this->data` property (it takes care of serializing the `$this->data` property):

Listing 72-2

```
1 class MemoryDataCollector extends DataCollector
2 {
3     public function collect(Request $request, Response $response, \Exception $exception =
4     null)
5     {
6         $this->data = array(
7             'memory' => memory_get_peak_usage(true),
8         );
9     }
10
11    public function getMemory()
12    {
13        return $this->data['memory'];
14    }
15
16    public function getName()
17    {
18        return 'memory';
19    }
20 }
```

Enabling custom Data Collectors

To enable a data collector, add it as a regular service in one of your configuration, and tag it with `data_collector`:

Listing 72-3

```
1 services:
2     data_collector.your_collector_name:
3         class: Fully\Qualified\Collector\Class\Name
4         tags:
5             - { name: data_collector }
```

Adding Web Profiler Templates

When you want to display the data collected by your data collector in the web debug toolbar or the web profiler, create a Twig template following this skeleton:

Listing 72-4

```
1 {% extends 'WebProfilerBundle:Profiler:layout.html.twig' %}
2
3 {% block toolbar %}
4     {# the web debug toolbar content #}
5 {% endblock %}
```

2. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpKernel/DataCollector/DataCollector.html>


```

6
7 {% block head %}
8     {# if the web profiler panel needs some specific JS or CSS files #}
9 {% endblock %}
10
11 {% block menu %}
12     {# the menu content #}
13 {% endblock %}
14
15 {% block panel %}
16     {# the panel content #}
17 {% endblock %}

```

Each block is optional. The `toolbar` block is used for the web debug toolbar and `menu` and `panel` are used to add a panel to the web profiler.

All blocks have access to the `collector` object.



Built-in templates use a base64 encoded image for the toolbar:

Listing 72-5 `1 `

You can easily calculate the base64 value for an image with this little script:

Listing 72-6 `1 #!/usr/bin/env php`
`2 <?php`
`3 echo base64_encode(file_get_contents($_SERVER['argv'][1]));`

To enable the template, add a `template` attribute to the `data_collector` tag in your configuration. For example, assuming your template is in some `AcmeDebugBundle`:

Listing 72-7 `1 services:`
`2 data_collector.your_collector_name:`
`3 class: Acme\DebugBundle\Collector\Class\Name`
`4 tags:`
`5 - { name: data_collector, template: "AcmeDebugBundle:Collector:templatename",`
`id: "your_collector_name" }`



Chapter 73

How to Use Matchers to Enable the Profiler Conditionally

By default, the profiler is only activated in the development environment. But it's imaginable that a developer may want to see the profiler even in production. Another situation may be that you want to show the profiler only when an admin has logged in. You can enable the profiler in these situations by using matchers.

Using the built-in Matcher

Symfony provides a *built-in matcher*¹ which can match paths and IPs. For example, if you want to only show the profiler when accessing the page with the **168.0.0.1** IP, then you can use this configuration:

Listing 73-1

```
1 # app/config/config.yml
2 framework:
3     # ...
4     profiler:
5         matcher:
6             ip: 168.0.0.1
```

You can also set a **path** option to define the path on which the profiler should be enabled. For instance, setting it to **^/admin/** will enable the profiler only for the **/admin/** URLs.

Creating a custom Matcher

You can also create a custom matcher. This is a service that checks whether the profiler should be enabled or not. To create that service, create a class which implements *RequestMatcherInterface*². This

1. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpFoundation/RequestMatcher.html>

2. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpFoundation/RequestMatcherInterface.html>

interface requires one method: `matches()`³. This method returns false to disable the profiler and true to enable the profiler.

To enable the profiler when a `ROLE_SUPER_ADMIN` is logged in, you can use something like:

Listing 73-2

```
1 // src/Acme/DemoBundle/Profiler/SuperAdminMatcher.php
2 namespace Acme\DemoBundle\Profiler;
3
4 use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\SecurityContext;
5 use Symfony\Component\HttpFoundation\Request;
6 use Symfony\Component\HttpFoundation\RequestMatcherInterface;
7
8 class SuperAdminMatcher implements RequestMatcherInterface
9 {
10     protected $securityContext;
11
12     public function __construct(SecurityContext $securityContext)
13     {
14         $this->securityContext = $securityContext;
15     }
16
17     public function matches(Request $request)
18     {
19         return $this->securityContext->isGranted('ROLE_SUPER_ADMIN');
20     }
21 }
```

Then, you need to configure the service:

Listing 73-3

```
1 parameters:
2     acme_demo.profiler.matcher.super_admin.class: Acme\DemoBundle\Profiler\SuperAdminMatcher
3
4 services:
5     acme_demo.profiler.matcher.super_admin:
6         class: "%acme_demo.profiler.matcher.super_admin.class%"
7         arguments: ["@security.context"]
```

Now the service is registered, the only thing left to do is configure the profiler to use this service as the matcher:

Listing 73-4

```
1 # app/config/config.yml
2 framework:
3     # ...
4     profiler:
5         matcher:
6             service: acme_demo.profiler.matcher.super_admin
```

3. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpFoundation/RequestMatcherInterface.html#matches\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpFoundation/RequestMatcherInterface.html#matches())



Chapter 74

Switching the Profiler Storage

By default the profiler stores the collected data in files in the cache directory. You can control the storage being used through the `dsn`, `username`, `password` and `lifetime` options. For example, the following configuration uses MySQL as the storage for the profiler with a lifetime of one hour:

Listing 74-1

```
1 # app/config/config.yml
2 framework:
3 profiler:
4     dsn: "mysql:host=localhost;dbname=%database_name%"
5     username: "%database_user%"
6     password: "%database_password%"
7     lifetime: 3600
```

The *HttpKernel* component currently supports the following profiler storage implementations:

- *FileProfilerStorage*¹
- *MemcachedProfilerStorage*²
- *MemcacheProfilerStorage*³
- *MongoDbProfilerStorage*⁴
- *MysqlProfilerStorage*⁵
- *RedisProfilerStorage*⁶
- *SqliteProfilerStorage*⁷

1. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpKernel/Profiler/FileProfilerStorage.html>
2. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpKernel/Profiler/MemcachedProfilerStorage.html>
3. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpKernel/Profiler/MemcacheProfilerStorage.html>
4. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpKernel/Profiler/MongoDbProfilerStorage.html>
5. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpKernel/Profiler/MysqlProfilerStorage.html>
6. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpKernel/Profiler/RedisProfilerStorage.html>
7. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpKernel/Profiler/SqliteProfilerStorage.html>



Chapter 75

How to Configure Symfony to Work behind a Load Balancer or a Reverse Proxy

When you deploy your application, you may be behind a load balancer (e.g. an AWS Elastic Load Balancer) or a reverse proxy (e.g. Varnish for *caching*).

For the most part, this doesn't cause any problems with Symfony. But, when a request passes through a proxy, certain request information is sent using special **X-Forwarded-*** headers. For example, instead of reading the `REMOTE_ADDR` header (which will now be the IP address of your reverse proxy), the user's true IP will be stored in an **X-Forwarded-For** header.

If you don't configure Symfony to look for these headers, you'll get incorrect information about the client's IP address, whether or not the client is connecting via HTTPS, the client's port and the hostname being requested.

Solution: `trusted_proxies`

This is no problem, but you *do* need to tell Symfony that this is happening and which reverse proxy IP addresses will be doing this type of thing:

Listing 75-1

```
1 # app/config/config.yml
2 # ...
3 framework:
4     trusted_proxies: [192.0.0.1, 10.0.0.0/8]
```

In this example, you're saying that your reverse proxy (or proxies) has the IP address **192.0.0.1** or matches the range of IP addresses that use the CIDR notation **10.0.0.0/8**. For more details, see the `framework.trusted_proxies` option.

That's it! Symfony will now look for the correct **X-Forwarded-*** headers to get information like the client's IP address, host, port and whether or not the request is using HTTPS.

But what if the IP of my Reverse Proxy Changes Constantly!

Some reverse proxies (like Amazon's Elastic Load Balancers) don't have a static IP address or even a range that you can target with the CIDR notation. In this case, you'll need to - *very carefully* - trust *all* proxies.

1. Configure your web server(s) to *not* respond to traffic from *any* clients other than your load balancers. For AWS, this can be done with *security groups*¹.
2. Once you've guaranteed that traffic will only come from your trusted reverse proxies, configure Symfony to *always* trust incoming request. This is done inside of your front controller:

Listing 75-2

```
1 // web/app.php
2
3 // ...
4 Request::setTrustedProxies(array($request->server->get('REMOTE_ADDR')));
5
6 $response = $kernel->handle($request);
7 // ...
```

That's it! It's critical that you prevent traffic from all non-trusted sources. If you allow outside traffic, they could "spoof" their true IP address and other information.

My Reverse Proxy Uses Non-Standard (not X-Forwarded) Headers

Most reverse proxies store information on specific **X-Forwarded-*** headers. But if your reverse proxy uses non-standard header names, you can configure these (see "*Trusting Proxies*"). The code for doing this will need to live in your front controller (e.g. `web/app.php`).

1. <http://docs.aws.amazon.com/ElasticLoadBalancing/latest/DeveloperGuide/using-elb-security-groups.html>



Chapter 76

How to Register a new Request Format and Mime Type

Every **Request** has a "format" (e.g. `html`, `json`), which is used to determine what type of content to return in the **Response**. In fact, the request format, accessible via `getRequestFormat()`¹, is used to set the MIME type of the **Content-Type** header on the **Response** object. Internally, Symfony contains a map of the most common formats (e.g. `html`, `json`) and their associated MIME types (e.g. `text/html`, `application/json`). Of course, additional format-MIME type entries can easily be added. This document will show how you can add the `jsonp` format and corresponding MIME type.



New in version 2.5: The possibility to configure request formats was introduced in Symfony 2.5.

Configure your New Format

The **FrameworkBundle** registers a subscriber that will add formats to incoming requests.

All you have to do is to configure the `jsonp` format:

Listing 76-1

```
1 # app/config/config.yml
2 framework:
3     request:
4         formats:
5             jsonp: 'application/javascript'
```

1. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpFoundation/Request.html#getRequestFormat\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpFoundation/Request.html#getRequestFormat())



You can also associate multiple mime types to a format, but please note that the preferred one must be the first as it will be used as the content type:

Listing 76-2

```
1 # app/config/config.yml
2 framework:
3   request:
4     formats:
5       csv: ['text/csv', 'text/plain']
```




Chapter 77

How to Force Routes to always Use HTTPS or HTTP

Sometimes, you want to secure some routes and be sure that they are always accessed via the HTTPS protocol. The Routing component allows you to enforce the URI scheme via schemes:

Listing 77-1

```
1 secure:
2     path:      /secure
3     defaults: { _controller: AcmeDemoBundle:Main:secure }
4     schemes:   [https]
```

The above configuration forces the `secure` route to always use HTTPS.

When generating the `secure` URL, and if the current scheme is HTTP, Symfony will automatically generate an absolute URL with HTTPS as the scheme:

Listing 77-2

```
1 {# If the current scheme is HTTPS #}
2 {{ path('secure') }}
3 {# generates /secure #}
4
5 {# If the current scheme is HTTP #}
6 {{ path('secure') }}
7 {# generates https://example.com/secure #}
```

The requirement is also enforced for incoming requests. If you try to access the `/secure` path with HTTP, you will automatically be redirected to the same URL, but with the HTTPS scheme.

The above example uses `https` for the scheme, but you can also force a URL to always use `http`.



The Security component provides another way to enforce HTTP or HTTPS via the `requires_channel` setting. This alternative method is better suited to secure an "area" of your website (all URLs under `/admin`) or when you want to secure URLs defined in a third party bundle (see *How to Force HTTPS or HTTP for different URLs* for more details).



Chapter 78

How to Allow a "/" Character in a Route Parameter

Sometimes, you need to compose URLs with parameters that can contain a slash /. For example, take the classic `/hello/{name}` route. By default, `/hello/Fabien` will match this route but not `/hello/Fabien/Kris`. This is because Symfony uses this character as separator between route parts.

This guide covers how you can modify a route so that `/hello/Fabien/Kris` matches the `/hello/{name}` route, where `{name}` equals `Fabien/Kris`.

Configure the Route

By default, the Symfony Routing component requires that the parameters match the following regex path: `[^/]+`. This means that all characters are allowed except /.

You must explicitly allow / to be part of your parameter by specifying a more permissive regex path.

Listing 78-1

```
1 _hello:
2     path:      /hello/{name}
3     defaults: { _controller: AcmeDemoBundle:Demo:hello }
4     requirements:
5         name: .+
```

That's it! Now, the `{name}` parameter can contain the / character.



Chapter 79

How to Configure a Redirect without a custom Controller

Sometimes, a URL needs to redirect to another URL. You can do that by creating a new controller action whose only task is to redirect, but using the *RedirectController*¹ of the FrameworkBundle is even easier.

You can redirect to a specific path (e.g. */about*) or to a specific route using its name (e.g. *homepage*).

Redirecting Using a Path

Assume there is no default controller for the */* path of your application and you want to redirect these requests to */app*. You will need to use the *urlRedirect()*² action to redirect to this new url:

Listing 79-1

```
1  # app/config/routing.yml
2
3  # load some routes - one should ultimately have the path "/app"
4  AppBundle:
5      resource: "@AcmeAppBundle/Controller/"
6      type:     annotation
7      prefix:   /app
8
9  # redirecting the root
10 root:
11     path: /
12     defaults:
13         _controller: FrameworkBundle\Redirect:urlRedirect
14         path: /app
15         permanent: true
```

1. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Bundle/FrameworkBundle/Controller/RedirectController.html>

2. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Bundle/FrameworkBundle/Controller/RedirectController.html#urlRedirect\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Bundle/FrameworkBundle/Controller/RedirectController.html#urlRedirect())

In this example, you configured a route for the `/` path and let the `RedirectController` redirect it to `/app`. The `permanent` switch tells the action to issue a **301** HTTP status code instead of the default **302** HTTP status code.

Redirecting Using a Route

Assume you are migrating your website from WordPress to Symfony, you want to redirect `/wp-admin` to the route `sonata_admin_dashboard`. You don't know the path, only the route name. This can be achieved using the `redirect()`³ action:

Listing 79-2

```
1 # app/config/routing.yml
2
3 # ...
4
5 # redirecting the admin home
6 root:
7     path: /wp-admin
8     defaults:
9         _controller: FrameworkBundle\Redirect:redirect
10         route: sonata_admin_dashboard
11         permanent: true
```



Because you are redirecting to a route instead of a path, the required option is called `route` in the `redirect` action, instead of `path` in the `urlRedirect` action.

3. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Bundle/FrameworkBundle/Controller/RedirectController.html#redirect\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Bundle/FrameworkBundle/Controller/RedirectController.html#redirect())



Chapter 80

How to Use HTTP Methods beyond GET and POST in Routes

The HTTP method of a request is one of the requirements that can be checked when seeing if it matches a route. This is introduced in the routing chapter of the book "*Routing*" with examples using GET and POST. You can also use other HTTP verbs in this way. For example, if you have a blog post entry then you could use the same URL path to show it, make changes to it and delete it by matching on GET, PUT and DELETE.

Listing 80-1

```
1  blog_show:
2      path:      /blog/{slug}
3      defaults: { _controller: AcmeDemoBundle:Blog:show }
4      methods:   [GET]
5
6  blog_update:
7      path:      /blog/{slug}
8      defaults: { _controller: AcmeDemoBundle:Blog:update }
9      methods:   [PUT]
10
11 blog_delete:
12     path:      /blog/{slug}
13     defaults: { _controller: AcmeDemoBundle:Blog:delete }
14     methods:   [DELETE]
```

Faking the Method with `_method`



The `_method` functionality shown here is disabled by default in Symfony 2.2 and enabled by default in Symfony 2.3. To control it in Symfony 2.2, you must call `Request::enableHttpMethodParameterOverride`¹ before you handle the request (e.g. in your front controller). In Symfony 2.3, use the `http_method_override` option.

Unfortunately, life isn't quite this simple, since most browsers do not support sending PUT and DELETE requests. Fortunately, Symfony provides you with a simple way of working around this limitation. By including a `_method` parameter in the query string or parameters of an HTTP request, Symfony will use this as the method when matching routes. Forms automatically include a hidden field for this parameter if their submission method is not GET or POST. See *the related chapter in the forms documentation* for more information.

1. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpFoundation/Request.html#enableHttpMethodParameterOverride\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpFoundation/Request.html#enableHttpMethodParameterOverride())



Chapter 81

How to Use Service Container Parameters in your Routes

Sometimes you may find it useful to make some parts of your routes globally configurable. For instance, if you build an internationalized site, you'll probably start with one or two locales. Surely you'll add a requirement to your routes to prevent a user from matching a locale other than the locales your support. You *could* hardcode your `_locale` requirement in all your routes. But a better solution is to use a configurable service container parameter right inside your routing configuration:

Listing 81-1

```
1 # app/config/routing.yml
2 contact:
3     path:      /{_locale}/contact
4     defaults: { _controller: AcmeDemoBundle:Main:contact }
5     requirements:
6         _locale: "%acme_demo.locales%"
```

You can now control and set the `acme_demo.locales` parameter somewhere in your container:

Listing 81-2

```
1 # app/config/config.yml
2 parameters:
3     acme_demo.locales: en|es
```

You can also use a parameter to define your route path (or part of your path):

Listing 81-3

```
1 # app/config/routing.yml
2 some_route:
3     path:      /%acme_demo.route_prefix%/contact
4     defaults: { _controller: AcmeDemoBundle:Main:contact }
```



Just like in normal service container configuration files, if you actually need a % in your route, you can escape the percent sign by doubling it, e.g. `/score-50%%`, which would resolve to `/score-50%`. However, as the % characters included in any URL are automatically encoded, the resulting URL of this example would be `/score-50%25` (%25 is the result of encoding the % character).

For parameter handling within a Dependency Injection class see [Using Parameters within a Dependency Injection Class](#).



Chapter 82

How to Create a custom Route Loader

A custom route loader allows you to add routes to an application without including them, for example, in a YAML file. This comes in handy when you have a bundle but don't want to manually add the routes for the bundle to `app/config/routing.yml`. This may be especially important when you want to make the bundle reusable, or when you have open-sourced it as this would slow down the installation process and make it error-prone.

Alternatively, you could also use a custom route loader when you want your routes to be automatically generated or located based on some convention or pattern. One example is the *FOSRestBundle*¹ where routing is generated based off the names of the action methods in a controller.



There are many bundles out there that use their own route loaders to accomplish cases like those described above, for instance *FOSRestBundle*², *JMSI18nRoutingBundle*³, *KnplabsRadBundle*⁴ and *SonataAdminBundle*⁵.

Loading Routes

The routes in a Symfony application are loaded by the *DelegatingLoader*⁶. This loader uses several other loaders (delegates) to load resources of different types, for instance YAML files or `@Route` and `@Method` annotations in controller files. The specialized loaders implement *LoaderInterface*⁷ and therefore have two important methods: *supports()*⁸ and *load()*⁹.

Take these lines from the `routing.yml` in the AcmeDemoBundle of the Standard Edition:

Listing 82-1

-
1. <https://github.com/FriendsOfSymfony/FOSRestBundle>
 2. <https://github.com/FriendsOfSymfony/FOSRestBundle>
 3. <https://github.com/schmittjoh/JMSI18nRoutingBundle>
 4. <https://github.com/KnpLabs/KnpRadBundle>
 5. <https://github.com/sonata-project/SonataAdminBundle>
 6. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Bundle/FrameworkBundle/Routing/DelegatingLoader.html>
 7. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Config/Loader/LoaderInterface.html>
 8. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Config/Loader/LoaderInterface.html#supports\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Config/Loader/LoaderInterface.html#supports())
 9. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Config/Loader/LoaderInterface.html#load\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Config/Loader/LoaderInterface.html#load())

```

1 # src/Acme/DemoBundle/Resources/config/routing.yml
2 _demo:
3     resource: "@AcmeDemoBundle/Controller/DemoController.php"
4     type:     annotation
5     prefix:   /demo

```

When the main loader parses this, it tries all the delegate loaders and calls their *supports()*¹⁰ method with the given resource (@AcmeDemoBundle/Controller/DemoController.php) and type (annotation) as arguments. When one of the loader returns **true**, its *load()*¹¹ method will be called, which should return a *RouteCollection*¹² containing *Route*¹³ objects.

Creating a custom Loader

To load routes from some custom source (i.e. from something other than annotations, YAML or XML files), you need to create a custom route loader. This loader should implement *LoaderInterface*¹⁴.

The sample loader below supports loading routing resources with a type of **extra**. The type **extra** isn't important - you can just invent any resource type you want. The resource name itself is not actually used in the example:

Listing 82-2

```

1 namespace Acme\DemoBundle\Routing;
2
3 use Symfony\Component\Config\Loader\LoaderInterface;
4 use Symfony\Component\Config\Loader\LoaderResolverInterface;
5 use Symfony\Component\Routing\Route;
6 use Symfony\Component\Routing\RouteCollection;
7
8 class ExtraLoader implements LoaderInterface
9 {
10     private $loaded = false;
11
12     public function load($resource, $type = null)
13     {
14         if (true === $this->loaded) {
15             throw new \RuntimeException('Do not add the "extra" loader twice');
16         }
17
18         $routes = new RouteCollection();
19
20         // prepare a new route
21         $pattern = '/extra/{parameter}';
22         $defaults = array(
23             '_controller' => 'AcmeDemoBundle:Demo:extra',
24         );
25         $requirements = array(
26             'parameter' => '\d+',
27         );
28         $route = new Route($pattern, $defaults, $requirements);
29
30         // add the new route to the route collection:

```

10. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Config/Loader/LoaderInterface.html#supports\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Config/Loader/LoaderInterface.html#supports())

11. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Config/Loader/LoaderInterface.html#load\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Config/Loader/LoaderInterface.html#load())

12. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Routing/RouteCollection.html>

13. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Routing/Route.html>

14. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Config/Loader/LoaderInterface.html>

```

31     $routeName = 'extraRoute';
32     $routes->add($routeName, $route);
33
34     $this->loaded = true;
35
36     return $routes;
37 }
38
39 public function supports($resource, $type = null)
40 {
41     return 'extra' === $type;
42 }
43
44 public function getResolver()
45 {
46     // needed, but can be blank, unless you want to load other resources
47     // and if you do, using the Loader base class is easier (see below)
48 }
49
50 public function setResolver(LoaderResolverInterface $resolver)
51 {
52     // same as above
53 }
54 }

```



Make sure the controller you specify really exists.

Now define a service for the `ExtraLoader`:

Listing 82-3

```

1 services:
2     acme_demo.routing_loader:
3         class: Acme\DemoBundle\Routing\ExtraLoader
4         tags:
5             - { name: routing.loader }

```

Notice the tag `routing.loader`. All services with this tag will be marked as potential route loaders and added as specialized routers to the *DelegatingLoader*¹⁵.

Using the custom Loader

If you did nothing else, your custom routing loader would *not* be called. Instead, you only need to add a few extra lines to the routing configuration:

Listing 82-4

```

1 # app/config/routing.yml
2 AcmeDemoBundle_Extra:
3     resource: .
4     type: extra

```

The important part here is the `type` key. Its value should be `"extra"`. This is the type which the `ExtraLoader` supports and this will make sure its `load()` method gets called. The `resource` key is insignificant for the `ExtraLoader`, so it is set to `"."`.

15. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Bundle/FrameworkBundle/Routing/DelegatingLoader.html>



The routes defined using custom route loaders will be automatically cached by the framework. So whenever you change something in the loader class itself, don't forget to clear the cache.

More advanced Loaders

In most cases it's better not to implement *LoaderInterface*¹⁶ yourself, but extend from *Loader*¹⁷. This class knows how to use a *LoaderResolver*¹⁸ to load secondary routing resources.

Of course you still need to implement *supports()*¹⁹ and *load()*²⁰. Whenever you want to load another resource - for instance a YAML routing configuration file - you can call the *import()*²¹ method:

Listing 82-5

```
1 namespace Acme\DemoBundle\Routing;
2
3 use Symfony\Component\Config\Loader\Loader;
4 use Symfony\Component\Routing\RouteCollection;
5
6 class AdvancedLoader extends Loader
7 {
8     public function load($resource, $type = null)
9     {
10         $collection = new RouteCollection();
11
12         $resource = '@AcmeDemoBundle/Resources/config/import_routing.yml';
13         $type = 'yaml';
14
15         $importedRoutes = $this->import($resource, $type);
16
17         $collection->addCollection($importedRoutes);
18
19         return $collection;
20     }
21
22     public function supports($resource, $type = null)
23     {
24         return $type === 'advanced_extra';
25     }
26 }
```



The resource name and type of the imported routing configuration can be anything that would normally be supported by the routing configuration loader (YAML, XML, PHP, annotation, etc.).

16. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Config/Loader/LoaderInterface.html>

17. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Config/Loader/Loader.html>

18. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Config/Loader/LoaderResolver.html>

19. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Config/Loader/LoaderInterface.html#supports\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Config/Loader/LoaderInterface.html#supports())

20. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Config/Loader/LoaderInterface.html#load\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Config/Loader/LoaderInterface.html#load())

21. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Config/Loader/Loader.html#import\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Config/Loader/Loader.html#import())



Chapter 83

Redirect URLs with a Trailing Slash

The goal of this cookbook is to demonstrate how to redirect URLs with a trailing slash to the same URL without a trailing slash (for example `/en/blog/` to `/en/blog`).

Create a controller that will match any URL with a trailing slash, remove the trailing slash (keeping query parameters if any) and redirect to the new URL with a 301 response status code:

Listing 83-1

```
1 // src/Acme/DemoBundle/Controller/RedirectingController.php
2 namespace Acme\DemoBundle\Controller;
3
4 use Symfony\Bundle\FrameworkBundle\Controller\Controller;
5 use Symfony\Component\HttpFoundation\Request;
6
7 class RedirectingController extends Controller
8 {
9     public function removeTrailingSlashAction(Request $request)
10     {
11         $pathInfo = $request->getPathInfo();
12         $requestUri = $request->getRequestUri();
13
14         $url = str_replace($pathInfo, rtrim($pathInfo, '/'), $requestUri);
15
16         return $this->redirect($url, 301);
17     }
18 }
```

After that, create a route to this controller that's matched whenever a URL with a trailing slash is requested. Be sure to put this route last in your system, as explained below:

Listing 83-2

```
1 remove_trailing_slash:
2     path: /{url}
3     defaults: { _controller: AcmeDemoBundle:Redirecting:removeTrailingSlash }
4     requirements:
5         url: .*/$
6     methods: [GET]
```



Redirecting a POST request does not work well in old browsers. A 302 on a POST request would send a GET request after the redirection for legacy reasons. For that reason, the route here only matches GET requests.



Make sure to include this route in your routing configuration at the very end of your route listing. Otherwise, you risk redirecting real routes (including Symfony core routes) that actually *do* have a trailing slash in their path.



Chapter 84

How to Pass Extra Information from a Route to a Controller

Parameters inside the `defaults` collection don't necessarily have to match a placeholder in the route `path`. In fact, you can use the `defaults` array to specify extra parameters that will then be accessible as arguments to your controller:

Listing 84-1

```
1 # app/config/routing.yml
2 blog:
3     path:      /blog/{page}
4     defaults:
5         _controller: AcmeBlogBundle:Blog:index
6         page:      1
7         title:      "Hello world!"
```

Now, you can access this extra parameter in your controller:

Listing 84-2

```
1 public function indexAction($page, $title)
2 {
3     // ...
4 }
```

As you can see, the `$title` variable was never defined inside the route path, but you can still access its value from inside your controller.



Chapter 85

How to Load Security Users from the Database (the Entity Provider)

The security layer is one of the smartest tools of Symfony. It handles two things: the authentication and the authorization processes. Although it may seem difficult to understand how it works internally, the security system is very flexible and allows you to integrate your application with any authentication backend, like Active Directory, an OAuth server or a database.

Introduction

This article focuses on how to authenticate users against a database table managed by a Doctrine entity class. The content of this cookbook entry is split in three parts. The first part is about designing a Doctrine `User` entity class and making it usable in the security layer of Symfony. The second part describes how to easily authenticate a user with the Doctrine *EntityUserProvider*¹ object bundled with the framework and some configuration. Finally, the tutorial will demonstrate how to create a custom *EntityUserProvider*² object to retrieve users from a database with custom conditions.



Code along with the Example

If you want to follow along with the example in this chapter, create an `AcmeUserBundle` via:

Listing 85-1 1 `$ php app/console generate:bundle --namespace=Acme/UserBundle`

1. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Bridge/Doctrine/Security/User/EntityUserProvider.html>

2. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Bridge/Doctrine/Security/User/EntityUserProvider.html>

The Data Model

For the purpose of this cookbook, the `AcmeUserBundle` bundle contains a `User` entity class with the following fields: `id`, `username`, `password`, `email` and `isActive`. The `isActive` field tells whether or not the user account is active.

To make it shorter, the getter and setter methods for each have been removed to focus on the most important methods that come from the *`UserInterface`*³.



You can generate the missing getter and setters by running:

Listing 85-2 1 `$ php app/console doctrine:generate:entities Acme/UserBundle/Entity/User`

Listing 85-3

```
1  // src/Acme/UserBundle/Entity/User.php
2  namespace Acme\UserBundle\Entity;
3
4  use Doctrine\ORM\Mapping as ORM;
5  use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\User\UserInterface;
6
7  /**
8   * Acme\UserBundle\Entity\User
9   *
10  * @ORM\Table(name="acme_users")
11  * @ORM\Entity(repositoryClass="Acme\UserBundle\Entity\UserRepository")
12  */
13  class User implements UserInterface, \Serializable
14  {
15      /**
16       * @ORM\Column(type="integer")
17       * @ORM\Id
18       * @ORM\GeneratedValue(strategy="AUTO")
19       */
20      private $id;
21
22      /**
23       * @ORM\Column(type="string", length=25, unique=true)
24       */
25      private $username;
26
27      /**
28       * @ORM\Column(type="string", length=64)
29       */
30      private $password;
31
32      /**
33       * @ORM\Column(type="string", length=60, unique=true)
34       */
35      private $email;
36
37      /**
38       * @ORM\Column(name="is_active", type="boolean")
39       */
40      private $isActive;
41
```

3. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/User/UserInterface.html>

```

42     public function __construct()
43     {
44         $this->isActive = true;
45         // may not be needed, see section on salt below
46         // $this->salt = md5(uniqid(null, true));
47     }
48
49     /**
50      * @inheritDoc
51      */
52     public function getUsername()
53     {
54         return $this->username;
55     }
56
57     /**
58      * @inheritDoc
59      */
60     public function getSalt()
61     {
62         // you *may* need a real salt depending on your encoder
63         // see section on salt below
64         return null;
65     }
66
67     /**
68      * @inheritDoc
69      */
70     public function getPassword()
71     {
72         return $this->password;
73     }
74
75     /**
76      * @inheritDoc
77      */
78     public function getRoles()
79     {
80         return array('ROLE_USER');
81     }
82
83     /**
84      * @inheritDoc
85      */
86     public function eraseCredentials()
87     {
88     }
89
90     /**
91      * @see \Serializable::serialize()
92      */
93     public function serialize()
94     {
95         return serialize(array(
96             $this->id,
97             $this->username,
98             $this->password,
99             // see section on salt below
100            // $this->salt,

```

```

101         ));
102     }
103
104     /**
105      * @see \Serializable::unserialize()
106      */
107     public function unserialize($serialized)
108     {
109         list (
110             $this->id,
111             $this->username,
112             $this->password,
113             // see section on salt below
114             // $this->salt
115         ) = unserialize($serialized);
116     }
117 }

```



If you choose to implement *EquatableInterface*⁴, you determine yourself which properties need to be compared to distinguish your user objects.



Generate the database table for your `User` entity by running:

Listing 85-4 1 \$ php app/console doctrine:schema:update --force

In order to use an instance of the `AcmeUserBundle\User` class in the Symfony security layer, the entity class must implement the *UserInterface*⁵. This interface forces the class to implement the five following methods:

- *getRoles()*⁶
- *getPassword()*⁷
- *getSalt()*⁸
- *getUsername()*⁹
- *eraseCredentials()*¹⁰

For more details on each of these, see *UserInterface*¹¹.

4. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/User/EquatableInterface.html>

5. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/User/UserInterface.html>

6. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/User/UserInterface.html#getRoles\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/User/UserInterface.html#getRoles())

7. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/User/UserInterface.html#getPassword\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/User/UserInterface.html#getPassword())

8. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/User/UserInterface.html#getSalt\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/User/UserInterface.html#getSalt())

9. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/User/UserInterface.html#getUsername\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/User/UserInterface.html#getUsername())

10. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/User/UserInterface.html#eraseCredentials\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/User/UserInterface.html#eraseCredentials())

11. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/User/UserInterface.html>



What is the importance of serialize and unserialize?

The *Serializable*¹² interface and its `serialize` and `unserialize` methods have been added to allow the `User` class to be serialized to the session. This may or may not be needed depending on your setup, but it's probably a good idea. The `id` is the most important value that needs to be serialized because the *refreshUser()*¹³ method reloads the user on each request by using the `id`. In practice, this means that the `User` object is reloaded from the database on each request using the `id` from the serialized object. This makes sure all of the `User`'s data is fresh.

Symfony also uses the `username`, `salt`, and `password` to verify that the `User` has not changed between requests. Failing to serialize these may cause you to be logged out on each request. If your `User` implements *EquatableInterface*¹⁴, then instead of these properties being checked, your `isEqualTo` method is simply called, and you can check whatever properties you want. Unless you understand this, you probably *won't* need to implement this interface or worry about it.

Below is an export of the `User` table from MySQL with user `admin` and password `admin` (which has been encoded). For details on how to create user records and encode their password, see *Encoding the User's Password*.

Listing 85-5

```
1 $ mysql> SELECT * FROM acme_users;
2 +-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
3 | id | username | password | email | is_active |
4 +-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
5 | 1 | admin | d033e22ae348aeb5660fc2140aec35850c4da997 | admin@example.com | 1 |
6 +-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
```

The next part will focus on how to authenticate one of these users thanks to the Doctrine entity user provider and a couple of lines of configuration.



Do you need to use a Salt?

Yes. Hashing a password with a salt is a necessary step so that encoded passwords can't be decoded. However, some encoders - like `Bcrypt` - have a built-in salt mechanism. If you configure `bcrypt` as your encoder in `security.yml` (see the next section), then `getSalt()` should return `null`, so that `Bcrypt` generates the salt itself.

However, if you use an encoder that does *not* have a built-in salting ability (e.g. `sha512`), you *must* (from a security perspective) generate your own, random salt, store it on a `salt` property that is saved to the database, and return it from `getSalt()`. Some of the code needed is commented out in the above example.

Authenticating Someone against a Database

Authenticating a Doctrine user against the database with the Symfony security layer is a piece of cake. Everything resides in the configuration of the *SecurityBundle* stored in the `app/config/security.yml` file.

Below is an example of configuration where the user will enter their username and password via HTTP basic authentication. That information will then be checked against your `User` entity records in the database:

12. <http://php.net/manual/en/class.serializable.php>

13. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Bridge/Doctrine/Security/User/EntityUserProvider.html#refreshUser\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Bridge/Doctrine/Security/User/EntityUserProvider.html#refreshUser())

14. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/User/EquatableInterface.html>

Listing 85-6

```
1 # app/config/security.yml
2 security:
3     encoders:
4         Acme\UserBundle\Entity\User:
5             algorithm: bcrypt
6
7     role_hierarchy:
8         ROLE_ADMIN:       ROLE_USER
9         ROLE_SUPER_ADMIN: [ ROLE_ADMIN, ROLE_ALLOWED_TO_SWITCH ]
10
11     providers:
12         administrators:
13             entity: { class: AcmeUserBundle:User, property: username }
14
15     firewalls:
16         admin_area:
17             pattern:    ^/admin
18             http_basic: ~
19
20     access_control:
21         - { path: ^/admin, roles: ROLE_ADMIN }
```

The **encoders** section associates the **bcrypt** password encoder to the entity class. This means that Symfony will expect the password that's stored in the database to be encoded using this encoder. For details on how to create a new User object with a properly encoded password, see the *Encoding the User's Password* section of the security chapter.



If you're using PHP 5.4 or lower, you'll need to install the **ircmaxell/password-compat** library via Composer in order to be able to use the **bcrypt** encoder:

```
Listing 85-7 {
    "require": {
        ...
        "ircmaxell/password-compat": "~1.0.3"
    }
}
```

The **providers** section defines an **administrators** user provider. A user provider is a "source" of where users are loaded during authentication. In this case, the **entity** keyword means that Symfony will use the Doctrine entity user provider to load User entity objects from the database by using the **username** unique field. In other words, this tells Symfony how to fetch the user from the database before checking the password validity.



By default, the entity provider uses the default entity manager to fetch user information from the database. If you *use multiple entity managers*, you can specify which manager to use with the `manager_name` option:

Listing 85-8

```

1  # app/config/config.yml
2  security:
3      # ...
4
5      providers:
6          administrators:
7              entity:
8                  class: AcmeUserBundle\User
9                  property: username
10                 manager_name: customer
11
12     # ...

```

Forbid inactive Users

If a User's `isActive` property is set to `false` (i.e. `is_active` is 0 in the database), the user will still be able to login access the site normally. To prevent "inactive" users from logging in, you'll need to do a little more work.

The easiest way to exclude inactive users is to implement the *AdvancedUserInterface*¹⁵ interface that takes care of checking the user's account status. The *AdvancedUserInterface*¹⁶ extends the *UserInterface*¹⁷ interface, so you just need to switch to the new interface in the `AcmeUserBundle\User` entity class to benefit from simple and advanced authentication behaviors.

The *AdvancedUserInterface*¹⁸ interface adds four extra methods to validate the account status:

- *isAccountNonExpired()*¹⁹ checks whether the user's account has expired,
- *isAccountNonLocked()*²⁰
checks whether the user is locked,
- *isCredentialsNonExpired()*²¹ checks whether the user's credentials (password) has expired,
- *isEnabled()*²² checks whether the user is enabled.

For this example, the first three methods will return `true` whereas the `isEnabled()` method will return the boolean value in the `isActive` field.

Listing 85-9

```

1  // src/Acme/UserBundle/Entity/User.php
2  namespace Acme\UserBundle\Entity;
3
4  use Doctrine\ORM\Mapping as ORM;
5  use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\User\AdvancedUserInterface;
6

```

15. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/User/AdvancedUserInterface.html>

16. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/User/AdvancedUserInterface.html>

17. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/User/UserInterface.html>

18. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/User/AdvancedUserInterface.html>

19. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/User/AdvancedUserInterface.html#isAccountNonExpired\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/User/AdvancedUserInterface.html#isAccountNonExpired())

20. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/User/AdvancedUserInterface.html#isAccountNonLocked\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/User/AdvancedUserInterface.html#isAccountNonLocked())

21. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/User/AdvancedUserInterface.html#isCredentialsNonExpired\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/User/AdvancedUserInterface.html#isCredentialsNonExpired())

22. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/User/AdvancedUserInterface.html#isEnabled\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/User/AdvancedUserInterface.html#isEnabled())

```

7 class User implements AdvancedUserInterface, \Serializable
8 {
9     // ...
10
11     public function isAccountNonExpired()
12     {
13         return true;
14     }
15
16     public function isAccountNonLocked()
17     {
18         return true;
19     }
20
21     public function isCredentialsNonExpired()
22     {
23         return true;
24     }
25
26     public function isEnabled()
27     {
28         return $this->isActive;
29     }
30 }

```

Now, if you try to authenticate as a user who's `is_active` database field is set to 0, you won't be allowed.



When using the `AdvancedUserInterface`, you should also add any of the properties used by these methods (like `isActive()`) to the `serialize()` method. If you *don't* do this, your user may not be deserialized correctly from the session on each request.

The next session will focus on how to write a custom entity provider to authenticate a user with their username or email address.

Authenticating Someone with a Custom Entity Provider

The next step is to allow a user to authenticate with their username or email address as they are both unique in the database. Unfortunately, the native entity provider is only able to handle a single property to fetch the user from the database.

To accomplish this, create a custom entity provider that looks for a user whose username *or* email field matches the submitted login username. The good news is that a Doctrine repository object can act as an entity user provider if it implements the `UserProviderInterface`²³. This interface comes with three methods to implement: `loadUserByUsername($username)`, `refreshUser(UserInterface $user)`, and `supportsClass($class)`. For more details, see `UserProviderInterface`²⁴.

The code below shows the implementation of the `UserProviderInterface`²⁵ in the `UserRepository` class:

Listing 85-10

```

1 // src/Acme/UserBundle/Entity/UserRepository.php
2 namespace Acme\UserBundle\Entity;

```

23. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/User/UserProviderInterface.html>

24. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/User/UserProviderInterface.html>

25. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/User/UserProviderInterface.html>

```

3
4 use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\User\UserInterface;
5 use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\User\UserProviderInterface;
6 use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\Exception\UsernameNotFoundException;
7 use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\Exception\UnsupportedUserException;
8 use Doctrine\ORM\EntityRepository;
9 use Doctrine\ORM\NoResultException;
10
11 class UserRepository extends EntityRepository implements UserProviderInterface
12 {
13     public function loadUserByUsername($username)
14     {
15         $q = $this
16             ->createQueryBuilder('u')
17             ->where('u.username = :username OR u.email = :email')
18             ->setParameter('username', $username)
19             ->setParameter('email', $username)
20             ->getQuery();
21
22         try {
23             // The Query::getSingleResult() method throws an exception
24             // if there is no record matching the criteria.
25             $user = $q->getSingleResult();
26         } catch (NoResultException $e) {
27             $message = sprintf(
28                 'Unable to find an active admin AcmeUserBundle:User object identified by
29 "%s".',
30                 $username
31             );
32             throw new UsernameNotFoundException($message, 0, $e);
33         }
34
35         return $user;
36     }
37
38     public function refreshUser(UserInterface $user)
39     {
40         $class = get_class($user);
41         if (!$this->supportsClass($class)) {
42             throw new UnsupportedUserException(
43                 sprintf(
44                     'Instances of "%s" are not supported.',
45                     $class
46                 )
47             );
48         }
49
50         return $this->find($user->getId());
51     }
52
53     public function supportsClass($class)
54     {
55         return $this->getEntityName() === $class
56             || is_subclass_of($class, $this->getEntityName());
57     }
58 }

```

To finish the implementation, the configuration of the security layer must be changed to tell Symfony to use the new custom entity provider instead of the generic Doctrine entity provider. It's trivial to achieve

by removing the `property` field in the `security.providers.administrators.entity` section of the `security.yml` file.

Listing 85-11

```
1 # app/config/security.yml
2 security:
3     # ...
4     providers:
5         administrators:
6             entity: { class: AcmeUserBundle:User }
7     # ...
```

By doing this, the security layer will use an instance of `UserRepository` and call its `loadUserByUsername()` method to fetch a user from the database whether they filled in their username or email address.

Managing Roles in the Database

The end of this tutorial focuses on how to store and retrieve a list of roles from the database. As mentioned previously, when your user is loaded, its `getRoles()` method returns the array of security roles that should be assigned to the user. You can load this data from anywhere - a hardcoded list used for all users (e.g. `array('ROLE_USER')`), a Doctrine array property called `roles`, or via a Doctrine relationship, as you'll learn about in this section.



In a typical setup, you should always return at least 1 role from the `getRoles()` method. By convention, a role called `ROLE_USER` is usually returned. If you fail to return any roles, it may appear as if your user isn't authenticated at all.



In order to work with the security configuration examples on this page all roles must be prefixed with `ROLE_` (see the *section about roles* in the book). For example, your roles will be `ROLE_ADMIN` or `ROLE_USER` instead of `ADMIN` or `USER`.

In this example, the `AcmeUserBundle:User` entity class defines a many-to-many relationship with a `AcmeUserBundle:Role` entity class. A user can be related to several roles and a role can be composed of one or more users. The previous `getRoles()` method now returns the list of related roles. Notice that `__construct()` and `getRoles()` methods have changed:

Listing 85-12

```
1 // src/Acme/UserBundle/Entity/User.php
2 namespace Acme\UserBundle\Entity;
3
4 use Doctrine\Common\Collections\ArrayCollection;
5 // ...
6
7 class User implements AdvancedUserInterface, \Serializable
8 {
9     // ...
10
11     /**
12      * @ORM\ManyToMany(targetEntity="Role", inversedBy="users")
13      *
14      */
15     private $roles;
16
```

```

17     public function __construct()
18     {
19         $this->roles = new ArrayCollection();
20     }
21
22     public function getRoles()
23     {
24         return $this->roles->toArray();
25     }
26
27     // ...
28
29 }

```

The `AcmeUserBundle:Role` entity class defines three fields (`id`, `name` and `role`). The unique `role` field contains the role name (e.g. `ROLE_ADMIN`) used by the Symfony security layer to secure parts of the application:

Listing 85-13

```

1  // src/Acme/Bundle/UserBundle/Entity/Role.php
2  namespace Acme\UserBundle\Entity;
3
4  use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\Role\RoleInterface;
5  use Doctrine\Common\Collections\ArrayCollection;
6  use Doctrine\ORM\Mapping as ORM;
7
8  /**
9   * @ORM\Table(name="acme_role")
10  * @ORM\Entity()
11  */
12  class Role implements RoleInterface
13  {
14      /**
15       * @ORM\Column(name="id", type="integer")
16       * @ORM\Id()
17       * @ORM\GeneratedValue(strategy="AUTO")
18       */
19      private $id;
20
21      /**
22       * @ORM\Column(name="name", type="string", length=30)
23       */
24      private $name;
25
26      /**
27       * @ORM\Column(name="role", type="string", length=20, unique=true)
28       */
29      private $role;
30
31      /**
32       * @ORM\ManyToMany(targetEntity="User", mappedBy="roles")
33       */
34      private $users;
35
36      public function __construct()
37      {
38          $this->users = new ArrayCollection();
39      }
40

```

```

41     /**
42      * @see RoleInterface
43      */
44     public function getRole()
45     {
46         return $this->role;
47     }
48
49     // ... getters and setters for each property
50 }

```

For brevity, the getter and setter methods are hidden, but you can *generate them*:

Listing 85-14 1 `$ php app/console doctrine:generate:entities Acme/UserBundle/Entity/User`

Don't forget also to update your database schema:

Listing 85-15 1 `$ php app/console doctrine:schema:update --force`

This will create the `acme_role` table and a `user_role` that stores the many-to-many relationship between `acme_user` and `acme_role`. If you had one user linked to one role, your database might look something like this:

Listing 85-16 1 `$ mysql> SELECT * FROM acme_role;`

id	name	role
1	admin	ROLE_ADMIN

7 `$ mysql> SELECT * FROM user_role;`

user_id	role_id
1	1

13

And that's it! When the user logs in, Symfony security system will call the `User::getRoles` method. This will return an array of `Role` objects that Symfony will use to determine if the user should have access to certain parts of the system.



What's the purpose of the RoleInterface?

Notice that the `Role` class implements *RoleInterface*²⁶. This is because Symfony's security system requires that the `User::getRoles` method returns an array of either role strings or objects that implement this interface. If `Role` didn't implement this interface, then `User::getRoles` would need to iterate over all the `Role` objects, call `getRole` on each, and create an array of strings to return. Both approaches are valid and equivalent.

26. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/Role/RoleInterface.html>

Improving Performance with a Join

To improve performance and avoid lazy loading of roles when retrieving a user from the custom entity provider, you can use a Doctrine join to the roles relationship in the `UserRepository::loadUserByUsername()` method. This will fetch the user and their associated roles with a single query:

```
Listing 85-17 1 // src/Acme/UserBundle/Entity/UserRepository.php
2 namespace Acme\UserBundle\Entity;
3
4 // ...
5
6 class UserRepository extends EntityRepository implements UserProviderInterface
7 {
8     public function loadUserByUsername($username)
9     {
10         $q = $this
11             ->createQueryBuilder('u')
12             ->select('u, r')
13             ->leftJoin('u.roles', 'r')
14             ->where('u.username = :username OR u.email = :email')
15             ->setParameter('username', $username)
16             ->setParameter('email', $username)
17             ->getQuery();
18
19         // ...
20     }
21
22     // ...
23 }
```

The `QueryBuilder::leftJoin()` method joins and fetches related roles from the `AcmeUserBundle:User` model class when a user is retrieved by their email address or username.

Understanding serialize and how a User is Saved in the Session

If you're curious about the importance of the `serialize()` method inside the `User` class or how the `User` object is serialized or deserialized, then this section is for you. If not, feel free to skip this.

Once the user is logged in, the entire `User` object is serialized into the session. On the next request, the `User` object is deserialized. Then, value of the `id` property is used to re-query for a fresh `User` object from the database. Finally, the fresh `User` object is compared in some way to the deserialized `User` object to make sure that they represent the same user. For example, if the `username` on the 2 `User` objects doesn't match for some reason, then the user will be logged out for security reasons.

Even though this all happens automatically, there are a few important side-effects.

First, the *Serializable*²⁷ interface and its `serialize` and `unserialize` methods have been added to allow the `User` class to be serialized to the session. This may or may not be needed depending on your setup, but it's probably a good idea. In theory, only the `id` needs to be serialized, because the *refreshUser()*²⁸ method refreshes the user on each request by using the `id` (as explained above). However in practice, this means that the `User` object is reloaded from the database on each request using the `id` from the serialized object. This makes sure all of the `User`'s data is fresh.

Symfony also uses the `username`, `salt`, and `password` to verify that the `User` has not changed between requests. Failing to serialize these may cause you to be logged out on each request. If your `User`

27. <http://php.net/manual/en/class.serializable.php>

28. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Bridge/Doctrine/Security/User/EntityUserProvider.html#refreshUser\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Bridge/Doctrine/Security/User/EntityUserProvider.html#refreshUser())

implements the *EquatableInterface*²⁹, then instead of these properties being checked, your `isEqualTo` method is simply called, and you can check whatever properties you want. Unless you understand this, you probably *won't* need to implement this interface or worry about it.



New in version 2.1: In Symfony 2.1, the `equals` method was removed from `UserInterface` and the `EquatableInterface` was introduced in its place.

29. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/User/EquatableInterface.html>



Chapter 86

How to Add "Remember Me" Login Functionality

Once a user is authenticated, their credentials are typically stored in the session. This means that when the session ends they will be logged out and have to provide their login details again next time they wish to access the application. You can allow users to choose to stay logged in for longer than the session lasts using a cookie with the `remember_me` firewall option. The firewall needs to have a secret key configured, which is used to encrypt the cookie's content. It also has several options with default values which are shown here:

Listing 86-1

```
1 # app/config/security.yml
2 firewalls:
3     main:
4         remember_me:
5             key: "%secret%"
6             lifetime: 31536000 # 365 days in seconds
7             path: /
8             domain: ~ # Defaults to the current domain from $_SERVER
```

It's a good idea to provide the user with the option to use or not use the remember me functionality, as it will not always be appropriate. The usual way of doing this is to add a checkbox to the login form. By giving the checkbox the name `_remember_me`, the cookie will automatically be set when the checkbox is checked and the user successfully logs in. So, your specific login form might ultimately look like this:

Listing 86-2

```
1 {% src/Acme/SecurityBundle/Resources/views/Security/login.html.twig %}
2 {% if error %}
3     <div>{{ error.message }}</div>
4 {% endif %}
5
6 <form action="{{ path('login_check') }}" method="post">
7     <label for="username">Username:</label>
8     <input type="text" id="username" name="_username" value="{{ last_username }}" />
9
10    <label for="password">Password:</label>
```

```

11     <input type="password" id="password" name="_password" />
12
13     <input type="checkbox" id="remember_me" name="_remember_me" checked />
14     <label for="remember_me">Keep me logged in</label>
15
16     <input type="submit" name="login" />
17 </form>

```

The user will then automatically be logged in on subsequent visits while the cookie remains valid.

Forcing the User to Re-authenticate before Accessing certain Resources

When the user returns to your site, they are authenticated automatically based on the information stored in the remember me cookie. This allows the user to access protected resources as if the user had actually authenticated upon visiting the site.

In some cases, however, you may want to force the user to actually re-authenticate before accessing certain resources. For example, you might allow "remember me" users to see basic account information, but then require them to actually re-authenticate before modifying that information.

The Security component provides an easy way to do this. In addition to roles explicitly assigned to them, users are automatically given one of the following roles depending on how they are authenticated:

- `IS_AUTHENTICATED_ANONYMOUSLY` - automatically assigned to a user who is in a firewall protected part of the site but who has not actually logged in. This is only possible if anonymous access has been allowed.
- `IS_AUTHENTICATED_REMEMBERED` - automatically assigned to a user who was authenticated via a remember me cookie.
- `IS_AUTHENTICATED_FULLY` - automatically assigned to a user that has provided their login details during the current session.

You can use these to control access beyond the explicitly assigned roles.



If you have the `IS_AUTHENTICATED_REMEMBERED` role, then you also have the `IS_AUTHENTICATED_ANONYMOUSLY` role. If you have the `IS_AUTHENTICATED_FULLY` role, then you also have the other two roles. In other words, these roles represent three levels of increasing "strength" of authentication.

You can use these additional roles for finer grained control over access to parts of a site. For example, you may want your user to be able to view their account at `/account` when authenticated by cookie but to have to provide their login details to be able to edit the account details. You can do this by securing specific controller actions using these roles. The edit action in the controller could be secured using the service context.

In the following example, the action is only allowed if the user has the `IS_AUTHENTICATED_FULLY` role.

Listing 86-3

```

1  // ...
2  use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\Exception\AccessDeniedException
3
4  public function editAction()
5  {
6      if (false === $this->get('security.context')->isGranted(
7          'IS_AUTHENTICATED_FULLY'
8      )) {
9          throw new AccessDeniedException();

```

```

10     }
11
12     // ...
13 }

```

You can also choose to install and use the optional *JMSecurityExtraBundle*¹, which can secure your controller using annotations:

Listing 86-4

```

1 use JMS\SecurityExtraBundle\Annotation\Secure;
2
3 /**
4  * @Secure(roles="IS_AUTHENTICATED_FULLY")
5  */
6 public function editAction($name)
7 {
8     // ...
9 }

```



If you also had an access control in your security configuration that required the user to have a `ROLE_USER` role in order to access any of the account area, then you'd have the following situation:

- If a non-authenticated (or anonymously authenticated user) tries to access the account area, the user will be asked to authenticate.
- Once the user has entered their username and password, assuming the user receives the `ROLE_USER` role per your configuration, the user will have the `IS_AUTHENTICATED_FULLY` role and be able to access any page in the account section, including the `editAction` controller.
- If the user's session ends, when the user returns to the site, they will be able to access every account page - except for the edit page - without being forced to re-authenticate. However, when they try to access the `editAction` controller, they will be forced to re-authenticate, since they are not, yet, fully authenticated.

For more information on securing services or methods in this way, see *How to Secure any Service or Method in your Application*.

1. <https://github.com/schmittjoh/JMSecurityExtraBundle>



Chapter 87

How to Impersonate a User

Sometimes, it's useful to be able to switch from one user to another without having to log out and log in again (for instance when you are debugging or trying to understand a bug a user sees that you can't reproduce). This can be easily done by activating the `switch_user` firewall listener:

Listing 87-1

```
1 # app/config/security.yml
2 security:
3     firewalls:
4         main:
5             # ...
6             switch_user: true
```

To switch to another user, just add a query string with the `_switch_user` parameter and the username as the value to the current URL:

Listing 87-2

```
1 http://example.com/somewhere?_switch_user=thomas
```

To switch back to the original user, use the special `_exit` username:

Listing 87-3

```
1 http://example.com/somewhere?_switch_user=_exit
```

During impersonation, the user is provided with a special role called `ROLE_PREVIOUS_ADMIN`. In a template, for instance, this role can be used to show a link to exit impersonation:

Listing 87-4

```
1 {% if is_granted('ROLE_PREVIOUS_ADMIN') %}
2     <a href="{{ path('homepage', {'_switch_user': '_exit'}) }}">Exit impersonation</a>
3 {% endif %}
```

Of course, this feature needs to be made available to a small group of users. By default, access is restricted to users having the `ROLE_ALLOWED_TO_SWITCH` role. The name of this role can be modified via the `role` setting. For extra security, you can also change the query parameter name via the `parameter` setting:

Listing 87-5

```
1 # app/config/security.yml
2 security:
3     firewalls:
4         main:
5             # ...
6             switch_user: { role: ROLE_ADMIN, parameter: _want_to_be_this_user }
```



Chapter 88

How to Implement your own Voter to Blacklist IP Addresses

The Symfony Security component provides several layers to authorize users. One of the layers is called a "voter". A voter is a dedicated class that checks if the user has the rights to connect to the application or access a specific resource/URL. For instance, Symfony provides a layer that checks if the user is fully authorized or if it has some expected roles.

It is sometimes useful to create a custom voter to handle a specific case not handled by the framework. In this section, you'll learn how to create a voter that will allow you to blacklist users by their IP.

The Voter Interface

A custom voter must implement *VoterInterface*¹, which requires the following three methods:

Listing 88-1

```
1 interface VoterInterface
2 {
3     public function supportsAttribute($attribute);
4     public function supportsClass($class);
5     public function vote(TokenInterface $token, $object, array $attributes);
6 }
```

The *supportsAttribute()*² method is used to check if the voter supports the given user attribute (i.e: a role like `ROLE_USER`, an `ACL EDIT`, etc.).

The *supportsClass()*³ method is used to check if the voter supports the class of the object whose access is being checked.

The *vote()*⁴ method must implement the business logic that verifies whether or not the user has access. This method must return one of the following values:

-
1. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/Authorization/Voter/VoterInterface.html>
 2. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/Authorization/Voter/VoterInterface.html#supportsAttribute\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/Authorization/Voter/VoterInterface.html#supportsAttribute())
 3. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/Authorization/Voter/VoterInterface.html#supportsClass\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/Authorization/Voter/VoterInterface.html#supportsClass())
 4. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/Authorization/Voter/VoterInterface.html#vote\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/Authorization/Voter/VoterInterface.html#vote())

- `VoterInterface::ACCESS_GRANTED`: The authorization will be granted by this voter;
- `VoterInterface::ACCESS_ABSTAIN`: The voter cannot decide if authorization should be granted;
- `VoterInterface::ACCESS_DENIED`: The authorization will be denied by this voter.

In this example, you'll check if the user's IP address matches against a list of blacklisted addresses and "something" will be the application. If the user's IP is blacklisted, you'll return `VoterInterface::ACCESS_DENIED`, otherwise you'll return `VoterInterface::ACCESS_ABSTAIN` as this voter's purpose is only to deny access, not to grant access.

Creating a custom Voter

To blacklist a user based on its IP, you can use the `request_stack` service and compare the IP address against a set of blacklisted IP addresses:

Listing 88-2

```

1  // src/Acme/DemoBundle/Security/Authorization/Voter/ClientIpVoter.php
2  namespace Acme\DemoBundle\Security\Authorization\Voter;
3
4  use Symfony\Component\HttpFoundation\RequestStack;
5  use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\Authorization\Voter\VoterInterface;
6  use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\Authentication\Token\TokenInterface;
7
8  class ClientIpVoter implements VoterInterface
9  {
10     protected $requestStack;
11     private $blacklistedIp;
12
13     public function __construct(RequestStack $requestStack, array $blacklistedIp = array())
14     {
15         $this->requestStack = $requestStack;
16         $this->blacklistedIp = $blacklistedIp;
17     }
18
19     public function supportsAttribute($attribute)
20     {
21         // you won't check against a user attribute, so return true
22         return true;
23     }
24
25     public function supportsClass($class)
26     {
27         // your voter supports all type of token classes, so return true
28         return true;
29     }
30
31     public function vote(TokenInterface $token, $object, array $attributes)
32     {
33         $request = $this->requestStack->getCurrentRequest();
34         if (in_array($request->getClientIp(), $this->blacklistedIp)) {
35             return VoterInterface::ACCESS_DENIED;
36         }
37
38         return VoterInterface::ACCESS_ABSTAIN;
39     }
40 }
```

That's it! The voter is done. The next step is to inject the voter into the security layer. This can be done easily through the service container.



Your implementation of the methods `supportsAttribute()`⁵ and `supportsClass()`⁶ are not being called internally by the framework. Once you have registered your voter the `vote()` method will always be called, regardless of whether or not these two methods return true. Therefore you need to call those methods in your implementation of the `vote()` method and return `ACCESS_ABSTAIN` if your voter does not support the class or attribute.

Declaring the Voter as a Service

To inject the voter into the security layer, you must declare it as a service, and tag it as a `security.voter`:

Listing 88-3

```
1 # src/Acme/AcmeBundle/Resources/config/services.yml
2 services:
3     security.access.blacklist_voter:
4         class:      Acme\DemoBundle\Security\Authorization\Voter\ClientIpVoter
5         arguments:  ["@request_stack", [123.123.123.123, 171.171.171.171]]
6         public:     false
7         tags:
8             - { name: security.voter }
```



Be sure to import this configuration file from your main application configuration file (e.g. `app/config/config.yml`). For more information see *Importing Configuration with imports*. To read more about defining services in general, see the *Service Container* chapter.

Changing the Access Decision Strategy

In order for the new voter to take effect, you need to change the default access decision strategy, which, by default, grants access if *any* voter grants access.

In this case, choose the `unanimous` strategy. Unlike the `affirmative` strategy (the default), with the `unanimous` strategy, if only one voter denies access (e.g. the `ClientIpVoter`), access is not granted to the end user.

To do that, override the default `access_decision_manager` section of your application configuration file with the following code.

Listing 88-4

```
1 # app/config/security.yml
2 security:
3     access_decision_manager:
4         # strategy can be: affirmative, unanimous or consensus
5         strategy: unanimous
```

That's it! Now, when deciding whether or not a user should have access, the new voter will deny access to any user in the list of blacklisted IPs.

For a more advanced usage see Access Decision Manager.

5. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/Authorization/Voter/VoterInterface.html#supportsAttribute\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/Authorization/Voter/VoterInterface.html#supportsAttribute())

6. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/Authorization/Voter/VoterInterface.html#supportsClass\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/Authorization/Voter/VoterInterface.html#supportsClass())



Chapter 89

How to Use Voters to Check User Permissions

In Symfony, you can check the permission to access data by using the *ACL module*, which is a bit overwhelming for many applications. A much easier solution is to work with custom voters, which are like simple conditional statements.

Voters can also be used in other ways, like, for example, blacklisting IP addresses from the entire application: How to Implement your own Voter to Blacklist IP Addresses.



Take a look at the *authorization* chapter for an even deeper understanding on voters.

How Symfony Uses Voters

In order to use voters, you have to understand how Symfony works with them. All voters are called each time you use the `isGranted()` method on Symfony's security context (i.e. the `security.context` service). Each one decides if the current user should have access to some resource.

Ultimately, Symfony uses one of three different approaches on what to do with the feedback from all voters: affirmative, consensus and unanimous.

For more information take a look at *the section about access decision managers*.

The Voter Interface

A custom voter must implement *VoterInterface*¹, which has this structure:

Listing 89-1

```
1 interface VoterInterface
2 {
```

1. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/Authorization/Voter/VoterInterface.html>

```

3     public function supportsAttribute($attribute);
4     public function supportsClass($class);
5     public function vote(TokenInterface $token, $object, array $attributes);
6 }

```

The *supportsAttribute()*² method is used to check if the voter supports the given user attribute (i.e: a role like `ROLE_USER`, an `ACL EDIT`, etc.).

The *supportsClass()*³ method is used to check if the voter supports the class of the object whose access is being checked.

The *vote()*⁴ method must implement the business logic that verifies whether or not the user has access. This method must return one of the following values:

- `VoterInterface::ACCESS_GRANTED`: The authorization will be granted by this voter;
- `VoterInterface::ACCESS_ABSTAIN`: The voter cannot decide if authorization should be granted;
- `VoterInterface::ACCESS_DENIED`: The authorization will be denied by this voter.

In this example, the voter will check if the user has access to a specific object according to your custom conditions (e.g. they must be the owner of the object). If the condition fails, you'll return `VoterInterface::ACCESS_DENIED`, otherwise you'll return `VoterInterface::ACCESS_GRANTED`. In case the responsibility for this decision does not belong to this voter, it will return `VoterInterface::ACCESS_ABSTAIN`.

Creating the custom Voter

The goal is to create a voter that checks if a user has access to view or edit a particular object. Here's an example implementation:

Listing 89-2

```

1 // src/Acme/DemoBundle/Security/Authorization/Voter/PostVoter.php
2 namespace Acme\DemoBundle\Security\Authorization\Voter;
3
4 use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\Authorization\Voter\VoterInterface;
5 use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\Authentication\Token\TokenInterface;
6 use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\User\UserInterface;
7
8 class PostVoter implements VoterInterface
9 {
10     const VIEW = 'view';
11     const EDIT = 'edit';
12
13     public function supportsAttribute($attribute)
14     {
15         return in_array($attribute, array(
16             self::VIEW,
17             self::EDIT,
18         ));
19     }
20
21     public function supportsClass($class)
22     {

```

2. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/Authorization/Voter/VoterInterface.html#supportsAttribute\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/Authorization/Voter/VoterInterface.html#supportsAttribute())

3. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/Authorization/Voter/VoterInterface.html#supportsClass\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/Authorization/Voter/VoterInterface.html#supportsClass())

4. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/Authorization/Voter/VoterInterface.html#vote\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/Authorization/Voter/VoterInterface.html#vote())

```

23     $supportedClass = 'Acme\DemoBundle\Entity\Post';
24
25     return $supportedClass === $class || is_subclass_of($class, $supportedClass);
26 }
27
28 /**
29  * @var \Acme\DemoBundle\Entity\Post $post
30  */
31 public function vote(TokenInterface $token, $post, array $attributes)
32 {
33     // check if class of this object is supported by this voter
34     if (!$this->supportsClass(get_class($post))) {
35         return VoterInterface::ACCESS_ABSTAIN;
36     }
37
38     // check if the voter is used correct, only allow one attribute
39     // this isn't a requirement, it's just one easy way for you to
40     // design your voter
41     if (1 !== count($attributes)) {
42         throw new \InvalidArgumentException(
43             'Only one attribute is allowed for VIEW or EDIT'
44         );
45     }
46
47     // set the attribute to check against
48     $attribute = $attributes[0];
49
50     // check if the given attribute is covered by this voter
51     if (!$this->supportsAttribute($attribute)) {
52         return VoterInterface::ACCESS_ABSTAIN;
53     }
54
55     // get current logged in user
56     $user = $token->getUser();
57
58     // make sure there is a user object (i.e. that the user is logged in)
59     if (!$user instanceof UserInterface) {
60         return VoterInterface::ACCESS_DENIED;
61     }
62
63     switch($attribute) {
64         case self::VIEW:
65             // the data object could have for example a method isPrivate()
66             // which checks the Boolean attribute $private
67             if (!$post->isPrivate()) {
68                 return VoterInterface::ACCESS_GRANTED;
69             }
70             break;
71
72         case self::EDIT:
73             // we assume that our data object has a method getOwner() to
74             // get the current owner user entity for this data object
75             if ($user->getId() === $post->getOwner()->getId()) {
76                 return VoterInterface::ACCESS_GRANTED;
77             }
78             break;
79     }
80
81     return VoterInterface::ACCESS_DENIED;

```



```
82     }
83 }
```

That's it! The voter is done. The next step is to inject the voter into the security layer.

Declaring the Voter as a Service

To inject the voter into the security layer, you must declare it as a service and tag it with `security.voter`:

Listing 89-3

```
1 # src/Acme/DemoBundle/Resources/config/services.yml
2 services:
3     security.access.post_voter:
4         class:      Acme\DemoBundle\Security\Authorization\Voter\PostVoter
5         public:     false
6         tags:
7             - { name: security.voter }
```

How to Use the Voter in a Controller

The registered voter will then always be asked as soon as the method `isGranted()` from the security context is called.

Listing 89-4

```
1 // src/Acme/DemoBundle/Controller/PostController.php
2 namespace Acme\DemoBundle\Controller;
3
4 use Symfony\Bundle\FrameworkBundle\Controller\Controller;
5 use Symfony\Component\HttpFoundation\Response;
6 use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\Exception\AccessDeniedException;
7
8 class PostController extends Controller
9 {
10     public function showAction($id)
11     {
12         // get a Post instance
13         $post = ...;
14
15         // keep in mind, this will call all registered security voters
16         if (false === $this->get('security.context')->isGranted('view', $post)) {
17             throw new AccessDeniedException('Unauthorised access!');
18         }
19
20         return new Response('<h1>'.$post->getName().'</h1>');
21     }
22 }
```

It's that easy!



Chapter 90

How to Use Access Control Lists (ACLs)

In complex applications, you will often face the problem that access decisions cannot only be based on the person (**Token**) who is requesting access, but also involve a domain object that access is being requested for. This is where the ACL system comes in.



Alternatives to ACLs

Using ACL's isn't trivial, and for simpler use cases, it may be overkill. If your permission logic could be described by just writing some code (e.g. to check if a **Blog** is owned by the current **User**), then consider using *voters*. A voter is passed the object being voted on, which you can use to make complex decisions and effectively implement your own ACL. Enforcing authorization (e.g. the **isGranted** part) will look similar to what you see in this entry, but your voter class will handle the logic behind the scenes, instead of the ACL system.

Imagine you are designing a blog system where your users can comment on your posts. Now, you want a user to be able to edit their own comments, but not those of other users; besides, you yourself want to be able to edit all comments. In this scenario, **Comment** would be the domain object that you want to restrict access to. You could take several approaches to accomplish this using Symfony, two basic approaches are (non-exhaustive):

- *Enforce security in your business methods*: Basically, that means keeping a reference inside each **Comment** to all users who have access, and then compare these users to the provided **Token**.
- *Enforce security with roles*: In this approach, you would add a role for each **Comment** object, i.e. **ROLE_COMMENT_1**, **ROLE_COMMENT_2**, etc.

Both approaches are perfectly valid. However, they couple your authorization logic to your business code which makes it less reusable elsewhere, and also increases the difficulty of unit testing. Besides, you could run into performance issues if many users would have access to a single domain object.

Fortunately, there is a better way, which you will find out about now.

Bootstrapping

Now, before you can finally get into action, you need to do some bootstrapping. First, you need to configure the connection the ACL system is supposed to use:

Listing 90-1

```
1 # app/config/security.yml
2 security:
3     acl:
4         connection: default
```



The ACL system requires a connection from either Doctrine DBAL (usable by default) or Doctrine MongoDB (usable with *MongoDBAclBundle*¹). However, that does not mean that you have to use Doctrine ORM or ODM for mapping your domain objects. You can use whatever mapper you like for your objects, be it Doctrine ORM, MongoDB ODM, Propel, raw SQL, etc. The choice is yours.

After the connection is configured, you have to import the database structure. Fortunately, there is a task for this. Simply run the following command:

Listing 90-2

```
1 $ php app/console init:acl
```

Getting Started

Coming back to the small example from the beginning, you can now implement ACL for it.

Once the ACL is created, you can grant access to objects by creating an Access Control Entity (ACE) to solidify the relationship between the entity and your user.

Creating an ACL and Adding an ACE

Listing 90-3

```
1 // src/Acme/DemoBundle/Controller/BlogController.php
2 namespace Acme\DemoBundle\Controller;
3
4 use Symfony\Bundle\FrameworkBundle\Controller\Controller;
5 use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\Exception\AccessDeniedException;
6 use Symfony\Component\Security\Acl\Domain\ObjectIdentity;
7 use Symfony\Component\Security\Acl\Domain\UserSecurityIdentity;
8 use Symfony\Component\Security\Acl\Permission\MaskBuilder;
9
10 class BlogController extends Controller
11 {
12     // ...
13
14     public function addCommentAction(Post $post)
15     {
16         $comment = new Comment();
17
18         // ... setup $form, and submit data
19
20         if ($form->isValid()) {
21             $entityManager = $this->getDoctrine()->getManager();
```

1. <https://github.com/IamPersistent/MongoDBAclBundle>

```

22     $entityManager->persist($comment);
23     $entityManager->flush();
24
25     // creating the ACL
26     $aclProvider = $this->get('security.acl.provider');
27     $objectIdentity = ObjectIdentity::fromDomainObject($comment);
28     $acl = $aclProvider->createAcl($objectIdentity);
29
30     // retrieving the security identity of the currently logged-in user
31     $securityContext = $this->get('security.context');
32     $user = $securityContext->getToken()->getUser();
33     $securityIdentity = UserSecurityIdentity::fromAccount($user);
34
35     // grant owner access
36     $acl->insertObjectAce($securityIdentity, MaskBuilder::MASK_OWNER);
37     $aclProvider->updateAcl($acl);
38 }
39 }
40 }

```

There are a couple of important implementation decisions in this code snippet. For now, I only want to highlight two:

First, you may have noticed that `->createAcl()` does not accept domain objects directly, but only implementations of the `ObjectIdentityInterface`. This additional step of indirection allows you to work with ACLs even when you have no actual domain object instance at hand. This will be extremely helpful if you want to check permissions for a large number of objects without actually hydrating these objects.

The other interesting part is the `->insertObjectAce()` call. In the example, you are granting the user who is currently logged in owner access to the `Comment`. The `MaskBuilder::MASK_OWNER` is a pre-defined integer bitmask; don't worry the mask builder will abstract away most of the technical details, but using this technique you can store many different permissions in one database row which gives a considerable boost in performance.



The order in which ACEs are checked is significant. As a general rule, you should place more specific entries at the beginning.

Checking Access

Listing 90-4

```

1  // src/Acme/DemoBundle/Controller/BlogController.php
2
3  // ...
4
5  class BlogController
6  {
7      // ...
8
9      public function editCommentAction(Comment $comment)
10     {
11         $securityContext = $this->get('security.context');
12
13         // check for edit access
14         if (false === $securityContext->isGranted('EDIT', $comment)) {

```

```

15         throw new AccessDeniedException();
16     }
17
18     // ... retrieve actual comment object, and do your editing here
19 }
20 }

```

In this example, you check whether the user has the **EDIT** permission. Internally, Symfony maps the permission to several integer bitmasks, and checks whether the user has any of them.



You can define up to 32 base permissions (depending on your OS PHP might vary between 30 to 32). In addition, you can also define cumulative permissions.

Cumulative Permissions

In the first example above, you only granted the user the **OWNER** base permission. While this effectively also allows the user to perform any operation such as view, edit, etc. on the domain object, there are cases where you may want to grant these permissions explicitly.

The **MaskBuilder** can be used for creating bit masks easily by combining several base permissions:

Listing 90-5

```

1 $builder = new MaskBuilder();
2 $builder
3     ->add('view')
4     ->add('edit')
5     ->add('delete')
6     ->add('undelete')
7 ;
8 $mask = $builder->get(); // int(29)

```

This integer bitmask can then be used to grant a user the base permissions you added above:

Listing 90-6

```

1 $identity = new UserSecurityIdentity('johannes', 'Acme\UserBundle\Entity\User');
2 $acl->insertObjectAce($identity, $mask);

```

The user is now allowed to view, edit, delete, and un-delete objects.



Chapter 91

How to Use advanced ACL Concepts

The aim of this chapter is to give a more in-depth view of the ACL system, and also explain some of the design decisions behind it.

Design Concepts

Symfony's object instance security capabilities are based on the concept of an Access Control List. Every domain object **instance** has its own ACL. The ACL instance holds a detailed list of Access Control Entries (ACEs) which are used to make access decisions. Symfony's ACL system focuses on two main objectives:

- providing a way to efficiently retrieve a large amount of ACLs/ACEs for your domain objects, and to modify them;
- providing a way to easily make decisions of whether a person is allowed to perform an action on a domain object or not.

As indicated by the first point, one of the main capabilities of Symfony's ACL system is a high-performance way of retrieving ACLs/ACEs. This is extremely important since each ACL might have several ACEs, and inherit from another ACL in a tree-like fashion. Therefore, no ORM is leveraged, instead the default implementation interacts with your connection directly using Doctrine's DBAL.

Object Identities

The ACL system is completely decoupled from your domain objects. They don't even have to be stored in the same database, or on the same server. In order to achieve this decoupling, in the ACL system your objects are represented through object identity objects. Every time you want to retrieve the ACL for a domain object, the ACL system will first create an object identity from your domain object, and then pass this object identity to the ACL provider for further processing.

Security Identities

This is analog to the object identity, but represents a user, or a role in your application. Each role, or user has its own security identity.



New in version 2.5: For users, the security identity is based on the username. This means that, if for any reason, a user's username was to change, you must ensure its security identity is updated too. The `MutableAclProvider::updateUserSecurityIdentity()`¹ method is there to handle the update, it was introduced in Symfony 2.5.

Database Table Structure

The default implementation uses five database tables as listed below. The tables are ordered from least rows to most rows in a typical application:

- `acl_security_identities`: This table records all security identities (SID) which hold ACEs. The default implementation ships with two security identities: `RoleSecurityIdentity`² and `UserSecurityIdentity`³.
- `acl_classes`: This table maps class names to a unique ID which can be referenced from other tables.
- `acl_object_identities`: Each row in this table represents a single domain object instance.
- `acl_object_identity_ancestors`: This table allows all the ancestors of an ACL to be determined in a very efficient way.
- `acl_entries`: This table contains all ACEs. This is typically the table with the most rows. It can contain tens of millions without significantly impacting performance.

Scope of Access Control Entries

Access control entries can have different scopes in which they apply. In Symfony, there are basically two different scopes:

- Class-Scope: These entries apply to all objects with the same class.
- Object-Scope: This was the scope solely used in the previous chapter, and it only applies to one specific object.

Sometimes, you will find the need to apply an ACE only to a specific field of the object. Suppose you want the ID only to be viewable by an administrator, but not by your customer service. To solve this common problem, two more sub-scopes have been added:

- Class-Field-Scope: These entries apply to all objects with the same class, but only to a specific field of the objects.
- Object-Field-Scope: These entries apply to a specific object, and only to a specific field of that object.

Pre-Authorization Decisions

For pre-authorization decisions, that is decisions made before any secure method (or secure action) is invoked, the proven `AccessDecisionManager` service is used. The `AccessDecisionManager` is also used for reaching authorization decisions based on roles. Just like roles, the ACL system adds several new attributes which may be used to check for different permissions.

1. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Acl/Dbal/MutableAclProvider.html#updateUserSecurityIdentity\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Acl/Dbal/MutableAclProvider.html#updateUserSecurityIdentity())

2. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Acl/Domain/RoleSecurityIdentity.html>

3. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Acl/Domain/UserSecurityIdentity.html>

Built-in Permission Map

Attribute	Intended Meaning	Integer Bitmasks
VIEW	Whether someone is allowed to view the domain object.	VIEW, EDIT, OPERATOR, MASTER, or OWNER
EDIT	Whether someone is allowed to make changes to the domain object.	EDIT, OPERATOR, MASTER, or OWNER
CREATE	Whether someone is allowed to create the domain object.	CREATE, OPERATOR, MASTER, or OWNER
DELETE	Whether someone is allowed to delete the domain object.	DELETE, OPERATOR, MASTER, or OWNER
UNDELETE	Whether someone is allowed to restore a previously deleted domain object.	UNDELETE, OPERATOR, MASTER, or OWNER
OPERATOR	Whether someone is allowed to perform all of the above actions.	OPERATOR, MASTER, or OWNER
MASTER	Whether someone is allowed to perform all of the above actions, and in addition is allowed to grant any of the above permissions to others.	MASTER, or OWNER
OWNER	Whether someone owns the domain object. An owner can perform any of the above actions <i>and</i> grant master and owner permissions.	OWNER

Permission Attributes vs. Permission Bitmasks

Attributes are used by the AccessDecisionManager, just like roles. Often, these attributes represent in fact an aggregate of integer bitmasks. Integer bitmasks on the other hand, are used by the ACL system internally to efficiently store your users' permissions in the database, and perform access checks using extremely fast bitmask operations.

Extensibility

The above permission map is by no means static, and theoretically could be completely replaced at will. However, it should cover most problems you encounter, and for interoperability with other bundles, you are encouraged to stick to the meaning envisaged for them.

Post Authorization Decisions

Post authorization decisions are made after a secure method has been invoked, and typically involve the domain object which is returned by such a method. After invocation providers also allow to modify, or filter the domain object before it is returned.

Due to current limitations of the PHP language, there are no post-authorization capabilities build into the core Security component. However, there is an experimental *JMSSecurityExtraBundle*⁴ which adds these capabilities. See its documentation for further information on how this is accomplished.

Process for Reaching Authorization Decisions

The ACL class provides two methods for determining whether a security identity has the required bitmasks, `isGranted` and `isFieldGranted`. When the ACL receives an authorization request through one of these methods, it delegates this request to an implementation of *PermissionGrantingStrategy*⁵. This allows you to replace the way access decisions are reached without actually modifying the ACL class itself.

The `PermissionGrantingStrategy` first checks all your object-scope ACEs. If none is applicable, the class-scope ACEs will be checked. If none is applicable, then the process will be repeated with the ACEs of the parent ACL. If no parent ACL exists, an exception will be thrown.

4. <https://github.com/schmittjoh/JMSSecurityExtraBundle>

5. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Acl/Domain/PermissionGrantingStrategy.html>



Chapter 92

How to Force HTTPS or HTTP for different URLs

You can force areas of your site to use the HTTPS protocol in the security config. This is done through the `access_control` rules using the `requires_channel` option. For example, if you want to force all URLs starting with `/secure` to use HTTPS then you could use the following configuration:

Listing 92-1

```
1 access_control:
2   - { path: ^/secure, roles: ROLE_ADMIN, requires_channel: https }
```

The login form itself needs to allow anonymous access, otherwise users will be unable to authenticate. To force it to use HTTPS you can still use `access_control` rules by using the `IS_AUTHENTICATED_ANONYMOUSLY` role:

Listing 92-2

```
1 access_control:
2   - { path: ^/login, roles: IS_AUTHENTICATED_ANONYMOUSLY, requires_channel: https }
```

It is also possible to specify using HTTPS in the routing configuration, see *How to Force Routes to always Use HTTPS or HTTP* for more details.



Chapter 93

How to Restrict Firewalls to a Specific Request

When using the Security component, you can create firewalls that match certain request options. In most cases, matching against the URL is sufficient, but in special cases you can further restrict the initialization of a firewall against other options of the request.



You can use any of these restrictions individually or mix them together to get your desired firewall configuration.

Restricting by Pattern

This is the default restriction and restricts a firewall to only be initialized if the request URL matches the configured **pattern**.

```
Listing 93-1 1 # app/config/security.yml
2
3 # ...
4 security:
5     firewalls:
6         secured_area:
7             pattern: ^/admin
8             # ...
```

The **pattern** is a regular expression. In this example, the firewall will only be activated if the URL starts (due to the `^` regex character) with `/admin`. If the URL does not match this pattern, the firewall will not be activated and subsequent firewalls will have the opportunity to be matched for this request.

Restricting by Host



New in version 2.4: Support for restricting security firewalls to a specific host was introduced in Symfony 2.4.

If matching against the **pattern** only is not enough, the request can also be matched against **host**. When the configuration option **host** is set, the firewall will be restricted to only initialize if the host from the request matches against the configuration.

Listing 93-2

```
1 # app/config/security.yml
2
3 # ...
4 security:
5     firewalls:
6         secured_area:
7             host: ^admin\.example\.com$
8             # ...
```

The **host** (like the **pattern**) is a regular expression. In this example, the firewall will only be activated if the host is equal exactly (due to the **^** and **\$** regex characters) to the hostname **admin.example.com**. If the hostname does not match this pattern, the firewall will not be activated and subsequent firewalls will have the opportunity to be matched for this request.

Restricting by HTTP Methods



New in version 2.5: Support for restricting security firewalls to specific HTTP methods was introduced in Symfony 2.5.

The configuration option **methods** restricts the initialization of the firewall to the provided HTTP methods.

Listing 93-3

```
1 # app/config/security.yml
2
3 # ...
4 security:
5     firewalls:
6         secured_area:
7             methods: [GET, POST]
8             # ...
```

In this example, the firewall will only be activated if the HTTP method of the request is either **GET** or **POST**. If the method is not in the array of the allowed methods, the firewall will not be activated and subsequent firewalls will again have the opportunity to be matched for this request.



Chapter 94

How to Customize your Form Login

Using a *form login* for authentication is a common, and flexible, method for handling authentication in Symfony. Pretty much every aspect of the form login can be customized. The full, default configuration is shown in the next section.

Form Login Configuration Reference

To see the full form login configuration reference, see *SecurityBundle Configuration ("security")*. Some of the more interesting options are explained below.

Redirecting after Success

You can change where the login form redirects after a successful login using the various config options. By default the form will redirect to the URL the user requested (i.e. the URL which triggered the login form being shown). For example, if the user requested `http://www.example.com/admin/post/18/edit`, then after they successfully log in, they will eventually be sent back to `http://www.example.com/admin/post/18/edit`. This is done by storing the requested URL in the session. If no URL is present in the session (perhaps the user went directly to the login page), then the user is redirected to the default page, which is `/` (i.e. the homepage) by default. You can change this behavior in several ways.



As mentioned, by default the user is redirected back to the page originally requested. Sometimes, this can cause problems, like if a background Ajax request "appears" to be the last visited URL, causing the user to be redirected there. For information on controlling this behavior, see *How to Change the default Target Path Behavior*.

Changing the default Page

First, the default page can be set (i.e. the page the user is redirected to if no previous page was stored in the session). To set it to the `default_security_target` route use the following config:

Listing 94-1

```

1 # app/config/security.yml
2 security:
3     firewalls:
4         main:
5             form_login:
6                 # ...
7                 default_target_path: default_security_target

```

Now, when no URL is set in the session, users will be sent to the `default_security_target` route.

Always Redirect to the default Page

You can make it so that users are always redirected to the default page regardless of what URL they had requested previously by setting the `always_use_default_target_path` option to true:

Listing 94-2

```

1 # app/config/security.yml
2 security:
3     firewalls:
4         main:
5             form_login:
6                 # ...
7                 always_use_default_target_path: true

```

Using the Referring URL

In case no previous URL was stored in the session, you may wish to try using the `HTTP_REFERER` instead, as this will often be the same. You can do this by setting `use_referer` to true (it defaults to false):

Listing 94-3

```

1 # app/config/security.yml
2 security:
3     firewalls:
4         main:
5             form_login:
6                 # ...
7                 use_referer: true

```

Control the Redirect URL from inside the Form

You can also override where the user is redirected to via the form itself by including a hidden field with the name `_target_path`. For example, to redirect to the URL defined by some `account` route, use the following:

Listing 94-4

```

1 {# src/Acme/SecurityBundle/Resources/views/Security/login.html.twig #}
2 {% if error %}
3     <div>{{ error.message }}</div>
4 {% endif %}
5
6 <form action="{{ path('login_check') }}" method="post">
7     <label for="username">Username:</label>
8     <input type="text" id="username" name="_username" value="{{ last_username }}" />
9
10    <label for="password">Password:</label>
11    <input type="password" id="password" name="_password" />

```

```

12
13     <input type="hidden" name="_target_path" value="account" />
14
15     <input type="submit" name="login" />
16 </form>

```

Now, the user will be redirected to the value of the hidden form field. The value attribute can be a relative path, absolute URL, or a route name. You can even change the name of the hidden form field by changing the `target_path_parameter` option to another value.

Listing 94-5

```

1  # app/config/security.yml
2  security:
3      firewalls:
4          main:
5              form_login:
6                  target_path_parameter: redirect_url

```

Redirecting on Login Failure

In addition to redirecting the user after a successful login, you can also set the URL that the user should be redirected to after a failed login (e.g. an invalid username or password was submitted). By default, the user is redirected back to the login form itself. You can set this to a different route (e.g. `login_failure`) with the following config:

Listing 94-6

```

1  # app/config/security.yml
2  security:
3      firewalls:
4          main:
5              form_login:
6                  # ...
7                  failure_path: login_failure

```



Chapter 95

How to Secure any Service or Method in your Application

In the security chapter, you can see how to *secure a controller* by requesting the `security.context` service from the Service Container and checking the current user's role:

```
Listing 95-1 1 // ...
2 use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\Exception\AccessDeniedException;
3
4 public function helloAction($name)
5 {
6     if (false === $this->get('security.context')->isGranted('ROLE_ADMIN')) {
7         throw new AccessDeniedException();
8     }
9
10    // ...
11 }
```

You can also secure *any* service in a similar way by injecting the `security.context` service into it. For a general introduction to injecting dependencies into services see the *Service Container* chapter of the book. For example, suppose you have a `NewsletterManager` class that sends out emails and you want to restrict its use to only users who have some `ROLE_NEWSLETTER_ADMIN` role. Before you add security, the class looks something like this:

```
Listing 95-2 1 // src/Acme/HelloBundle/Newsletter/NewsletterManager.php
2 namespace Acme\HelloBundle\Newsletter;
3
4 class NewsletterManager
5 {
6
7     public function sendNewsletter()
8     {
9         // ... where you actually do the work
10    }
```



```

11
12     // ...
13 }

```

Your goal is to check the user's role when the `sendNewsletter()` method is called. The first step towards this is to inject the `security.context` service into the object. Since it won't make sense *not* to perform the security check, this is an ideal candidate for constructor injection, which guarantees that the security context object will be available inside the `NewsletterManager` class:

Listing 95-3

```

1 namespace Acme\HelloBundle\Newsletter;
2
3 use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\SecurityContextInterface;
4
5 class NewsletterManager
6 {
7     protected $securityContext;
8
9     public function __construct(SecurityContextInterface $securityContext)
10    {
11        $this->securityContext = $securityContext;
12    }
13
14    // ...
15 }

```

Then in your service configuration, you can inject the service:

Listing 95-4

```

1 # src/Acme/HelloBundle/Resources/config/services.yml
2 parameters:
3     newsletter_manager.class: Acme\HelloBundle\Newsletter\NewsletterManager
4
5 services:
6     newsletter_manager:
7         class: "%newsletter_manager.class%"
8         arguments: ["@security.context"]

```

The injected service can then be used to perform the security check when the `sendNewsletter()` method is called:

Listing 95-5

```

1 namespace Acme\HelloBundle\Newsletter;
2
3 use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\Exception\AccessDeniedException;
4 use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\SecurityContextInterface;
5 // ...
6
7 class NewsletterManager
8 {
9     protected $securityContext;
10
11     public function __construct(SecurityContextInterface $securityContext)
12    {
13        $this->securityContext = $securityContext;
14    }
15
16     public function sendNewsletter()
17    {

```

```

18         if (false === $this->securityContext->isGranted('ROLE_NEWSLETTER_ADMIN')) {
19             throw new AccessDeniedException();
20         }
21
22         // ...
23     }
24
25     // ...
26 }

```

If the current user does not have the `ROLE_NEWSLETTER_ADMIN`, they will be prompted to log in.

Securing Methods Using Annotations

You can also secure method calls in any service with annotations by using the optional *JMSSecurityExtraBundle*¹ bundle. This bundle is not included in the Symfony Standard Distribution, but you can choose to install it.

To enable the annotations functionality, *tag* the service you want to secure with the `security.secure_service` tag (you can also automatically enable this functionality for all services, see the *sidebar* below):

Listing 95-6

```

1 # src/Acme/HelloBundle/Resources/config/services.yml
2
3 # ...
4 services:
5     newsletter_manager:
6         # ...
7         tags:
8             - { name: security.secure_service }

```

You can then achieve the same results as above using an annotation:

Listing 95-7

```

1 namespace Acme\HelloBundle\Newsletter;
2
3 use JMS\SecurityExtraBundle\Annotation\Secure;
4 // ...
5
6 class NewsletterManager
7 {
8
9     /**
10      * @Secure(roles="ROLE_NEWSLETTER_ADMIN")
11      */
12     public function sendNewsletter()
13     {
14         // ...
15     }
16
17     // ...
18 }

```

1. <https://github.com/schmittjoh/JMSSecurityExtraBundle>



The annotations work because a proxy class is created for your class which performs the security checks. This means that, whilst you can use annotations on public and protected methods, you cannot use them with private methods or methods marked final.

The JMSSecurityExtraBundle also allows you to secure the parameters and return values of methods. For more information, see the *JMSSecurityExtraBundle*² documentation.



Activating the Annotations Functionality for all Services

When securing the method of a service (as shown above), you can either tag each service individually, or activate the functionality for *all* services at once. To do so, set the `secure_all_services` configuration option to true:

```
Listing 95-8 1 # app/config/config.yml
              2 jms_security_extra:
              3   # ...
              4   secure_all_services: true
```

The disadvantage of this method is that, if activated, the initial page load may be very slow depending on how many services you have defined.

2. <https://github.com/schmittjoh/JMSSecurityExtraBundle>



Chapter 96

How to Create a custom User Provider

Part of Symfony's standard authentication process depends on "user providers". When a user submits a username and password, the authentication layer asks the configured user provider to return a user object for a given username. Symfony then checks whether the password of this user is correct and generates a security token so the user stays authenticated during the current session. Out of the box, Symfony has an "in_memory" and an "entity" user provider. In this entry you'll see how you can create your own user provider, which could be useful if your users are accessed via a custom database, a file, or - as shown in this example - a web service.

Create a User Class

First, regardless of *where* your user data is coming from, you'll need to create a `User` class that represents that data. The `User` can look however you want and contain any data. The only requirement is that the class implements `UserInterface`¹. The methods in this interface should therefore be defined in the custom user class: `getRoles()`², `getPassword()`³, `getSalt()`⁴, `getUsername()`⁵, `eraseCredentials()`⁶. It may also be useful to implement the `EquatableInterface`⁷ interface, which defines a method to check if the user is equal to the current user. This interface requires an `isEqualTo()`⁸ method.

This is how your `WebserviceUser` class looks in action:

Listing 96-1

```
1 // src/Acme/WebserviceUserBundle/Security/User/WebserviceUser.php
2 namespace Acme\WebserviceUserBundle\Security\User;
3
4 use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\User\UserInterface;
5 use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\User\EquatableInterface;
6
```

-
1. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/User/UserInterface.html>
 2. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/User/UserInterface.html#getRoles\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/User/UserInterface.html#getRoles())
 3. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/User/UserInterface.html#getPassword\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/User/UserInterface.html#getPassword())
 4. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/User/UserInterface.html#getSalt\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/User/UserInterface.html#getSalt())
 5. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/User/UserInterface.html#getUsername\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/User/UserInterface.html#getUsername())
 6. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/User/UserInterface.html#eraseCredentials\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/User/UserInterface.html#eraseCredentials())
 7. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/User/EquatableInterface.html>
 8. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/User/EquatableInterface.html#isEqualTo\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/User/EquatableInterface.html#isEqualTo())

```

7 class WebserviceUser implements UserInterface, EquatableInterface
8 {
9     private $username;
10    private $password;
11    private $salt;
12    private $roles;
13
14    public function __construct($username, $password, $salt, array $roles)
15    {
16        $this->username = $username;
17        $this->password = $password;
18        $this->salt = $salt;
19        $this->roles = $roles;
20    }
21
22    public function getRoles()
23    {
24        return $this->roles;
25    }
26
27    public function getPassword()
28    {
29        return $this->password;
30    }
31
32    public function getSalt()
33    {
34        return $this->salt;
35    }
36
37    public function getUsername()
38    {
39        return $this->username;
40    }
41
42    public function eraseCredentials()
43    {
44    }
45
46    public function isEqualTo(UserInterface $user)
47    {
48        if (!$user instanceof WebserviceUser) {
49            return false;
50        }
51
52        if ($this->password !== $user->getPassword()) {
53            return false;
54        }
55
56        if ($this->salt !== $user->getSalt()) {
57            return false;
58        }
59
60        if ($this->username !== $user->getUsername()) {
61            return false;
62        }
63
64        return true;

```

```
65     }
66 }
```

If you have more information about your users - like a "first name" - then you can add a `firstName` field to hold that data.

Create a User Provider

Now that you have a `User` class, you'll create a user provider, which will grab user information from some web service, create a `WebserviceUser` object, and populate it with data.

The user provider is just a plain PHP class that has to implement the `UserProviderInterface`⁹, which requires three methods to be defined: `loadUserByUsername($username)`, `refreshUser(UserInterface $user)`, and `supportsClass($class)`. For more details, see `UserProviderInterface`¹⁰.

Here's an example of how this might look:

Listing 96-2

```
1  // src/Acme/WebserviceUserBundle/Security/User/WebserviceUserProvider.php
2  namespace Acme\WebserviceUserBundle\Security\User;
3
4  use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\User\UserProviderInterface;
5  use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\User\UserInterface;
6  use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\Exception\UsernameNotFoundException;
7  use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\Exception\UnsupportedUserException;
8
9  class WebserviceUserProvider implements UserProviderInterface
10 {
11     public function loadUserByUsername($username)
12     {
13         // make a call to your webservice here
14         $userData = ...
15         // pretend it returns an array on success, false if there is no user
16
17         if ($userData) {
18             $password = '...';
19
20             // ...
21
22             return new WebserviceUser($username, $password, $salt, $roles);
23         }
24
25         throw new UsernameNotFoundException(
26             sprintf('Username "%s" does not exist.', $username)
27         );
28     }
29
30     public function refreshUser(UserInterface $user)
31     {
32         if (!$user instanceof WebserviceUser) {
33             throw new UnsupportedUserException(
34                 sprintf('Instances of "%s" are not supported.', get_class($user))
35             );
36         }
37     }
```

9. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/User/UserProviderInterface.html>

10. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/User/UserProviderInterface.html>

```

38     return $this->loadUserByUsername($user->getUsername());
39 }
40
41 public function supportsClass($class)
42 {
43     return $class === 'Acme\WebserviceUserBundle\Security\User\WebserviceUser';
44 }
45 }

```

Create a Service for the User Provider

Now you make the user provider available as a service:

Listing 96-3

```

1 # src/Acme/WebserviceUserBundle/Resources/config/services.yml
2 parameters:
3     webservice_user_provider.class:
4     Acme\WebserviceUserBundle\Security\User\WebserviceUserProvider
5
6 services:
7     webservice_user_provider:
8         class: "%webservice_user_provider.class%"

```



The real implementation of the user provider will probably have some dependencies or configuration options or other services. Add these as arguments in the service definition.



Make sure the services file is being imported. See *Importing Configuration with imports* for details.

Modify security.yml

Everything comes together in your security configuration. Add the user provider to the list of providers in the "security" section. Choose a name for the user provider (e.g. "webservice") and mention the id of the service you just defined.

Listing 96-4

```

1 # app/config/security.yml
2 security:
3     providers:
4         webservice:
5             id: webservice_user_provider

```

Symfony also needs to know how to encode passwords that are supplied by website users, e.g. by filling in a login form. You can do this by adding a line to the "encoders" section in your security configuration:

Listing 96-5

```

1 # app/config/security.yml
2 security:

```

```
3 encoders:
4     Acme\WebserviceUserBundle\Security\User\WebserviceUser: sha512
```

The value here should correspond with however the passwords were originally encoded when creating your users (however those users were created). When a user submits their password, the salt value is appended to the password and then encoded using this algorithm before being compared to the hashed password returned by your `getPassword()` method. Additionally, depending on your options, the password may be encoded multiple times and encoded to base64.



Specifics on how Passwords are Encoded

Symfony uses a specific method to combine the salt and encode the password before comparing it to your encoded password. If `getSalt()` returns nothing, then the submitted password is simply encoded using the algorithm you specify in `security.yml`. If a salt is specified, then the following value is created and *then* hashed via the algorithm:

```
$password.'{'.'$salt.'}';
```

If your external users have their passwords salted via a different method, then you'll need to do a bit more work so that Symfony properly encodes the password. That is beyond the scope of this entry, but would include sub-classing `MessageDigestPasswordEncoder` and overriding the `mergePasswordAndSalt` method.

Additionally, the hash, by default, is encoded multiple times and encoded to base64. For specific details, see `MessageDigestPasswordEncoder`¹¹. To prevent this, configure it in your configuration file:

```
Listing 96-6 1 # app/config/security.yml
2 security:
3     encoders:
4         Acme\WebserviceUserBundle\Security\User\WebserviceUser:
5             algorithm: sha512
6             encode_as_base64: false
7             iterations: 1
```

11. <https://github.com/symfony/symfony/blob/master/src/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/Encoder/MessageDigestPasswordEncoder.php>



Chapter 97

How to Create a Custom Form Password Authenticator

Imagine you want to allow access to your website only between 2pm and 4pm UTC. Before Symfony 2.4, you had to create a custom token, factory, listener and provider. In this entry, you'll learn how to do this for a login form (i.e. where your user submits their username and password).

The Password Authenticator



New in version 2.4: The `SimpleFormAuthenticatorInterface` interface was introduced in Symfony 2.4.

First, create a new class that implements *SimpleFormAuthenticatorInterface*¹. Eventually, this will allow you to create custom logic for authenticating the user:

Listing 97-1

```
1  // src/Acme/HelloBundle/Security/TimeAuthenticator.php
2  namespace Acme\HelloBundle\Security;
3
4  use Symfony\Component\HttpFoundation\Request;
5  use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\Authentication\SimpleFormAuthenticatorInterface;
6  use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\Authentication\Token\TokenInterface;
7  use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\Authentication\Token\UsernamePasswordToken;
8  use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\Encoder\EncoderFactoryInterface;
9  use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\Exception\AuthenticationException;
10 use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\Exception\UsernameNotFoundException;
11 use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\User\UserProviderInterface;
12
13 class TimeAuthenticator implements SimpleFormAuthenticatorInterface
14 {
```

1. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/Authentication/SimpleFormAuthenticatorInterface.html>

```

15     private $encoderFactory;
16
17     public function __construct(EncoderFactoryInterface $encoderFactory)
18     {
19         $this->encoderFactory = $encoderFactory;
20     }
21
22     public function authenticateToken(TokenInterface $token, UserProviderInterface
23 $userProvider, $providerKey)
24     {
25         try {
26             $user = $userProvider->loadUserByUsername($token->getUsername());
27         } catch (UsernameNotFoundException $e) {
28             throw new AuthenticationException('Invalid username or password');
29         }
30
31         $encoder = $this->encoderFactory->getEncoder($user);
32         $passwordValid = $encoder->isPasswordValid(
33             $user->getPassword(),
34             $token->getCredentials(),
35             $user->getSalt()
36         );
37
38         if ($passwordValid) {
39             $currentHour = date('G');
40             if ($currentHour < 14 || $currentHour > 16) {
41                 throw new AuthenticationException(
42                     'You can only log in between 2 and 4!',
43                     100
44                 );
45             }
46
47             return new UsernamePasswordToken(
48                 $user,
49                 $user->getPassword(),
50                 $providerKey,
51                 $user->getRoles()
52             );
53         }
54
55         throw new AuthenticationException('Invalid username or password');
56     }
57
58     public function supportsToken(TokenInterface $token, $providerKey)
59     {
60         return $token instanceof UsernamePasswordToken
61             && $token->getProviderKey() === $providerKey;
62     }
63
64     public function createToken(Request $request, $username, $password, $providerKey)
65     {
66         return new UsernamePasswordToken($username, $password, $providerKey);
67     }
68 }

```

How it Works

Great! Now you just need to setup some *Configuration*. But first, you can find out more about what each method in this class does.

1) createToken

When Symfony begins handling a request, `createToken()` is called, where you create a *TokenInterface*² object that contains whatever information you need in `authenticateToken()` to authenticate the user (e.g. the username and password).

Whatever token object you create here will be passed to you later in `authenticateToken()`.

2) supportsToken

After Symfony calls `createToken()`, it will then call `supportsToken()` on your class (and any other authentication listeners) to figure out who should handle the token. This is just a way to allow several authentication mechanisms to be used for the same firewall (that way, you can for instance first try to authenticate the user via a certificate or an API key and fall back to a form login).

Mostly, you just need to make sure that this method returns `true` for a token that has been created by `createToken()`. Your logic should probably look exactly like this example.

3) authenticateToken

If `supportsToken` returns `true`, Symfony will now call `authenticateToken()`. Your job here is to check that the token is allowed to log in by first getting the `User` object via the user provider and then, by checking the password and the current time.



The "flow" of how you get the `User` object and determine whether or not the token is valid (e.g. checking the password), may vary based on your requirements.

Ultimately, your job is to return a *new* token object that is "authenticated" (i.e. it has at least 1 role set on it) and which has the `User` object inside of it.

Inside this method, an encoder is needed to check the password's validity:

Listing 97-2

```
1 $encoder = $this->encoderFactory->getEncoder($user);
2 $passwordValid = $encoder->isPasswordValid(
3     $user->getPassword(),
4     $token->getCredentials(),
5     $user->getSalt()
6 );
```

This is a service that is already available in Symfony and the password algorithm is configured in the security configuration (e.g. `security.yml`) under the `encoders` key. Below, you'll see how to inject that into the `TimeAuthenticator`.

Configuration

Now, configure your `TimeAuthenticator` as a service:

2. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/Authentication/Token/TokenInterface.html>

Listing 97-3

```
1 # app/config/config.yml
2 services:
3     # ...
4
5     time_authenticator:
6         class: Acme\HelloBundle\Security\TimeAuthenticator
7         arguments: ["@security.encoder_factory"]
```

Then, activate it in the `firewalls` section of the security configuration using the `simple_form` key:

Listing 97-4

```
1 # app/config/security.yml
2 security:
3     # ...
4
5     firewalls:
6         secured_area:
7             pattern: ^/admin
8             # ...
9             simple_form:
10                 authenticator: time_authenticator
11                 check_path: login_check
12                 login_path: login
```

The `simple_form` key has the same options as the normal `form_login` option, but with the additional `authenticator` key that points to the new service. For details, see *Form Login Configuration*.

If creating a login form in general is new to you or you don't understand the `check_path` or `login_path` options, see *How to Customize your Form Login*.



Chapter 98

How to Authenticate Users with API Keys

Nowadays, it's quite usual to authenticate the user via an API key (when developing a web service for instance). The API key is provided for every request and is passed as a query string parameter or via an HTTP header.

The API Key Authenticator



New in version 2.4: The `SimplePreAuthenticatorInterface` interface was introduced in Symfony 2.4.

Authenticating a user based on the Request information should be done via a pre-authentication mechanism. The `SimplePreAuthenticatorInterface`¹ allows you to implement such a scheme really easily.

Your exact situation may differ, but in this example, a token is read from an `apikey` query parameter, the proper username is loaded from that value and then a User object is created:

Listing 98-1

```
1 // src/Acme/HelloBundle/Security/ApiKeyAuthenticator.php
2 namespace Acme\HelloBundle\Security;
3
4 use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\Authentication\SimplePreAuthenticatorInterface;
5 use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\Authentication\Token\TokenInterface;
6 use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\Exception\AuthenticationException;
7 use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\Authentication\Token\PreAuthenticatedToken;
8 use Symfony\Component\HttpFoundation\Request;
9 use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\User\UserProviderInterface;
10 use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\Exception\BadCredentialsException;
11
12 class ApiKeyAuthenticator implements SimplePreAuthenticatorInterface
13 {
14     protected $userProvider;
```

1. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/Authentication/SimplePreAuthenticatorInterface.html>

```

15
16 public function __construct(ApiKeyUserProvider $userProvider)
17 {
18     $this->userProvider = $userProvider;
19 }
20
21 public function createToken(Request $request, $providerKey)
22 {
23     // look for an apikey query parameter
24     $apiKey = $request->query->get('apikey');
25
26     // or if you want to use an "apikey" header, then do something like this:
27     // $apiKey = $request->headers->get('apikey');
28
29     if (!$apiKey) {
30         throw new BadCredentialsException('No API key found');
31     }
32
33     return new PreAuthenticatedToken(
34         'anon.',
35         $apiKey,
36         $providerKey
37     );
38 }
39
40 public function authenticateToken(TokenInterface $token, UserProviderInterface
41 $userProvider, $providerKey)
42 {
43     $apiKey = $token->getCredentials();
44     $username = $this->userProvider->getUsernameForApiKey($apiKey);
45
46     if (!$username) {
47         throw new AuthenticationException(
48             sprintf('API Key "%s" does not exist.', $apiKey)
49         );
50     }
51
52     $user = $this->userProvider->loadUserByUsername($username);
53
54     return new PreAuthenticatedToken(
55         $user,
56         $apiKey,
57         $providerKey,
58         $user->getRoles()
59     );
60 }
61
62 public function supportsToken(TokenInterface $token, $providerKey)
63 {
64     return $token instanceof PreAuthenticatedToken && $token->getProviderKey() ===
65     $providerKey;
66 }

```

Once you've *configured* everything, you'll be able to authenticate by adding an `apikey` parameter to the query string, like `http://example.com/admin/foo?apikey=37b51d194a7513e45b56f6524f2d51f2`.

The authentication process has several steps, and your implementation will probably differ:

1. createToken

Early in the request cycle, Symfony calls `createToken()`. Your job here is to create a token object that contains all of the information from the request that you need to authenticate the user (e.g. the `apikey` query parameter). If that information is missing, throwing a *BadCredentialsException*² will cause authentication to fail.

2. supportsToken

After Symfony calls `createToken()`, it will then call `supportsToken()` on your class (and any other authentication listeners) to figure out who should handle the token. This is just a way to allow several authentication mechanisms to be used for the same firewall (that way, you can for instance first try to authenticate the user via a certificate or an API key and fall back to a form login).

Mostly, you just need to make sure that this method returns `true` for a token that has been created by `createToken()`. Your logic should probably look exactly like this example.

3. authenticateToken

If `supportsToken()` returns `true`, Symfony will now call `authenticateToken()`. One key part is the `$userProvider`, which is an external class that helps you load information about the user. You'll learn more about this next.

In this specific example, the following things happen in `authenticateToken()`:

1. First, you use the `$userProvider` to somehow look up the `$username` that corresponds to the `$apiKey`;
2. Second, you use the `$userProvider` again to load or create a `User` object for the `$username`;
3. Finally, you create an *authenticated token* (i.e. a token with at least one role) that has the proper roles and the `User` object attached to it.

The goal is ultimately to use the `$apiKey` to find or create a `User` object. *How* you do this (e.g. query a database) and the exact class for your `User` object may vary. Those differences will be most obvious in your user provider.

The User Provider

The `$userProvider` can be any user provider (see *How to Create a custom User Provider*). In this example, the `$apiKey` is used to somehow find the username for the user. This work is done in a `getUsernameForApiKey()` method, which is created entirely custom for this use-case (i.e. this isn't a method that's used by Symfony's core user provider system).

The `$userProvider` might look something like this:

Listing 98-2

```
1 // src/Acme/HelloBundle/Security/ApiKeyUserProvider.php
2 namespace Acme\HelloBundle\Security;
3
4 use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\User\UserProviderInterface;
5 use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\User\User;
6 use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\User\UserInterface;
7 use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\Exception\UnsupportedUserException;
8
9 class ApiKeyUserProvider implements UserProviderInterface
10 {
11     public function getUsernameForApiKey($apiKey)
12     {
13         // Look up the username based on the token in the database, via
```

2. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/Exception/BadCredentialsException.html>

```

14         // an API call, or do something entirely different
15         $username = ...;
16
17         return $username;
18     }
19
20     public function loadUserByUsername($username)
21     {
22         return new User(
23             $username,
24             null,
25             // the roles for the user - you may choose to determine
26             // these dynamically somehow based on the user
27             array('ROLE_USER')
28         );
29     }
30
31     public function refreshUser(UserInterface $user)
32     {
33         // this is used for storing authentication in the session
34         // but in this example, the token is sent in each request,
35         // so authentication can be stateless. Throwing this exception
36         // is proper to make things stateless
37         throw new UnsupportedUserException();
38     }
39
40     public function supportsClass($class)
41     {
42         return 'Symfony\Component\Security\Core\User\User' === $class;
43     }
44 }

```



Read the dedicated article to learn *how to create a custom user provider*.

The logic inside `getUsernameForApiKey()` is up to you. You may somehow transform the API key (e.g. `37b51d`) into a username (e.g. `jondoe`) by looking up some information in a "token" database table.

The same is true for `loadUserByUsername()`. In this example, Symfony's core `User`³ class is simply created. This makes sense if you don't need to store any extra information on your User object (e.g. `firstName`). But if you do, you may instead have your *own* user class which you create and populate here by querying a database. This would allow you to have custom data on the User object.

Finally, just make sure that `supportsClass()` returns `true` for User objects with the same class as whatever user you return in `loadUserByUsername()`. If your authentication is stateless like in this example (i.e. you expect the user to send the API key with every request and so you don't save the login to the session), then you can simply throw the `UnsupportedUserException` exception in `refreshUser()`.



If you *do* want to store authentication data in the session so that the key doesn't need to be sent on every request, see *Storing Authentication in the Session*.

3. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/User/User.html>

Handling Authentication Failure

In order for your `ApiKeyAuthentication` to correctly display a 403 http status when either bad credentials or authentication fails you will need to implement the *AuthenticationFailureHandlerInterface*⁴ on your Authenticator. This will provide a method `onAuthenticationFailure` which you can use to create an error `Response`.

Listing 98-3

```
1 // src/Acme/HelloBundle/Security/ApiKeyAuthenticator.php
2 namespace Acme\HelloBundle\Security;
3
4 use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\Authentication\SimplePreAuthenticatorInterface;
5 use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\Exception\AuthenticationException;
6 use Symfony\Component\Security\Http\Authentication\AuthenticationFailureHandlerInterface;
7 use Symfony\Component\HttpFoundation\Response;
8 use Symfony\Component\HttpFoundation\Request;
9
10 class ApiKeyAuthenticator implements SimplePreAuthenticatorInterface,
11 AuthenticationFailureHandlerInterface
12 {
13     // ...
14
15     public function onAuthenticationFailure(Request $request, AuthenticationException
16 $exception)
17     {
18         return new Response("Authentication Failed.", 403);
19     }
20 }
```

Configuration

Once you have your `ApiKeyAuthentication` all setup, you need to register it as a service and use it in your security configuration (e.g. `security.yml`). First, register it as a service. This assumes that you have already setup your custom user provider as a service called `your_api_key_user_provider` (see *How to Create a custom User Provider*).

Listing 98-4

```
1 # app/config/config.yml
2 services:
3     # ...
4
5     apikey_authenticator:
6         class: Acme\HelloBundle\Security\ApiKeyAuthenticator
7         arguments: ["@your_api_key_user_provider"]
```

Now, activate it in the `firewalls` section of your security configuration using the `simple_preauth` key:

Listing 98-5

```
1 # app/config/security.yml
2 security:
3     # ...
4
5     firewalls:
6         secured_area:
7             pattern: ^/admin
```

4. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Http/Authentication/AuthenticationFailureHandlerInterface.html>

```

8         stateless: true
9         simple_preauth:
10             authenticator: apikey_authenticator

```

That's it! Now, your `ApiKeyAuthentication` should be called at the beginning of each request and your authentication process will take place.

The `stateless` configuration parameter prevents Symfony from trying to store the authentication information in the session, which isn't necessary since the client will send the `apikey` on each request. If you *do* need to store authentication in the session, keep reading!

Storing Authentication in the Session

So far, this entry has described a situation where some sort of authentication token is sent on every request. But in some situations (like an OAuth flow), the token may be sent on only *one* request. In this case, you will want to authenticate the user and store that authentication in the session so that the user is automatically logged in for every subsequent request.

To make this work, first remove the `stateless` key from your firewall configuration or set it to `false`:

Listing 98-6

```

1  # app/config/security.yml
2  security:
3      # ...
4
5      firewalls:
6          secured_area:
7              pattern: ^/admin
8              stateless: false
9              simple_preauth:
10                 authenticator: apikey_authenticator

```

Even though the token is being stored in the session, the credentials - in this case the API key (i.e. `$token->getCredentials()`) - are not stored in the session for security reasons. To take advantage of the session, update `ApiKeyAuthenticator` to see if the stored token has a valid User object that can be used:

Listing 98-7

```

1  // src/Acme/HelloBundle/Security/ApiKeyAuthenticator.php
2  // ...
3
4  class ApiKeyAuthenticator implements SimplePreAuthenticatorInterface
5  {
6      // ...
7      public function authenticateToken(TokenInterface $token, UserProviderInterface
8  $userProvider, $providerKey)
9      {
10         $apiKey = $token->getCredentials();
11         $username = $this->userProvider->getUsernameForApiKey($apiKey);
12
13         // User is the Entity which represents your user
14         $user = $token->getUser();
15         if ($user instanceof User) {
16             return new PreAuthenticatedToken(
17                 $user,
18                 $apiKey,
19                 $providerKey,
20                 $user->getRoles()

```

```

21         );
22     }
23
24     if (!$username) {
25         throw new AuthenticationException(
26             sprintf('API Key "%s" does not exist.', $apiKey)
27         );
28     }
29
30     $user = $this->userProvider->loadUserByUsername($username);
31
32     return new PreAuthenticatedToken(
33         $user,
34         $apiKey,
35         $providerKey,
36         $user->getRoles()
37     );
38 }
39 // ...
}

```

Storing authentication information in the session works like this:

1. At the end of each request, Symfony serializes the token object (returned from `authenticateToken()`), which also serializes the `User` object (since it's set on a property on the token);
2. On the next request the token is deserialized and the deserialized `User` object is passed to the `refreshUser()` function of the user provider.

The second step is the important one: Symfony calls `refreshUser()` and passes you the user object that was serialized in the session. If your users are stored in the database, then you may want to re-query for a fresh version of the user to make sure it's not out-of-date. But regardless of your requirements, `refreshUser()` should now return the `User` object:

Listing 98-8

```

1  // src/Acme/HelloBundle/Security/ApiKeyUserProvider.php
2
3  // ...
4  class ApiKeyUserProvider implements UserProviderInterface
5  {
6      // ...
7
8      public function refreshUser(UserInterface $user)
9      {
10         // $user is the User that you set in the token inside authenticateToken()
11         // after it has been deserialized from the session
12
13         // you might use $user to query the database for a fresh user
14         // $id = $user->getId();
15         // use $id to make a query
16
17         // if you are *not* reading from a database and are just creating
18         // a User object (like in this example), you can just return it
19         return $user;
20     }
21 }

```



You'll also want to make sure that your `User` object is being serialized correctly. If your `User` object has private properties, PHP can't serialize those. In this case, you may get back a `User` object that has a `null` value for each property. For an example, see *How to Load Security Users from the Database (the Entity Provider)*.

Only Authenticating for Certain URLs

This entry has assumed that you want to look for the `apikey` authentication on *every* request. But in some situations (like an OAuth flow), you only really need to look for authentication information once the user has reached a certain URL (e.g. the redirect URL in OAuth).

Fortunately, handling this situation is easy: just check to see what the current URL is before creating the token in `createToken()`:

Listing 98-9

```

1  // src/Acme/HelloBundle/Security/ApiKeyAuthenticator.php
2
3  // ...
4  use Symfony\Component\Security\Http\HttpUtils;
5  use Symfony\Component\HttpFoundation\Request;
6
7  class ApiKeyAuthenticator implements SimplePreAuthenticatorInterface
8  {
9      protected $userProvider;
10
11     protected $httpUtils;
12
13     public function __construct(ApiKeyAuthProviderInterface $userProvider, HttpUtils
14 $httpUtils)
15     {
16         $this->userProvider = $userProvider;
17         $this->httpUtils = $httpUtils;
18     }
19
20     public function createToken(Request $request, $providerKey)
21     {
22         // set the only URL where we should look for auth information
23         // and only return the token if we're at that URL
24         $targetUrl = '/login/check';
25         if (!$this->httpUtils->checkRequestPath($request, $targetUrl)) {
26             return;
27         }
28
29         // ...
30     }

```

This uses the handy `HttpUtils`⁵ class to check if the current URL matches the URL you're looking for. In this case, the URL (`/login/check`) has been hardcoded in the class, but you could also inject it as the third constructor argument.

Next, just update your service configuration to inject the `security.http_utils` service:

Listing 98-10

5. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Http/HttpUtils.html>

```
1 # app/config/config.yml
2 services:
3     # ...
4
5     apikey_authenticator:
6         class: Acme\HelloBundle\Security\ApiKeyAuthenticator
7         arguments: ["@your_api_key_user_provider", "@security.http_utils"]
```

That's it! Have fun!



Chapter 99

How to Create a custom Authentication Provider



Creating a custom authentication system is hard, and this entry will walk you through that process. But depending on your needs, you may be able to solve your problem in a simpler way using these documents:

- *How to Create a Custom Form Password Authenticator*
- *How to Authenticate Users with API Keys*

If you have read the chapter on *Security*, you understand the distinction Symfony makes between authentication and authorization in the implementation of security. This chapter discusses the core classes involved in the authentication process, and how to implement a custom authentication provider. Because authentication and authorization are separate concepts, this extension will be user-provider agnostic, and will function with your application's user providers, may they be based in memory, a database, or wherever else you choose to store them.

Meet WSSE

The following chapter demonstrates how to create a custom authentication provider for WSSE authentication. The security protocol for WSSE provides several security benefits:

1. Username / Password encryption
2. Safe guarding against replay attacks
3. No web server configuration required

WSSE is very useful for the securing of web services, may they be SOAP or REST.

There is plenty of great documentation on WSSE¹, but this article will focus not on the security protocol, but rather the manner in which a custom protocol can be added to your Symfony application. The basis

1. <http://www.xml.com/pub/a/2003/12/17/dive.html>

of WSSE is that a request header is checked for encrypted credentials, verified using a timestamp and *nonce*², and authenticated for the requested user using a password digest.



WSSE also supports application key validation, which is useful for web services, but is outside the scope of this chapter.

The Token

The role of the token in the Symfony security context is an important one. A token represents the user authentication data present in the request. Once a request is authenticated, the token retains the user's data, and delivers this data across the security context. First, you'll create your token class. This will allow the passing of all relevant information to your authentication provider.

Listing 99-1

```
1 // src/Acme/DemoBundle/Security/Authentication/Token/WsseUserToken.php
2 namespace Acme\DemoBundle\Security\Authentication\Token;
3
4 use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\Authentication\Token\AbstractToken;
5
6 class WsseUserToken extends AbstractToken
7 {
8     public $created;
9     public $digest;
10    public $nonce;
11
12    public function __construct(array $roles = array())
13    {
14        parent::__construct($roles);
15
16        // If the user has roles, consider it authenticated
17        $this->setAuthenticated(count($roles) > 0);
18    }
19
20    public function getCredentials()
21    {
22        return '';
23    }
24 }
```



The `WsseUserToken` class extends the Security component's *AbstractToken*³ class, which provides basic token functionality. Implement the *TokenInterface*⁴ on any class to use as a token.

The Listener

Next, you need a listener to listen on the security context. The listener is responsible for fielding requests to the firewall and calling the authentication provider. A listener must be an instance of

2. http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cryptographic_nonce

3. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/Authentication/Token/AbstractToken.html>

4. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/Authentication/Token/TokenInterface.html>

*ListenerInterface*⁵. A security listener should handle the *GetResponseEvent*⁶ event, and set an authenticated token in the security context if successful.

Listing 99-2

```
1  // src/Acme/DemoBundle/Security/Firewall/WsseListener.php
2  namespace Acme\DemoBundle\Security\Firewall;
3
4  use Symfony\Component\HttpFoundation\Response;
5  use Symfony\Component\HttpFoundation\Event\GetResponseEvent;
6  use Symfony\Component\Security\Http\Firewall\ListenerInterface;
7  use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\Exception\AuthenticationException;
8  use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\SecurityContextInterface;
9  use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\Authentication\AuthenticationManagerInterface;
10 use Acme\DemoBundle\Security\Authentication\Token\WsseUserToken;
11
12 class WsseListener implements ListenerInterface
13 {
14     protected $securityContext;
15     protected $authenticationManager;
16
17     public function __construct(SecurityContextInterface $securityContext,
18 AuthenticationManagerInterface $authenticationManager)
19     {
20         $this->securityContext = $securityContext;
21         $this->authenticationManager = $authenticationManager;
22     }
23
24     public function handle(GetResponseEvent $event)
25     {
26         $request = $event->getRequest();
27
28         $wsseRegex = '/UsernameToken Username="([^"]+)", PasswordDigest="([^"]+)",
29 Nonce="([^"]+)", Created="([^"]+)"/';
30         if (!$request->headers->has('x-wsse') || 1 !== preg_match($wsseRegex,
31 $request->headers->get('x-wsse'), $matches)) {
32             return;
33         }
34
35         $token = new WsseUserToken();
36         $token->setUser($matches[1]);
37
38         $token->digest = $matches[2];
39         $token->nonce = $matches[3];
40         $token->created = $matches[4];
41
42         try {
43             $authToken = $this->authenticationManager->authenticate($token);
44             $this->securityContext->setToken($authToken);
45
46             return;
47         } catch (AuthenticationException $failed) {
48             // ... you might log something here
49
50             // To deny the authentication clear the token. This will redirect to the login
51 page.
52             // Make sure to only clear your token, not those of other authentication
53 listeners.
54             // $token = $this->securityContext->getToken();
```

5. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Http/Firewall/ListenerInterface.html>

6. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpKernel/Event/GetResponseEvent.html>


```

55         // if ($token instanceof WsseUserToken && $this->providerKey ===
56         $token->getProviderKey()) {
57             //     $this->securityContext->setToken(null);
58             // }
59             // return;
60         }
61
        // By default deny authorization
        $response = new Response();
        $response->setStatusCode(Response::HTTP_FORBIDDEN);
        $event->setResponse($response);
    }
}

```



New in version 2.4: Support for HTTP status code constants was introduced in Symfony 2.4.

This listener checks the request for the expected X-WSSE header, matches the value returned for the expected WSSE information, creates a token using that information, and passes the token on to the authentication manager. If the proper information is not provided, or the authentication manager throws an *AuthenticationException*⁷, a 403 Response is returned.



A class not used above, the *AbstractAuthenticationListener*⁸ class, is a very useful base class which provides commonly needed functionality for security extensions. This includes maintaining the token in the session, providing success / failure handlers, login form URLs, and more. As WSSE does not require maintaining authentication sessions or login forms, it won't be used for this example.



Returning prematurely from the listener is relevant only if you want to chain authentication providers (for example to allow anonymous users). If you want to forbid access to anonymous users and have a nice 403 error, you should set the status code of the response before returning.

The Authentication Provider

The authentication provider will do the verification of the `WsseUserToken`. Namely, the provider will verify the `Created` header value is valid within five minutes, the `Nonce` header value is unique within five minutes, and the `PasswordDigest` header value matches with the user's password.

Listing 99-3

```

1  // src/Acme/DemoBundle/Security/Authentication/Provider/WsseProvider.php
2  namespace Acme\DemoBundle\Security\Authentication\Provider;
3
4  use
5  Symfony\Component\Security\Core\Authentication\Provider\AuthenticationProviderInterface;
6  use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\User\UserProviderInterface;
7  use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\Exception\AuthenticationException;
8  use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\Exception\NonceExpiredException;

```

7. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/Exception/AuthenticationException.html>

8. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Http/Firewall/AbstractAuthenticationListener.html>

```

9 use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\Authentication\Token\TokenInterface;
10 use Acme\DemoBundle\Security\Authentication\Token\WsseUserToken;
11
12 class WsseProvider implements AuthenticationProviderInterface
13 {
14     private $userProvider;
15     private $cacheDir;
16
17     public function __construct(UserProviderInterface $userProvider, $cacheDir)
18     {
19         $this->userProvider = $userProvider;
20         $this->cacheDir     = $cacheDir;
21     }
22
23     public function authenticate(TokenInterface $token)
24     {
25         $user = $this->userProvider->loadUserByUsername($token->getUsername());
26
27         if ($user && $this->validateDigest($token->digest, $token->nonce, $token->created,
28 $user->getPassword())) {
29             $authenticatedToken = new WsseUserToken($user->getRoles());
30             $authenticatedToken->setUser($user);
31
32             return $authenticatedToken;
33         }
34
35         throw new AuthenticationException('The WSSE authentication failed.');
```

*/***
** This function is specific to Wsse authentication and is only used to help this*
example

** For more information specific to the logic here, see*
** <https://github.com/symfony/symfony-docs/pull/3134#issuecomment-27699129>*
**/*

```

45 protected function validateDigest($digest, $nonce, $created, $secret)
46 {
47     // Check created time is not in the future
48     if (strtotime($created) > time()) {
49         return false;
50     }
51
52     // Expire timestamp after 5 minutes
53     if (time() - strtotime($created) > 300) {
54         return false;
55     }
56
57     // Validate that the nonce is *not* used in the last 5 minutes
58     // if it has, this could be a replay attack
59     if (file_exists($this->cacheDir.'/'.$nonce) &&
60 file_get_contents($this->cacheDir.'/'.$nonce) + 300 > time()) {
61         throw new NonceExpiredException('Previously used nonce detected');
```

// If cache directory does not exist we create it
if (!is_dir(\$this->cacheDir)) {
 mkdir(\$this->cacheDir, 0777, true);
}
 file_put_contents(\$this->cacheDir.'/'.\$nonce, time());
67

```

68
69     // Validate Secret
70     $expected = base64_encode(sha1(base64_decode($nonce).$created.$secret, true));
71
72     return $digest === $expected;
73 }
74
75 public function supports(TokenInterface $token)
76 {
77     return $token instanceof WsseUserToken;
78 }
79 }

```



The *AuthenticationProviderInterface*⁹ requires an `authenticate` method on the user token, and a `supports` method, which tells the authentication manager whether or not to use this provider for the given token. In the case of multiple providers, the authentication manager will then move to the next provider in the list.

The Factory

You have created a custom token, custom listener, and custom provider. Now you need to tie them all together. How do you make a unique provider available for every firewall? The answer is by using a *factory*. A factory is where you hook into the Security component, telling it the name of your provider and any configuration options available for it. First, you must create a class which implements *SecurityFactoryInterface*¹⁰.

Listing 99-4

```

1 // src/Acme/DemoBundle/DependencyInjection/Security/Factory/WsseFactory.php
2 namespace Acme\DemoBundle\DependencyInjection\Security\Factory;
3
4 use Symfony\Component\DependencyInjection\ContainerBuilder;
5 use Symfony\Component\DependencyInjection\Reference;
6 use Symfony\Component\DependencyInjection\DefinitionDecorator;
7 use Symfony\Component\Config\Definition\Builder\NodeDefinition;
8 use
9 Symfony\Bundle\SecurityBundle\DependencyInjection\Security\Factory\SecurityFactoryInterface;
10
11 class WsseFactory implements SecurityFactoryInterface
12 {
13     public function create(ContainerBuilder $container, $id, $config, $userProvider,
14 $defaultEntryPoint)
15     {
16         $providerId = 'security.authentication.provider.wsse.'.$id;
17         $container
18             ->setDefinition($providerId, new
19 DefinitionDecorator('wsse.security.authentication.provider'))
20             ->replaceArgument(0, new Reference($userProvider))
21         ;
22
23         $listenerId = 'security.authentication.listener.wsse.'.$id;
24         $listener = $container->setDefinition($listenerId, new
25 DefinitionDecorator('wsse.security.authentication.listener'));

```

9. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/Authentication/Provider/AuthenticationProviderInterface.html>

10. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Bundle/SecurityBundle/DependencyInjection/Security/Factory/SecurityFactoryInterface.html>

```

26
27     return array($providerId, $listenerId, $defaultEntryPoint);
28 }
29
30 public function getPosition()
31 {
32     return 'pre_auth';
33 }
34
35 public function getKey()
36 {
37     return 'wsse';
38 }
39
40 public function addConfiguration(NodeDefinition $node)
41 {
42 }
43 }

```

The *SecurityFactoryInterface*¹¹ requires the following methods:

- **create** method, which adds the listener and authentication provider to the DI container for the appropriate security context;
- **getPosition** method, which must be of type `pre_auth`, `form`, `http`, and `remember_me` and defines the position at which the provider is called;
- **getKey** method which defines the configuration key used to reference the provider in the firewall configuration;
- **addConfiguration** method, which is used to define the configuration options underneath the configuration key in your security configuration. Setting configuration options are explained later in this chapter.



A class not used in this example, *AbstractFactory*¹², is a very useful base class which provides commonly needed functionality for security factories. It may be useful when defining an authentication provider of a different type.

Now that you have created a factory class, the `wsse` key can be used as a firewall in your security configuration.



You may be wondering "why do you need a special factory class to add listeners and providers to the dependency injection container?". This is a very good question. The reason is you can use your firewall multiple times, to secure multiple parts of your application. Because of this, each time your firewall is used, a new service is created in the DI container. The factory is what creates these new services.

Configuration

It's time to see your authentication provider in action. You will need to do a few things in order to make this work. The first thing is to add the services above to the DI container. Your factory class above makes reference to service ids that do not exist yet: `wsse.security.authentication.provider` and `wsse.security.authentication.listener`. It's time to define those services.

11. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Bundle/SecurityBundle/DependencyInjection/Security/Factory/SecurityFactoryInterface.html>

12. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Bundle/SecurityBundle/DependencyInjection/Security/Factory/AbstractFactory.html>

Listing 99-5

```

1 # src/Acme/DemoBundle/Resources/config/services.yml
2 services:
3     wsse.security.authentication.provider:
4         class: Acme\DemoBundle\Security\Authentication\Provider\WsseProvider
5         arguments: ["", "%kernel.cache_dir%/security/nonces"]
6
7     wsse.security.authentication.listener:
8         class: Acme\DemoBundle\Security\Firewall\WsseListener
9         arguments: ["@security.context", "@security.authentication.manager"]

```

Now that your services are defined, tell your security context about your factory in your bundle class:

Listing 99-6

```

1 // src/Acme/DemoBundle/AcmeDemoBundle.php
2 namespace Acme\DemoBundle;
3
4 use Acme\DemoBundle\DependencyInjection\Security\Factory\WsseFactory;
5 use Symfony\Component\HttpKernel\Bundle\Bundle;
6 use Symfony\Component\DependencyInjection\ContainerBuilder;
7
8 class AcmeDemoBundle extends Bundle
9 {
10     public function build(ContainerBuilder $container)
11     {
12         parent::build($container);
13
14         $extension = $container->getExtension('security');
15         $extension->addSecurityListenerFactory(new WsseFactory());
16     }
17 }

```

You are finished! You can now define parts of your app as under WSSE protection.

Listing 99-7

```

1 security:
2     firewalls:
3         wsse_secured:
4             pattern: /api/.+
5             stateless: true
6             wsse: true

```

Congratulations! You have written your very own custom security authentication provider!

A little Extra

How about making your WSSE authentication provider a bit more exciting? The possibilities are endless. Why don't you start by adding some sparkle to that shine?

Configuration

You can add custom options under the `wsse` key in your security configuration. For instance, the time allowed before expiring the `Created` header item, by default, is 5 minutes. Make this configurable, so different firewalls can have different timeout lengths.

You will first need to edit `WsseFactory` and define the new option in the `addConfiguration` method.

Listing 99-8

```

1 class WsseFactory implements SecurityFactoryInterface
2 {
3     // ...
4
5     public function addConfiguration(NodeDefinition $node)
6     {
7         $node
8             ->children()
9             ->scalarNode('lifetime')->defaultValue(300)
10            ->end();
11     }
12 }

```

Now, in the `create` method of the factory, the `$config` argument will contain a `lifetime` key, set to 5 minutes (300 seconds) unless otherwise set in the configuration. Pass this argument to your authentication provider in order to put it to use.

Listing 99-9

```

1 class WsseFactory implements SecurityFactoryInterface
2 {
3     public function create(ContainerBuilder $container, $id, $config, $userProvider,
4     $defaultEntryPoint)
5     {
6         $providerId = 'security.authentication.provider.wsse.'.$id;
7         $container
8             ->setDefinition($providerId,
9             new DefinitionDecorator('wsse.security.authentication.provider'))
10            ->replaceArgument(0, new Reference($userProvider))
11            ->replaceArgument(2, $config['lifetime']);
12         // ...
13     }
14
15     // ...
16 }

```



You'll also need to add a third argument to the `wsse.security.authentication.provider` service configuration, which can be blank, but will be filled in with the lifetime in the factory. The `WsseProvider` class will also now need to accept a third constructor argument - the lifetime - which it should use instead of the hard-coded 300 seconds. These two steps are not shown here.

The lifetime of each WSSE request is now configurable, and can be set to any desirable value per firewall.

Listing 99-10

```

1 security:
2     firewalls:
3         wsse_secured:
4             pattern: /api/.+
5             stateless: true
6             wsse: { lifetime: 30 }

```

The rest is up to you! Any relevant configuration items can be defined in the factory and consumed or passed to the other classes in the container.



Chapter 100

Using pre Authenticated Security Firewalls

A lot of authentication modules are already provided by some web servers, including Apache. These modules generally set some environment variables that can be used to determine which user is accessing your application. Out of the box, Symfony supports most authentication mechanisms. These requests are called *pre authenticated* requests because the user is already authenticated when reaching your application.

X.509 Client Certificate Authentication

When using client certificates, your webserver is doing all the authentication process itself. With Apache, for example, you would use the `SSLVerifyClient Require` directive.

Enable the x509 authentication for a particular firewall in the security configuration:

```
Listing 100-1 1 # app/config/security.yml
                2 security:
                3     firewalls:
                4         secured_area:
                5             pattern: ^/
                6             x509:
                7                 provider: your_user_provider
```

By default, the firewall provides the `SSL_CLIENT_S_DN_Email` variable to the user provider, and sets the `SSL_CLIENT_S_DN` as credentials in the *PreAuthenticatedToken*¹. You can override these by setting the `user` and the `credentials` keys in the x509 firewall configuration respectively.

1. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/Authentication/Token/PreAuthenticatedToken.html>



An authentication provider will only inform the user provider of the username that made the request. You will need to create (or use) a "user provider" that is referenced by the **provider** configuration parameter (**your_user_provider** in the configuration example). This provider will turn the username into a User object of your choice. For more information on creating or configuring a user provider, see:

- *How to Create a custom User Provider*
- *How to Load Security Users from the Database (the Entity Provider)*



Chapter 101

How to Change the default Target Path Behavior

By default, the Security component retains the information of the last request URI in a session variable named `_security.main.target_path` (with `main` being the name of the firewall, defined in `security.yml`). Upon a successful login, the user is redirected to this path, as to help them continue from the last known page they visited.

In some situations, this is not ideal. For example, when the last request URI was an XMLHttpRequest which returned a non-HTML or partial HTML response, the user is redirected back to a page which the browser cannot render.

To get around this behavior, you would simply need to extend the `ExceptionListener` class and override the default method named `setTargetPath()`.

First, override the `security.exception_listener.class` parameter in your configuration file. This can be done from your main configuration file (in `app/config`) or from a configuration file being imported from a bundle:

```
Listing 101-1 1 # src/Acme/HelloBundle/Resources/config/services.yml
2 parameters:
3     # ...
4     security.exception_listener.class: Acme\HelloBundle\Security\Firewall\ExceptionListener
```

Next, create your own `ExceptionListener`:

```
Listing 101-2 1 // src/Acme/HelloBundle/Security/Firewall/ExceptionListener.php
2 namespace Acme\HelloBundle\Security\Firewall;
3
4 use Symfony\Component\HttpFoundation\Request;
5 use Symfony\Component\Security\Http\Firewall\ExceptionListener as BaseExceptionListener;
6
7 class ExceptionListener extends BaseExceptionListener
8 {
9     protected function setTargetPath(Request $request)
10    {
```

```
11      // Do not save target path for XHR requests
12      // You can add any more logic here you want
13      // Note that non-GET requests are already ignored
14      if ($request->isXmlHttpRequest()) {
15          return;
16      }
17
18      parent::setTargetPath($request);
19  }
20 }
```

Add as much or few logic here as required for your scenario!



Chapter 102

Using CSRF Protection in the Login Form

When using a login form, you should make sure that you are protected against CSRF (*Cross-site request forgery*¹). The Security component already has built-in support for CSRF. In this article you'll learn how you can use it in your login form.



Login CSRF attacks are a bit less well-known. See *Forging Login Requests*² if you're curious about more details.

Configuring CSRF Protection

First, configure the Security component so it can use CSRF protection. The Security component needs a CSRF token provider. You can set this to use the default provider available in the Form component:

```
Listing 102-1 1 # app/config/security.yml
               2 security:
               3     firewalls:
               4         secured_area:
               5             # ...
               6             form_login:
               7                 # ...
               8                 csrf_provider: form.csrf_provider
```

The Security component can be configured further, but this is all information it needs to be able to use CSRF in the login form.

1. http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cross-site_request_forgery

2. http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cross-site_request_forgery#Forging_login_requests

Rendering the CSRF field

Now that Security component will check for the CSRF token, you have to add a *hidden* field to the login form containing the CSRF token. By default, this field is named `_csrf_token`. That hidden field must contain the CSRF token, which can be generated by using the `csrf_token` function. That function requires a token ID, which must be set to `authenticate` when using the login form:

Listing 102-2

```
1  {% src/Acme/SecurityBundle/Resources/views/Security/login.html.twig %}  
2  
3  {% ... %}  
4  <form action="{{ path('login_check') }}" method="post">  
5      {% ... the login fields %}  
6  
7      <input type="hidden" name="_csrf_token"  
8          value="{{ csrf_token('authenticate') }}">  
9      </input>  
10  
11      <button type="submit">login</button>  
12 </form>
```

After this, you have protected your login form against CSRF attacks.



You can change the name of the field by setting `csrf_parameter` and change the token ID by setting `intention` in your configuration:

Listing 102-3

```
1  # app/config/security.yml  
2  security:  
3      firewalls:  
4          secured_area:  
5              # ...  
6              form_login:  
7                  # ...  
8                  csrf_parameter: _csrf_security_token  
9                  intention: a_private_string
```



Chapter 103

How to Choose the Password Encoder Algorithm Dynamically



New in version 2.5: Named encoders were introduced in Symfony 2.5.

Usually, the same password encoder is used for all users by configuring it to apply to all instances of a specific class:

```
Listing 103-1 1 # app/config/security.yml
                2 security:
                3     # ...
                4     encoders:
                5         Symfony\Component\Security\Core\User\User: sha512
```

Another option is to use a "named" encoder and then select which encoder you want to use dynamically. In the previous example, you've set the `sha512` algorithm for `Acme\UserBundle\Entity\User`. This may be secure enough for a regular user, but what if you want your admins to have a stronger algorithm, for example `bcrypt`. This can be done with named encoders:

```
Listing 103-2 1 # app/config/security.yml
                2 security:
                3     # ...
                4     encoders:
                5         harsh:
                6             algorithm: bcrypt
                7             cost: 15
```

This creates an encoder named **harsh**. In order for a **User** instance to use it, the class must implement *EncoderAwareInterface*¹. The interface requires one method - **getEncoderName** - which should return the name of the encoder to use:

```
Listing 103-3 1 // src/Acme/UserBundle/Entity/User.php
2 namespace Acme\UserBundle\Entity;
3
4 use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\User\UserInterface;
5 use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\Encoder\EncoderAwareInterface;
6
7 class User implements UserInterface, EncoderAwareInterface
8 {
9     public function getEncoderName()
10    {
11        if ($this->isAdmin()) {
12            return 'harsh';
13        }
14
15        return null; // use the default encoder
16    }
17 }
```

1. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Security/Core/Encoder/EncoderAwareInterface.html>



Chapter 104

How to Use the Serializer

Serializing and deserializing to and from objects and different formats (e.g. JSON or XML) is a very complex topic. Symfony comes with a *Serializer Component*, which gives you some tools that you can leverage for your solution.

In fact, before you start, get familiar with the serializer, normalizers and encoders by reading the *Serializer Component*. You should also check out the *JMSSerializerBundle*¹, which expands on the functionality offered by Symfony's core serializer.

Activating the Serializer



New in version 2.3: The Serializer has always existed in Symfony, but prior to Symfony 2.3, you needed to build the `serializer` service yourself.

The `serializer` service is not available by default. To turn it on, activate it in your configuration:

Listing 104-1

```
1 # app/config/config.yml
2 framework:
3     # ...
4     serializer:
5         enabled: true
```

Adding Normalizers and Encoders

Once enabled, the `serializer` service will be available in the container and will be loaded with two *encoders* (*JsonEncoder*² and *XmlEncoder*³) but no *normalizers*, meaning you'll need to load your own.

1. <http://jmsyst.com/bundles/JMSSerializerBundle>

2. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Serializer/Encoder/JsonEncoder.html>

3. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Serializer/Encoder/XmlEncoder.html>

You can load normalizers and/or encoders by tagging them as *serializer.normalizer* and *serializer.encoder*. It's also possible to set the priority of the tag in order to decide the matching order.

Here is an example on how to load the *GetSetMethodNormalizer*⁴:

Listing 104-2

```
1 # app/config/config.yml
2 services:
3     get_set_method_normalizer:
4         class: Symfony\Component\Serializer\Normalizer\GetSetMethodNormalizer
5         tags:
6             - { name: serializer.normalizer }
```



The *GetSetMethodNormalizer*⁵ is broken by design. As soon as you have a circular object graph, an infinite loop is created when calling the getters. You're encouraged to add your own normalizers that fit your use-case.

4. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Serializer/Normalizer/GetSetMethodNormalizer.html>

5. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Serializer/Normalizer/GetSetMethodNormalizer.html>



Chapter 105

How to Create an Event Listener

Symfony has various events and hooks that can be used to trigger custom behavior in your application. Those events are thrown by the `HttpKernel` component and can be viewed in the *`KernelEvents`*¹ class.

To hook into an event and add your own custom logic, you have to create a service that will act as an event listener on that event. In this entry, you will create a service that will act as an Exception Listener, allowing you to modify how exceptions are shown by your application. The `KernelEvents::EXCEPTION` event is just one of the core kernel events:

Listing 105-1

```
1  // src/Acme/DemoBundle/EventListener/AcmeExceptionListener.php
2  namespace Acme\DemoBundle\EventListener;
3
4  use Symfony\Component\HttpKernel\Event\GetResponseForExceptionEvent;
5  use Symfony\Component\HttpFoundation\Response;
6  use Symfony\Component\HttpKernel\Exception\HttpExceptionInterface;
7
8  class AcmeExceptionListener
9  {
10     public function onKernelException(GetResponseForExceptionEvent $event)
11     {
12         // You get the exception object from the received event
13         $exception = $event->getException();
14         $message = sprintf(
15             'My Error says: %s with code: %s',
16             $exception->getMessage(),
17             $exception->getStatusCode()
18         );
19
20         // Customize your response object to display the exception details
21         $response = new Response();
22         $response->setContent($message);
23
24         // HttpExceptionInterface is a special type of exception that
25         // holds status code and header details
26         if ($exception instanceof HttpExceptionInterface) {
```

1. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpKernel/KernelEvents.html>

```

27         $response->setStatusCode($exception->getStatusCode());
28         $response->headers->replace($exception->getHeaders());
29     } else {
30         $response->setStatusCode(Response::HTTP_INTERNAL_SERVER_ERROR);
31     }
32
33     // Send the modified response object to the event
34     $event->setResponse($response);
35 }
36 }

```



New in version 2.4: Support for HTTP status code constants was introduced in Symfony 2.4.



Each event receives a slightly different type of `$event` object. For the `kernel.exception` event, it is `GetResponseForExceptionEvent`². To see what type of object each event listener receives, see `KernelEvents`³.

Now that the class is created, you just need to register it as a service and notify Symfony that it is a "listener" on the `kernel.exception` event by using a special "tag":

Listing 105-2

```

1 # app/config/config.yml
2 services:
3     kernel.listener.your_listener_name:
4         class: Acme\DemoBundle\EventListener\AcmeExceptionListener
5         tags:
6             - { name: kernel.event_listener, event: kernel.exception, method:
              onKernelException }

```



There is an additional tag option `priority` that is optional and defaults to 0. This value can be from -255 to 255, and the listeners will be executed in the order of their priority (highest to lowest). This is useful when you need to guarantee that one listener is executed before another.

Request Events, Checking Types



New in version 2.4: The `isMasterRequest()` method was introduced in Symfony 2.4. Prior, the `getRequestType()` method must be used.

A single page can make several requests (one master request, and then multiple sub-requests), which is why when working with the `KernelEvents::REQUEST` event, you might need to check the type of the request. This can be easily done as follow:

Listing 105-3

2. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpKernel/Event/GetResponseForExceptionEvent.html>
3. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpKernel/KernelEvents.html>

```

1  // src/Acme/DemoBundle/EventListener/AcmeRequestListener.php
2  namespace Acme\DemoBundle\EventListener;
3
4  use Symfony\Component\HttpKernel\Event\GetResponseEvent;
5  use Symfony\Component\HttpKernel\HttpKernel;
6
7  class AcmeRequestListener
8  {
9      public function onKernelRequest(GetResponseEvent $event)
10     {
11         if (!$event->isMasterRequest()) {
12             // don't do anything if it's not the master request
13             return;
14         }
15
16         // ...
17     }
18 }

```



Two types of request are available in the *HttpKernelInterface*⁴ interface: `HttpKernelInterface::MASTER_REQUEST` and `HttpKernelInterface::SUB_REQUEST`.

4. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpKernel/HttpKernelInterface.html>



Chapter 106

How to Work with Scopes

This entry is all about scopes, a somewhat advanced topic related to the *Service Container*. If you've ever gotten an error mentioning "scopes" when creating services, then this entry is for you.



If you are trying to inject the `request` service, the simple solution is to inject the `request_stack` service instead and access the current Request by calling the `getCurrentRequest()`¹ method (see *Injecting the Request*). The rest of this entry talks about scopes in a theoretical and more advanced way. If you're dealing with scopes for the `request` service, simply inject `request_stack`.

Understanding Scopes

The scope of a service controls how long an instance of a service is used by the container. The DependencyInjection component provides two generic scopes:

- **container** (the default one): The same instance is used each time you request it from this container.
- **prototype**: A new instance is created each time you request the service.

The *ContainerAwareHttpKernel*² also defines a third scope: `request`. This scope is tied to the request, meaning a new instance is created for each subrequest and is unavailable outside the request (for instance in the CLI).

An Example: Client Scope

Other than the `request` service (which has a simple solution, see the above note), no services in the default Symfony2 container belong to any scope other than `container` and `prototype`. But for the purposes of this entry, imagine there is another scope `client` and a service `client_configuration` that belongs to it. This is not a common situation, but the idea is that you may enter and exit multiple `client` scopes during a request, and each has its own `client_configuration` service.

1. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpFoundation/RequestStack.html#getCurrentRequest\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpFoundation/RequestStack.html#getCurrentRequest())

2. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpKernel/DependencyInjection/ContainerAwareHttpKernel.html>

Scopes add a constraint on the dependencies of a service: a service cannot depend on services from a narrower scope. For example, if you create a generic `my_foo` service, but try to inject the `client_configuration` service, you will receive a *ScopeWideningInjectionException*³ when compiling the container. Read the sidebar below for more details.



Scopes and Dependencies

Imagine you've configured a `my_mailer` service. You haven't configured the scope of the service, so it defaults to `container`. In other words, every time you ask the container for the `my_mailer` service, you get the same object back. This is usually how you want your services to work.

Imagine, however, that you need the `client_configuration` service in your `my_mailer` service, maybe because you're reading some details from it, such as what the "sender" address should be. You add it as a constructor argument. There are several reasons why this presents a problem:

- When requesting `my_mailer`, an instance of `my_mailer` (called *MailerA* here) is created and the `client_configuration` service (called *ConfigurationA* here) is passed to it. Life is good!
- Your application now needs to do something with another client, and you've architected your application in such a way that you handle this by entering a new `client_configuration` scope and setting a new `client_configuration` service into the container. Call this *ConfigurationB*.
- Somewhere in your application, you once again ask for the `my_mailer` service. Since your service is in the `container` scope, the same instance (*MailerA*) is just re-used. But here's the problem: the *MailerA* instance still contains the old *ConfigurationA* object, which is now **not** the correct configuration object to have (*ConfigurationB* is now the current `client_configuration` service). This is subtle, but the mis-match could cause major problems, which is why it's not allowed.

So, that's the reason *why* scopes exist, and how they can cause problems. Keep reading to find out the common solutions.



A service can of course depend on a service from a wider scope without any issue.

Using a Service from a Narrower Scope

There are several solutions to the scope problem:

- A) Use setter injection if the dependency is **synchronized** (see *A) Using a Synchronized Service*);
- B) Put your service in the same scope as the dependency (or a narrower one). If you depend on the `client_configuration` service, this means putting your new service in the `client` scope (see *B) Changing the Scope of your Service*);
- C) Pass the entire container to your service and retrieve your dependency from the container each time you need it to be sure you have the right instance -- your service can live in the default `container` scope (see *C) Passing the Container as a Dependency of your Service*).

Each scenario is detailed in the following sections.

3. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/DependencyInjection/Exception/ScopeWideningInjectionException.html>

A) Using a Synchronized Service



New in version 2.3: Synchronized services were introduced in Symfony 2.3.

Both injecting the container and setting your service to a narrower scope have drawbacks. Assume first that the `client_configuration` service has been marked as `synchronized`:

```
Listing 106-1 1 # app/config/config.yml
2 services:
3     client_configuration:
4         class:      Acme\HelloBundle\Client\ClientConfiguration
5         scope:      client
6         synchronized: true
7         synthetic:  true
8         # ...
```

Now, if you inject this service using setter injection, there are no drawbacks and everything works without any special code in your service or in your definition:

```
Listing 106-2 1 // src/Acme/HelloBundle/Mail/Mailer.php
2 namespace Acme\HelloBundle\Mail;
3
4 use Acme\HelloBundle\Client\ClientConfiguration;
5
6 class Mailer
7 {
8     protected $clientConfiguration;
9
10    public function setClientConfiguration(ClientConfiguration $clientConfiguration = null)
11    {
12        $this->clientConfiguration = $clientConfiguration;
13    }
14
15    public function sendEmail()
16    {
17        if (null === $this->clientConfiguration) {
18            // throw an error?
19        }
20
21        // ... do something using the client configuration here
22    }
23 }
```

Whenever the `client` scope is active, the service container will automatically call the `setClientConfiguration()` method when the `client_configuration` service is set in the container.

You might have noticed that the `setClientConfiguration()` method accepts `null` as a valid value for the `client_configuration` argument. That's because when leaving the `client` scope, the `client_configuration` instance can be `null`. Of course, you should take care of this possibility in your code. This should also be taken into account when declaring your service:

```
Listing 106-3 1 # src/Acme/HelloBundle/Resources/config/services.yml
2 services:
3     my_mailer:
```

```

4      class: Acme\HelloBundle\Mail\Mailer
5      calls:
6          - [setClientConfiguration, ["@?client_configuration="]]

```

B) Changing the Scope of your Service

Changing the scope of a service should be done in its definition. This example assumes that the **Mailer** class has a `__construct` function whose first argument is the **ClientConfiguration** object:

Listing 106-4

```

1  # src/Acme/HelloBundle/Resources/config/services.yml
2  services:
3      my_mailer:
4          class: Acme\HelloBundle\Mail\Mailer
5          scope: client
6          arguments: ["@client_configuration"]

```

C) Passing the Container as a Dependency of your Service

Setting the scope to a narrower one is not always possible (for instance, a twig extension must be in the **container** scope as the Twig environment needs it as a dependency). In these cases, you can pass the entire container into your service:

Listing 106-5

```

1  // src/Acme/HelloBundle/Mail/Mailer.php
2  namespace Acme\HelloBundle\Mail;
3
4  use Symfony\Component\DependencyInjection\ContainerInterface;
5
6  class Mailer
7  {
8      protected $container;
9
10     public function __construct(ContainerInterface $container)
11     {
12         $this->container = $container;
13     }
14
15     public function sendEmail()
16     {
17         $request = $this->container->get('client_configuration');
18         // ... do something using the client configuration here
19     }
20 }

```



Take care not to store the client configuration in a property of the object for a future call of the service as it would cause the same issue described in the first section (except that Symfony cannot detect that you are wrong).

The service config for this class would look something like this:

Listing 106-6

```

1  # src/Acme/HelloBundle/Resources/config/services.yml
2  parameters:
3      # ...

```

```
4     my_mailer.class: Acme\HelloBundle\Mail\Mailer
5
6 services:
7     my_mailer:
8         class:      "%my_mailer.class%"
9         arguments: ["@service_container"]
10        # scope: container can be omitted as it is the default
```



Injecting the whole container into a service is generally not a good idea (only inject what you need).



Chapter 107

How to Work with Compiler Passes in Bundles

Compiler passes give you an opportunity to manipulate other service definitions that have been registered with the service container. You can read about how to create them in the components section "*Compiling the Container*". To register a compiler pass from a bundle you need to add it to the build method of the bundle definition class:

```
Listing 107-1 1 // src/Acme/MailerBundle/AcmeMailerBundle.php
2 namespace Acme\MailerBundle;
3
4 use Symfony\Component\HttpKernel\Bundle\Bundle;
5 use Symfony\Component\DependencyInjection\ContainerBuilder;
6
7 use Acme\MailerBundle\DependencyInjection\Compiler\CustomCompilerPass;
8
9 class AcmeMailerBundle extends Bundle
10 {
11     public function build(ContainerBuilder $container)
12     {
13         parent::build($container);
14
15         $container->addCompilerPass(new CustomCompilerPass());
16     }
17 }
```

One of the most common use-cases of compiler passes is to work with tagged services (read more about tags in the components section "*Working with Tagged Services*"). If you are using custom tags in a bundle then by convention, tag names consist of the name of the bundle (lowercase, underscores as separators), followed by a dot, and finally the "real" name. For example, if you want to introduce some sort of "transport" tag in your AcmeMailerBundle, you should call it `acme_mailer.transport`.



Chapter 108

Session Proxy Examples

The session proxy mechanism has a variety of uses and this example demonstrates two common uses. Rather than injecting the session handler as normal, a handler is injected into the proxy and registered with the session storage driver:

Listing 108-1

```
1 use Symfony\Component\HttpFoundation\Session\Session;
2 use Symfony\Component\HttpFoundation\Session\Storage\NativeSessionStorage;
3 use Symfony\Component\HttpFoundation\Session\Storage\Handler\PdoSessionHandler;
4
5 $proxy = new YourProxy(new PdoSessionHandler());
6 $session = new Session(new NativeSessionStorage(array(), $proxy));
```

Below, you'll learn two real examples that can be used for **YourProxy**: encryption of session data and readonly guest sessions.

Encryption of Session Data

If you wanted to encrypt the session data, you could use the proxy to encrypt and decrypt the session as required:

Listing 108-2

```
1 use Symfony\Component\HttpFoundation\Session\Storage\Proxy\SessionHandlerProxy;
2
3 class EncryptedSessionProxy extends SessionHandlerProxy
4 {
5     private $key;
6
7     public function __construct(\SessionHandlerInterface $handler, $key)
8     {
9         $this->key = $key;
10
11         parent::__construct($handler);
12     }
13
14     public function read($id)
```

```

15     {
16         $data = parent::read($id);
17
18         return mdecrypt_decrypt(\MCRYPT_3DES, $this->key, $data);
19     }
20
21     public function write($id, $data)
22     {
23         $data = mencrypt_encrypt(\MCRYPT_3DES, $this->key, $data);
24
25         return parent::write($id, $data);
26     }
27 }

```

ReadOnly Guest Sessions

There are some applications where a session is required for guest users, but where there is no particular need to persist the session. In this case you can intercept the session before it is written:

Listing 108-3

```

1 use Foo\User;
2 use Symfony\Component\HttpFoundation\Session\Storage\Proxy\SessionHandlerProxy;
3
4 class ReadOnlyGuestSessionProxy extends SessionHandlerProxy
5 {
6     private $user;
7
8     public function __construct(\SessionHandlerInterface $handler, User $user)
9     {
10         $this->user = $user;
11
12         parent::__construct($handler);
13     }
14
15     public function write($id, $data)
16     {
17         if ($this->user->isGuest()) {
18             return;
19         }
20
21         return parent::write($id, $data);
22     }
23 }

```



Chapter 109

Making the Locale "Sticky" during a User's Session

Prior to Symfony 2.1, the locale was stored in a session attribute called `_locale`. Since 2.1, it is stored in the Request, which means that it's not "sticky" during a user's request. In this article, you'll learn how to make the locale of a user "sticky" so that once it's set, that same locale will be used for every subsequent request.

Creating a LocaleListener

To simulate that the locale is stored in a session, you need to create and register a *new event listener*. The listener will look something like this. Typically, `_locale` is used as a routing parameter to signify the locale, though it doesn't really matter how you determine the desired locale from the request:

```
Listing 109-1 1 // src/Acme/LocaleBundle/EventListener/LocaleListener.php
2 namespace Acme\LocaleBundle\EventListener;
3
4 use Symfony\Component\HttpFoundation\Event\GetResponseEvent;
5 use Symfony\Component\HttpFoundation\KernelEvents;
6 use Symfony\Component\EventDispatcher\EventSubscriberInterface;
7
8 class LocaleListener implements EventSubscriberInterface
9 {
10     private $defaultLocale;
11
12     public function __construct($defaultLocale = 'en')
13     {
14         $this->defaultLocale = $defaultLocale;
15     }
16
17     public function onKernelRequest(GetResponseEvent $event)
18     {
19         $request = $event->getRequest();
```

```

20         if (!$request->hasPreviousSession()) {
21             return;
22         }
23
24         // try to see if the locale has been set as a _locale routing parameter
25         if ($locale = $request->attributes->get('_locale')) {
26             $request->getSession()->set('_locale', $locale);
27         } else {
28             // if no explicit locale has been set on this request, use one from the session
29             $request->setLocale($request->getSession()->get('_locale',
30 $this->defaultLocale));
31         }
32     }
33
34     public static function getSubscribedEvents()
35     {
36         return array(
37             // must be registered before the default Locale listener
38             KernelEvents::REQUEST => array(array('onKernelRequest', 17)),
39         );
40     }

```

Then register the listener:

```

Listing 109-2 1 services:
2     acme_locale.locale_listener:
3         class: Acme\LocaleBundle\EventListener\LocaleListener
4         arguments: ["%kernel.default_locale%"]
5         tags:
6             - { name: kernel.event_subscriber }

```

That's it! Now celebrate by changing the user's locale and seeing that it's sticky throughout the request. Remember, to get the user's locale, always use the *Request::getLocale*¹ method:

```

Listing 109-3 1 // from a controller...
2 use Symfony\Component\HttpFoundation\Request;
3
4 public function indexAction(Request $request)
5 {
6     $locale = $request->getLocale();
7 }

```

1. [http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpFoundation/Request.html#getLocale\(\)](http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/HttpFoundation/Request.html#getLocale())



Chapter 110

Configuring the Directory where Session Files are Saved

By default, the Symfony Standard Edition uses the global `php.ini` values for `session.save_handler` and `session.save_path` to determine where to store session data. This is because of the following configuration:

Listing 110-1

```
1 # app/config/config.yml
2 framework:
3     session:
4         # handler_id set to null will use default session handler from php.ini
5         handler_id: ~
```

With this configuration, changing *where* your session metadata is stored is entirely up to your `php.ini` configuration.

However, if you have the following configuration, Symfony will store the session data in files in the cache directory `%kernel.cache_dir%/sessions`. This means that when you clear the cache, any current sessions will also be deleted:

Listing 110-2

```
1 # app/config/config.yml
2 framework:
3     session: ~
```

Using a different directory to save session data is one method to ensure that your current sessions aren't lost when you clear Symfony's cache.



Using a different session save handler is an excellent (yet more complex) method of session management available within Symfony. See *Configuring Sessions and Save Handlers* for a discussion of session save handlers. There is also an entry in the cookbook about storing sessions in the *database*.

To change the directory in which Symfony saves session data, you only need change the framework configuration. In this example, you will change the session directory to `app/sessions`:

Listing 110-3

```
1 # app/config/config.yml
2 framework:
3     session:
4         handler_id: session.handler.native_file
5         save_path: "%kernel.root_dir%/sessions"
```



Chapter 111

Bridge a legacy Application with Symfony Sessions



New in version 2.3: The ability to integrate with a legacy PHP session was introduced in Symfony 2.3.

If you're integrating the Symfony full-stack Framework into a legacy application that starts the session with `session_start()`, you may still be able to use Symfony's session management by using the PHP Bridge session.

If the application has sets it's own PHP save handler, you can specify null for the `handler_id`:

Listing 111-1

```
1 framework:
2     session:
3         storage_id: session.storage.php_bridge
4         handler_id: ~
```

Otherwise, if the problem is simply that you cannot avoid the application starting the session with `session_start()`, you can still make use of a Symfony based session save handler by specifying the save handler as in the example below:

Listing 111-2

```
1 framework:
2     session:
3         storage_id: session.storage.php_bridge
4         handler_id: session.handler.native_file
```




If the legacy application requires its own session save-handler, do not override this. Instead set `handler_id: ~`. Note that a save handler cannot be changed once the session has been started. If the application starts the session before Symfony is initialized, the save-handler will have already been set. In this case, you will need `handler_id: ~`. Only override the save-handler if you are sure the legacy application can use the Symfony save-handler without side effects and that the session has not been started before Symfony is initialized.

For more details, see *Integrating with Legacy Sessions*.



Chapter 112

Limit Session Metadata Writes



New in version 2.4: The ability to limit session metadata writes was introduced in Symfony 2.4.

The default behavior of PHP session is to persist the session regardless of whether the session data has changed or not. In Symfony, each time the session is accessed, metadata is recorded (session created/last used) which can be used to determine session age and idle time.

If for performance reasons you wish to limit the frequency at which the session persists, this feature can adjust the granularity of the metadata updates and persist the session less often while still maintaining relatively accurate metadata. If other session data is changed, the session will always persist.

You can tell Symfony not to update the metadata "session last updated" time until a certain amount of time has passed, by setting `framework.session.metadata_update_threshold` to a value in seconds greater than zero:

Listing 112-1

```
1 framework:
2     session:
3         metadata_update_threshold: 120
```



PHP default's behavior is to save the session whether it has been changed or not. When using `framework.session.metadata_update_threshold` Symfony will wrap the session handler (configured at `framework.session.handler_id`) into the `WriteCheckSessionHandler`. This will prevent any session write if the session was not modified.



Be aware that if the session is not written at every request, it may be garbage collected sooner than usual. This means that your users may be logged out sooner than expected.



Chapter 113

How Symfony2 Differs from Symfony1

The Symfony2 framework embodies a significant evolution when compared with the first version of the framework. Fortunately, with the MVC architecture at its core, the skills used to master a symfony1 project continue to be very relevant when developing in Symfony2. Sure, `app.yml` is gone, but routing, controllers and templates all remain.

This chapter walks through the differences between symfony1 and Symfony2. As you'll see, many tasks are tackled in a slightly different way. You'll come to appreciate these minor differences as they promote stable, predictable, testable and decoupled code in your Symfony2 applications.

So, sit back and relax as you travel from "then" to "now".

Directory Structure

When looking at a Symfony2 project - for example, the *Symfony2 Standard Edition*¹ - you'll notice a very different directory structure than in symfony1. The differences, however, are somewhat superficial.

The `app/` Directory

In symfony1, your project has one or more applications, and each lives inside the `apps/` directory (e.g. `apps/frontend`). By default in Symfony2, you have just one application represented by the `app/` directory. Like in symfony1, the `app/` directory contains configuration specific to that application. It also contains application-specific cache, log and template directories as well as a `Kernel` class (`AppKernel`), which is the base object that represents the application.

Unlike symfony1, almost no PHP code lives in the `app/` directory. This directory is not meant to house modules or library files as it did in symfony1. Instead, it's simply the home of configuration and other resources (templates, translation files).

The `src/` Directory

Put simply, your actual code goes here. In Symfony2, all actual application-code lives inside a bundle (roughly equivalent to a symfony1 plugin) and, by default, each bundle lives inside the `src` directory.

1. <https://github.com/symfony/symfony-standard>

In that way, the **src** directory is a bit like the **plugins** directory in symfony1, but much more flexible. Additionally, while *your* bundles will live in the **src/** directory, third-party bundles will live somewhere in the **vendor/** directory.

To get a better picture of the **src/** directory, first think of the structure of a symfony1 application. First, part of your code likely lives inside one or more applications. Most commonly these include modules, but could also include any other PHP classes you put in your application. You may have also created a **schema.yml** file in the **config** directory of your project and built several model files. Finally, to help with some common functionality, you're using several third-party plugins that live in the **plugins/** directory. In other words, the code that drives your application lives in many different places.

In Symfony2, life is much simpler because *all* Symfony2 code must live in a bundle. In the pretend symfony1 project, all the code *could* be moved into one or more plugins (which is a very good practice, in fact). Assuming that all modules, PHP classes, schema, routing configuration, etc. were moved into a plugin, the symfony1 **plugins/** directory would be very similar to the Symfony2 **src/** directory.

Put simply again, the **src/** directory is where your code, assets, templates and most anything else specific to your project will live.

The vendor/ Directory

The **vendor/** directory is basically equivalent to the **lib/vendor/** directory in symfony1, which was the conventional directory for all vendor libraries and bundles. By default, you'll find the Symfony2 library files in this directory, along with several other dependent libraries such as Doctrine2, Twig and Swift Mailer. 3rd party Symfony2 bundles live somewhere in the **vendor/**.

The web/ Directory

Not much has changed in the **web/** directory. The most noticeable difference is the absence of the **css/**, **js/** and **images/** directories. This is intentional. Like with your PHP code, all assets should also live inside a bundle. With the help of a console command, the **Resources/public/** directory of each bundle is copied or symbolically-linked to the **web/bundles/** directory. This allows you to keep assets organized inside your bundle, but still make them available to the public. To make sure that all bundles are available, run the following command:

Listing 113-1 1 \$ php app/console assets:install web



This command is the Symfony2 equivalent to the symfony1 **plugin:publish-assets** command.

Autoloading

One of the advantages of modern frameworks is never needing to worry about requiring files. By making use of an autoloader, you can refer to any class in your project and trust that it's available. Autoloading has changed in Symfony2 to be more universal, faster, and independent of needing to clear your cache.

In symfony1, autoloading was done by searching the entire project for the presence of PHP class files and caching this information in a giant array. That array told symfony1 exactly which file contained each class. In the production environment, this caused you to need to clear the cache when classes were added or moved.

In Symfony2, a tool named *Composer*² handles this process. The idea behind the autoloader is simple: the name of your class (including the namespace) must match up with the path to the file containing that class. Take the FrameworkExtraBundle from the Symfony2 Standard Edition as an example:

Listing 113-2

```
1 namespace Sensio\Bundle\FrameworkExtraBundle;
2
3 use Symfony\Component\HttpKernel\Bundle\Bundle;
4 // ...
5
6 class SensioFrameworkExtraBundle extends Bundle
7 {
8     // ...
9 }
```

The file itself lives at `vendor/sensio/framework-extra-bundle/Sensio/Bundle/FrameworkExtraBundle/SensioFrameworkExtraBundle.php`. As you can see, the second part of the path follows the namespace of the class. The first part is equal to the package name of the SensioFrameworkExtraBundle.

The namespace, `Sensio\Bundle\FrameworkExtraBundle`, and package name, `sensio/framework-extra-bundle`, spells out the directory that the file should live in (`vendor/sensio/framework-extra-bundle/Sensio/Bundle/FrameworkExtraBundle/`). Composer can then look for the file at this specific place and load it very fast.

If the file did *not* live at this exact location, you'd receive a `Class "Sensio\Bundle\FrameworkExtraBundle\SensioFrameworkExtraBundle" does not exist.` error. In Symfony2, a "class does not exist" error means that the namespace of the class and physical location do not match. Basically, Symfony2 is looking in one exact location for that class, but that location doesn't exist (or contains a different class). In order for a class to be autoloaded, you **never need to clear your cache** in Symfony2.

As mentioned before, for the autoloader to work, it needs to know that the `Sensio` namespace lives in the `vendor/sensio/framework-extra-bundle` directory and that, for example, the `Doctrine` namespace lives in the `vendor/doctrine/orm/lib/` directory. This mapping is entirely controlled by Composer. Each third-party library you load through Composer has its settings defined and Composer takes care of everything for you.

For this to work, all third-party libraries used by your project must be defined in the `composer.json` file.

If you look at the `HelloController` from the Symfony2 Standard Edition you can see that it lives in the `Acme\DemoBundle\Controller` namespace. Yet, the `AcmeDemoBundle` is not defined in your `composer.json` file. Nonetheless are the files autoloaded. This is because you can tell composer to autoload files from specific directories without defining a dependency:

Listing 113-3

```
"autoload": {
    "psr-0": { "" : "src/" }
}
```

This means that if a class is not found in the `vendor` directory, Composer will search in the `src` directory before throwing a "class does not exist" exception. Read more about configuring the Composer autoloader in *the Composer documentation*³.

Using the Console

In symfony1, the console is in the root directory of your project and is called `symfony`:

2. <http://getcomposer.org>

3. <http://getcomposer.org/doc/04-schema.md#autoload>

Listing 113-4 1 \$ php symfony

In Symfony2, the console is now in the app sub-directory and is called **console**:

Listing 113-5 1 \$ php app/console

Applications

In a symfony1 project, it is common to have several applications: one for the frontend and one for the backend for instance.

In a Symfony2 project, you only need to create one application (a blog application, an intranet application, ...). Most of the time, if you want to create a second application, you might instead create another project and share some bundles between them.

And if you need to separate the frontend and the backend features of some bundles, you can create sub-namespaces for controllers, sub-directories for templates, different semantic configurations, separate routing configurations, and so on.

Of course, there's nothing wrong with having multiple applications in your project, that's entirely up to you. A second application would mean a new directory, e.g. **my_app/**, with the same basic setup as the **app/** directory.



Read the definition of a *Project*, an *Application*, and a *Bundle* in the glossary.

Bundles and Plugins

In a symfony1 project, a plugin could contain configuration, modules, PHP libraries, assets and anything else related to your project. In Symfony2, the idea of a plugin is replaced by the "bundle". A bundle is even more powerful than a plugin because the core Symfony2 framework is brought in via a series of bundles. In Symfony2, bundles are first-class citizens that are so flexible that even core code itself is a bundle.

In symfony1, a plugin must be enabled inside the **ProjectConfiguration** class:

```
Listing 113-6 1 // config/ProjectConfiguration.class.php
2 public function setup()
3 {
4     // some plugins here
5     $this->enableAllPluginsExcept(array(...));
6 }
```

In Symfony2, the bundles are activated inside the application kernel:

```
Listing 113-7 1 // app/AppKernel.php
2 public function registerBundles()
3 {
4     $bundles = array(
5         new Symfony\Bundle\FrameworkBundle\FrameworkBundle(),
```

```

6         new Symfony\Bundle\TwigBundle\TwigBundle(),
7         ...,
8         new Acme\DemoBundle\AcmeDemoBundle(),
9     );
10
11     return $bundles;
12 }

```

Routing (routing.yml) and Configuration (config.yml)

In symfony1, the `routing.yml` and `app.yml` configuration files were automatically loaded inside any plugin. In Symfony2, routing and application configuration inside a bundle must be included manually. For example, to include a routing resource from a bundle called `AcmeDemoBundle`, you can do the following:

Listing 113-8

```

1 # app/config/routing.yml
2 _hello:
3     resource: "@AcmeDemoBundle/Resources/config/routing.yml"

```

This will load the routes found in the `Resources/config/routing.yml` file of the `AcmeDemoBundle`. The special `@AcmeDemoBundle` is a shortcut syntax that, internally, resolves to the full path to that bundle.

You can use this same strategy to bring in configuration from a bundle:

Listing 113-9

```

1 # app/config/config.yml
2 imports:
3     - { resource: "@AcmeDemoBundle/Resources/config/config.yml" }

```

In Symfony2, configuration is a bit like `app.yml` in symfony1, except much more systematic. With `app.yml`, you could simply create any keys you wanted. By default, these entries were meaningless and depended entirely on how you used them in your application:

Listing 113-10

```

1 # some app.yml file from symfony1
2 all:
3     email:
4         from_address: foo.bar@example.com

```

In Symfony2, you can also create arbitrary entries under the `parameters` key of your configuration:

Listing 113-11

```

1 parameters:
2     email.from_address: foo.bar@example.com

```

You can now access this from a controller, for example:

Listing 113-12

```

1 public function helloAction($name)
2 {
3     $fromAddress = $this->container->getParameter('email.from_address');
4 }

```

In reality, the Symfony2 configuration is much more powerful and is used primarily to configure objects that you can use. For more information, see the chapter titled "*Service Container*".



Chapter 114

How to Inject Variables into all Templates (i.e. global Variables)

Sometimes you want a variable to be accessible to all the templates you use. This is possible inside your `app/config/config.yml` file:

```
Listing 114-1 1 # app/config/config.yml
                2 twig:
                3   # ...
                4   globals:
                5     ga_tracking: UA-xxxxx-x
```

Now, the variable `ga_tracking` is available in all Twig templates:

```
Listing 114-2 1 <p>The google tracking code is: {{ ga_tracking }}</p>
```

It's that easy!

Using Service Container Parameters

You can also take advantage of the built-in *Service Parameters* system, which lets you isolate or reuse the value:

```
Listing 114-3 1 # app/config/parameters.yml
                2 parameters:
                3   ga_tracking: UA-xxxxx-x
```

```
Listing 114-4 1 # app/config/config.yml
                2 twig:
                3   globals:
                4     ga_tracking: "%ga_tracking%"
```


The same variable is available exactly as before.

Referencing Services

Instead of using static values, you can also set the value to a service. Whenever the global variable is accessed in the template, the service will be requested from the service container and you get access to that object.



The service is not loaded lazily. In other words, as soon as Twig is loaded, your service is instantiated, even if you never use that global variable.

To define a service as a global Twig variable, prefix the string with `@`. This should feel familiar, as it's the same syntax you use in service configuration.

Listing 114-5

```
1 # app/config/config.yml
2 twig:
3     # ...
4     globals:
5         user_management: "@acme_user.user_management"
```

Using a Twig Extension

If the global variable you want to set is more complicated - say an object - then you won't be able to use the above method. Instead, you'll need to create a *Twig Extension* and return the global variable as one of the entries in the `getGlobals` method.



Chapter 115

How to Use and Register Namespaced Twig Paths

Usually, when you refer to a template, you'll use the `MyBundle:Subdir:filename.html.twig` format (see *Template Naming and Locations*).

Twig also natively offers a feature called "namespaced paths", and support is built-in automatically for all of your bundles.

Take the following paths as an example:

Listing 115-1

```
1 {% extends "AcmeDemoBundle::layout.html.twig" %}
2 {% include "AcmeDemoBundle:Foo:bar.html.twig" %}
```

With namespaced paths, the following works as well:

Listing 115-2

```
1 {% extends "@AcmeDemo/layout.html.twig" %}
2 {% include "@AcmeDemo/Foo/bar.html.twig" %}
```

Both paths are valid and functional by default in Symfony.



As an added bonus, the namespaced syntax is faster.

Registering your own Namespaces

You can also register your own custom namespaces. Suppose that you're using some third-party library that includes Twig templates that live in `vendor/acme/foo-bar/templates`. First, register a namespace for this directory:

Listing 115-3

```

1 # app/config/config.yml
2 twig:
3     # ...
4     paths:
5         "%kernel.root_dir%../vendor/acme/foo-bar/templates": foo_bar

```

The registered namespace is called `foo_bar`, which refers to the `vendor/acme/foo-bar/templates` directory. Assuming there's a file called `sidebar.twig` in that directory, you can use it easily:

Listing 115-4 1 `{% include '@foo_bar/sidebar.twig' %}`

Multiple Paths per Namespace

You can also assign several paths to the same template namespace. The order in which paths are configured is very important, because Twig will always load the first template that exists, starting from the first configured path. This feature can be used as a fallback mechanism to load generic templates when the specific template doesn't exist.

Listing 115-5 1 `# app/config/config.yml`
2 `twig:`
3 `# ...`
4 `paths:`
5 `"%kernel.root_dir%../vendor/acme/themes/theme1": theme`
6 `"%kernel.root_dir%../vendor/acme/themes/theme2": theme`
7 `"%kernel.root_dir%../vendor/acme/themes/common": theme`

Now, you can use the same `@theme` namespace to refer to any template located in the previous three directories:

Listing 115-6 1 `{% include '@theme/header.twig' %}`



Chapter 116

How to Use PHP instead of Twig for Templates

Symfony defaults to Twig for its template engine, but you can still use plain PHP code if you want. Both templating engines are supported equally in Symfony. Symfony adds some nice features on top of PHP to make writing templates with PHP more powerful.

Rendering PHP Templates

If you want to use the PHP templating engine, first, make sure to enable it in your application configuration file:

```
Listing 116-1 1 # app/config/config.yml
                2 framework:
                3     # ...
                4     templating:
                5         engines: ['twig', 'php']
```

You can now render a PHP template instead of a Twig one simply by using the `.php` extension in the template name instead of `.twig`. The controller below renders the `index.html.php` template:

```
Listing 116-2 1 // src/Acme/HelloBundle/Controller/HelloController.php
                2
                3 // ...
                4 public function indexAction($name)
                5 {
                6     return $this->render(
                7         'AcmeHelloBundle:Hello:index.html.php',
                8         array('name' => $name)
                9     );
               10 }
```

You can also use the `@Template` shortcut to render the default `AcmeHelloBundle:Hello:index.html.php` template:

Listing 116-3

```

1  // src/Acme/HelloBundle/Controller/HelloController.php
2
3  use Sensio\Bundle\FrameworkExtraBundle\Configuration\Template;
4
5  // ...
6
7  /**
8   * @Template(engine="php")
9   */
10 public function indexAction($name)
11 {
12     return array('name' => $name);
13 }

```



Enabling the `php` and `twig` template engines simultaneously is allowed, but it will produce an undesirable side effect in your application: the `@` notation for Twig namespaces will no longer be supported for the `render()` method:

Listing 116-4

```

1  public function indexAction()
2  {
3      // ...
4
5      // namespaced templates will no longer work in controllers
6      $this->render('@Acme/Default/index.html.twig');
7
8      // you must use the traditional template notation
9      $this->render('AcmeBundle:Default:index.html.twig');
10 }

```

Listing 116-5

```

1  {# inside a Twig template, namespaced templates work as expected #}
2  {{ include('@Acme/Default/index.html.twig') }}
3
4  {# traditional template notation will also work #}
5  {{ include('AcmeBundle:Default:index.html.twig') }}

```

Decorating Templates

More often than not, templates in a project share common elements, like the well-known header and footer. In Symfony, this problem is thought about differently: a template can be decorated by another one.

The `index.html.php` template is decorated by `layout.html.php`, thanks to the `extend()` call:

Listing 116-6

```

1  <!-- src/Acme/HelloBundle/Resources/views/Hello/index.html.php -->
2  <?php $view->extend('AcmeHelloBundle::layout.html.php') ?>
3
4  Hello <?php echo $name ?>!

```

The `AcmeHelloBundle::layout.html.php` notation sounds familiar, doesn't it? It is the same notation used to reference a template. The `::` part simply means that the controller element is empty, so the corresponding file is directly stored under `views/`.

Now, have a look at the `layout.html.php` file:

```

Listing 116-7 1 <!-- src/Acme/HelloBundle/Resources/views/layout.html.php -->
2 <?php $view->extend('::base.html.php') ?>
3
4 <h1>Hello Application</h1>
5
6 <?php $view['slots']->output('_content') ?>

```

The layout is itself decorated by another one (::base.html.php). Symfony supports multiple decoration levels: a layout can itself be decorated by another one. When the bundle part of the template name is empty, views are looked for in the `app/Resources/views/` directory. This directory stores global views for your entire project:

```

Listing 116-8 1 <!-- app/Resources/views/base.html.php -->
2 <!DOCTYPE html>
3 <html>
4     <head>
5         <meta http-equiv="Content-Type" content="text/html; charset=utf-8" />
6         <title><?php $view['slots']->output('title', 'Hello Application') ?></title>
7     </head>
8     <body>
9         <?php $view['slots']->output('_content') ?>
10    </body>
11 </html>

```

For both layouts, the `$view['slots']->output('_content')` expression is replaced by the content of the child template, `index.html.php` and `layout.html.php` respectively (more on slots in the next section).

As you can see, Symfony provides methods on a mysterious `$view` object. In a template, the `$view` variable is always available and refers to a special object that provides a bunch of methods that makes the template engine tick.

Working with Slots

A slot is a snippet of code, defined in a template, and reusable in any layout decorating the template. In the `index.html.php` template, define a `title` slot:

```

Listing 116-9 1 <!-- src/Acme/HelloBundle/Resources/views/Hello/index.html.php -->
2 <?php $view->extend('AcmeHelloBundle::layout.html.php') ?>
3
4 <?php $view['slots']->set('title', 'Hello World Application') ?>
5
6 Hello <?php echo $name ?>!

```

The base layout already has the code to output the title in the header:

```

Listing 116-10 1 <!-- app/Resources/views/base.html.php -->
2 <head>
3     <meta http-equiv="Content-Type" content="text/html; charset=utf-8" />
4     <title><?php $view['slots']->output('title', 'Hello Application') ?></title>
5 </head>

```

The `output()` method inserts the content of a slot and optionally takes a default value if the slot is not defined. And `_content` is just a special slot that contains the rendered child template.

For large slots, there is also an extended syntax:

```
Listing 116-11 1 <?php $view['slots']->start('title') ?>
                2     Some large amount of HTML
                3 <?php $view['slots']->stop() ?>
```

Including other Templates

The best way to share a snippet of template code is to define a template that can then be included into other templates.

Create a `hello.html.php` template:

```
Listing 116-12 1 <!-- src/Acme/HelloBundle/Resources/views/Hello/hello.html.php -->
                2 Hello <?php echo $name ?>!
```

And change the `index.html.php` template to include it:

```
Listing 116-13 1 <!-- src/Acme/HelloBundle/Resources/views/Hello/index.html.php -->
                2 <?php $view->extend('AcmeHelloBundle::layout.html.php') ?>
                3
                4 <?php echo $view->render('AcmeHelloBundle:Hello:hello.html.php', array('name' => $name)) ?>
```

The `render()` method evaluates and returns the content of another template (this is the exact same method as the one used in the controller).

Embedding other Controllers

And what if you want to embed the result of another controller in a template? That's very useful when working with Ajax, or when the embedded template needs some variable not available in the main template.

If you create a `fancy` action, and want to include it into the `index.html.php` template, simply use the following code:

Listing 116-14

```
1 <!-- src/Acme/HelloBundle/Resources/views/Hello/index.html.php -->
2 <?php echo $view['actions']->render(
3     new
4     \Symfony\Component\HttpKernel\Controller\ControllerReference('AcmeHelloBundle:Hello:fancy',
5     array(
6         'name' => $name,
7         'color' => 'green',
8     ))
9 ) ?>
```

Here, the `AcmeHelloBundle:Hello:fancy` string refers to the `fancy` action of the `Hello` controller:

```
Listing 116-15 1 // src/Acme/HelloBundle/Controller/HelloController.php
                2
                3 class HelloController extends Controller
                4 {
```

```

5     public function fancyAction($name, $color)
6     {
7         // create some object, based on the $color variable
8         $object = ...;
9
10        return $this->render('AcmeHelloBundle:Hello:fancy.html.php', array(
11            'name' => $name,
12            'object' => $object
13        ));
14    }
15
16    // ...
17 }

```

But where is the `$view['actions']` array element defined? Like `$view['slots']`, it's called a template helper, and the next section tells you more about those.

Using Template Helpers

The Symfony templating system can be easily extended via helpers. Helpers are PHP objects that provide features useful in a template context. **actions** and **slots** are two of the built-in Symfony helpers.

Creating Links between Pages

Speaking of web applications, creating links between pages is a must. Instead of hardcoding URLs in templates, the **router** helper knows how to generate URLs based on the routing configuration. That way, all your URLs can be easily updated by changing the configuration:

Listing 116-16

```

1 <a href="<?php echo $view['router']->generate('hello', array('name' => 'Thomas')) ?>">
2     Greet Thomas!
3 </a>

```

The `generate()` method takes the route name and an array of parameters as arguments. The route name is the main key under which routes are referenced and the parameters are the values of the placeholders defined in the route pattern:

Listing 116-17

```

1 # src/Acme/HelloBundle/Resources/config/routing.yml
2 hello: # The route name
3     path:      /hello/{name}
4     defaults: { _controller: AcmeHelloBundle:Hello:index }

```

Using Assets: Images, JavaScripts and Stylesheets

What would the Internet be without images, JavaScripts, and stylesheets? Symfony provides the **assets** tag to deal with them easily:

Listing 116-18

```

1 <link href="<?php echo $view['assets']->getUrl('css/blog.css') ?>" rel="stylesheet"
2 type="text/css" />
3
4 

```


The `assets` helper's main purpose is to make your application more portable. Thanks to this helper, you can move the application root directory anywhere under your web root directory without changing anything in your template's code.

Profiling Templates

By using the `stopwatch` helper, you are able to time parts of your template and display it on the timeline of the WebProfilerBundle:

Listing 116-19

```
1 <?php $view['stopwatch']->start('foo') ?>
2 ... things that get timed
3 <?php $view['stopwatch']->stop('foo') ?>
```



If you use the same name more than once in your template, the times are grouped on the same line in the timeline.

Output Escaping

When using PHP templates, escape variables whenever they are displayed to the user:

Listing 116-20

```
1 <?php echo $view->escape($var) ?>
```

By default, the `escape()` method assumes that the variable is outputted within an HTML context. The second argument lets you change the context. For instance, to output something in a JavaScript script, use the `js` context:

Listing 116-21

```
1 <?php echo $view->escape($var, 'js') ?>
```



Chapter 117

How to Write a custom Twig Extension

The main motivation for writing an extension is to move often used code into a reusable class like adding support for internationalization. An extension can define tags, filters, tests, operators, global variables, functions, and node visitors.

Creating an extension also makes for a better separation of code that is executed at compilation time and code needed at runtime. As such, it makes your code faster.



Before writing your own extensions, have a look at the *Twig official extension repository*¹.

Create the Extension Class



This cookbook describes how to write a custom Twig extension as of Twig 1.12. If you are using an older version, please read *Twig extensions documentation legacy*².

To get your custom functionality you must first create a Twig Extension class. As an example you'll create a price filter to format a given number into price:

Listing 117-1

```
1 // src/Acme/DemoBundle/Twig/AcmeExtension.php
2 namespace Acme\DemoBundle\Twig;
3
4 class AcmeExtension extends \Twig_Extension
5 {
6     public function getFilters()
7     {
8         return array(
```

1. <https://github.com/twigphp/Twig-extensions>

2. http://twig.sensiolabs.org/doc/advanced_legacy.html#creating-an-extension

```

9         new \Twig_SimpleFilter('price', array($this, 'priceFilter')),
10    );
11 }
12
13 public function priceFilter($number, $decimals = 0, $decPoint = '.', $thousandsSep =
14 ',')
15 {
16     $price = number_format($number, $decimals, $decPoint, $thousandsSep);
17     $price = '$'.$price;
18
19     return $price;
20 }
21
22 public function getName()
23 {
24     return 'acme_extension';
25 }

```



Along with custom filters, you can also add custom *functions* and register *global variables*.

Register an Extension as a Service

Now you must let the Service Container know about your newly created Twig Extension:

Listing 117-2

```

1 # src/Acme/DemoBundle/Resources/config/services.yml
2 services:
3     acme.twig.acme_extension:
4         class: Acme\DemoBundle\Twig\AcmeExtension
5         tags:
6             - { name: twig.extension }

```



Keep in mind that Twig Extensions are not lazily loaded. This means that there's a higher chance that you'll get a **CircularReferenceException** or a **ScopeWideningInjectionException** if any services (or your Twig Extension in this case) are dependent on the request service. For more information take a look at *How to Work with Scopes*.

Using the custom Extension

Using your newly created Twig Extension is no different than any other:

Listing 117-3

```

1 {# outputs $5,500.00 #}
2 {{ '5500'|price }}

```

Passing other arguments to your filter:

Listing 117-4

```
1 {# outputs $5500,2516 #}  
2 {{ '5500.25155'|price(4, ',', '') }}
```

Learning further

For a more in-depth look into Twig Extensions, please take a look at the *Twig extensions documentation*³.

3. <http://twig.sensiolabs.org/doc/advanced.html#creating-an-extension>



Chapter 118

How to Render a Template without a custom Controller

Usually, when you need to create a page, you need to create a controller and render a template from within that controller. But if you're rendering a simple template that doesn't need any data passed into it, you can avoid creating the controller entirely, by using the built-in `FrameworkBundle:Template:template` controller.

For example, suppose you want to render a `AcmeBundle:Static:privacy.html.twig` template, which doesn't require that any variables are passed to it. You can do this without creating a controller:

Listing 118-1

```
1 acme_privacy:
2     path: /privacy
3     defaults:
4         _controller: FrameworkBundle:Template:template
5         template: 'AcmeBundle:Static:privacy.html.twig'
```

The `FrameworkBundle:Template:template` controller will simply render whatever template you've passed as the `template` default value.

You can of course also use this trick when rendering embedded controllers from within a template. But since the purpose of rendering a controller from within a template is typically to prepare some data in a custom controller, this is probably only useful if you'd like to cache this page partial (see *Caching the static Template*).

Listing 118-2

```
1 {{ render(url('acme_privacy')) }}
```

Caching the static Template

Since templates that are rendered in this way are typically static, it might make sense to cache them. Fortunately, this is easy! By configuring a few other variables in your route, you can control exactly how your page is cached:

Listing 118-3

```
1 acme_privacy:
2   path: /privacy
3   defaults:
4     _controller: FrameworkBundle:Template:template
5     template: 'AcmeBundle:Static:privacy.html.twig'
6     maxAge: 86400
7     sharedAge: 86400
```

The `maxAge` and `sharedAge` values are used to modify the Response object created in the controller. For more information on caching, see *HTTP Cache*.

There is also a `private` variable (not shown here). By default, the Response will be made public, as long as `maxAge` or `sharedAge` are passed. If set to `true`, the Response will be marked as private.



Chapter 119

How to Simulate HTTP Authentication in a Functional Test

If your application needs HTTP authentication, pass the username and password as server variables to `createClient()`:

```
Listing 119-1 1 $client = static::createClient(array(), array(  
2     'PHP_AUTH_USER' => 'username',  
3     'PHP_AUTH_PW'   => 'pa$$word',  
4 ));
```

You can also override it on a per request basis:

```
Listing 119-2 1 $client->request('DELETE', '/post/12', array(), array(), array(  
2     'PHP_AUTH_USER' => 'username',  
3     'PHP_AUTH_PW'   => 'pa$$word',  
4 ));
```

When your application is using a `form_login`, you can simplify your tests by allowing your test configuration to make use of HTTP authentication. This way you can use the above to authenticate in tests, but still have your users log in via the normal `form_login`. The trick is to include the `http_basic` key in your firewall, along with the `form_login` key:

```
Listing 119-3 1 # app/config/config_test.yml  
2 security:  
3     firewalls:  
4         your_firewall_name:  
5             http_basic: ~
```



Chapter 120

How to Simulate Authentication with a Token in a Functional Test

Authenticating requests in functional tests might slow down the suite. It could become an issue especially when `form_login` is used, since it requires additional requests to fill in and submit the form.

One of the solutions is to configure your firewall to use `http_basic` in the test environment as explained in *How to Simulate HTTP Authentication in a Functional Test*. Another way would be to create a token yourself and store it in a session. While doing this, you have to make sure that an appropriate cookie is sent with a request. The following example demonstrates this technique:

```
Listing 120-1 1 // src/Acme/DemoBundle/Tests/Controller/DemoControllerTest.php
2 namespace Acme\DemoBundle\Tests\Controller;
3
4 use Symfony\Bundle\FrameworkBundle\Test\WebTestCase;
5 use Symfony\Component\BrowserKit\Cookie;
6 use Symfony\Component\Security\Core\Authentication\Token\UsernamePasswordToken;
7
8 class DemoControllerTest extends WebTestCase
9 {
10     private $client = null;
11
12     public function setUp()
13     {
14         $this->client = static::createClient();
15     }
16
17     public function testSecuredHello()
18     {
19         $this->login();
20
21         $crawler = $this->client->request('GET', '/demo/secured/hello/Fabien');
22
23         $this->assertTrue($this->client->getResponse()->isSuccessful());
24         $this->assertGreaterThan(0, $crawler->filter('html:contains("Hello
25 Fabien")')->count());
```



```

26     }
27
28     private function logIn()
29     {
30         $session = $this->client->getContainer()->get('session');
31
32         $firewall = 'secured_area';
33         $token = new UsernamePasswordToken('admin', null, $firewall, array('ROLE_ADMIN'));
34         $session->set('_security_'. $firewall, serialize($token));
35         $session->save();
36
37         $cookie = new Cookie($session->getName(), $session->getId());
38         $this->client->getCookieJar()->set($cookie);
39     }
}

```



The technique described in *How to Simulate HTTP Authentication in a Functional Test* is cleaner and therefore the preferred way.



Chapter 121

How to Test the Interaction of several Clients

If you need to simulate an interaction between different clients (think of a chat for instance), create several clients:

Listing 121-1

```
1 // ...
2
3 $harry = static::createClient();
4 $sally = static::createClient();
5
6 $harry->request('POST', '/say/sally/Hello');
7 $sally->request('GET', '/messages');
8
9 $this->assertEquals(Response::HTTP_CREATED, $harry->getResponse()->getStatusCode());
10 $this->assertRegExp('/Hello/', $sally->getResponse()->getContent());
```



New in version 2.4: Support for HTTP status code constants was introduced in Symfony 2.4.

This works except when your code maintains a global state or if it depends on a third-party library that has some kind of global state. In such a case, you can insulate your clients:

Listing 121-2

```
1 // ...
2
3 $harry = static::createClient();
4 $sally = static::createClient();
5
6 $harry->insulate();
7 $sally->insulate();
8
9 $harry->request('POST', '/say/sally/Hello');
10 $sally->request('GET', '/messages');
11
```

```
12 $this->assertEquals(Response::HTTP_CREATED, $harry->getResponse()->getStatusCode());  
13 $this->assertRegExp('/Hello/', $sally->getResponse()->getContent());
```

Insulated clients transparently execute their requests in a dedicated and clean PHP process, thus avoiding any side-effects.



As an insulated client is slower, you can keep one client in the main process, and insulate the other ones.



Chapter 122

How to Use the Profiler in a Functional Test

It's highly recommended that a functional test only tests the Response. But if you write functional tests that monitor your production servers, you might want to write tests on the profiling data as it gives you a great way to check various things and enforce some metrics.

The Symfony *Profiler* gathers a lot of data for each request. Use this data to check the number of database calls, the time spent in the framework, etc. But before writing assertions, enable the profiler and check that the profiler is indeed available (it is enabled by default in the `test` environment):

```
Listing 122-1 1 class HelloControllerTest extends WebTestCase
2 {
3     public function testIndex()
4     {
5         $client = static::createClient();
6
7         // Enable the profiler for the next request (it does nothing if the profiler is
8         not available)
9         $client->enableProfiler();
10
11         $crawler = $client->request('GET', '/hello/Fabien');
12
13         // ... write some assertions about the Response
14
15         // Check that the profiler is enabled
16         if ($profile = $client->getProfile()) {
17             // check the number of requests
18             $this->assertLessThan(
19                 10,
20                 $profile->getCollector('db')->getQueryCount()
21             );
22
23             // check the time spent in the framework
24             $this->assertLessThan(
25                 500,
26                 $profile->getCollector('time')->getDuration()
27             );
28         }
```

```
28     }
29 }
```

If a test fails because of profiling data (too many DB queries for instance), you might want to use the Web Profiler to analyze the request after the tests finish. It's easy to achieve if you embed the token in the error message:

```
Listing 122-2 1 $this->assertLessThan(
2     30,
3     $profile->getCollector('db')->getQueryCount(),
4     sprintf(
5         'Checks that query count is less than 30 (token %s)',
6         $profile->getToken()
7     )
8 );
```



The profiler store can be different depending on the environment (especially if you use the SQLite store, which is the default configured one).



The profiler information is available even if you insulate the client or if you use an HTTP layer for your tests.



Read the API for built-in *data collectors* to learn more about their interfaces.

Speeding up Tests by not Collecting Profiler Data

To avoid collecting data in each test you can set the `collect` parameter to false:

```
Listing 122-3 1 # app/config/config_test.yml
2
3 # ...
4 framework:
5     profiler:
6         enabled: true
7         collect: false
```

In this way only tests that call `$client->enableProfiler()` will collect data.



Chapter 123

How to Test Code that Interacts with the Database

If your code interacts with the database, e.g. reads data from or stores data into it, you need to adjust your tests to take this into account. There are many ways how to deal with this. In a unit test, you can create a mock for a **Repository** and use it to return expected objects. In a functional test, you may need to prepare a test database with predefined values to ensure that your test always has the same data to work with.



If you want to test your queries directly, see *How to Test Doctrine Repositories*.

Mocking the Repository in a Unit Test

If you want to test code which depends on a Doctrine repository in isolation, you need to mock the **Repository**. Normally you inject the **EntityManager** into your class and use it to get the repository. This makes things a little more difficult as you need to mock both the **EntityManager** and your repository class.



It is possible (and a good idea) to inject your repository directly by registering your repository as a *factory service*. This is a little bit more work to setup, but makes testing easier as you only need to mock the repository.

Suppose the class you want to test looks like this:

```
Listing 123-1 1 namespace Acme\DemoBundle\Salary;  
                2  
                3 use Doctrine\Common\Persistence\ObjectManager;  
                4
```

```

5 class SalaryCalculator
6 {
7     private $entityManager;
8
9     public function __construct(ObjectManager $entityManager)
10    {
11        $this->entityManager = $entityManager;
12    }
13
14    public function calculateTotalSalary($id)
15    {
16        $employeeRepository =
17 $this->entityManager->getRepository('AcmeDemoBundle:Employee');
18        $employee = $employeeRepository->find($id);
19
20        return $employee->getSalary() + $employee->getBonus();
21    }
22 }

```

Since the `ObjectManager` gets injected into the class through the constructor, it's easy to pass a mock object within a test:

Listing 123-2

```

1 use Acme\DemoBundle\Salary\SalaryCalculator;
2
3 class SalaryCalculatorTest extends \PHPUnit_Framework_TestCase
4 {
5     public function testCalculateTotalSalary()
6     {
7         // First, mock the object to be used in the test
8         $employee = $this->getMock('\Acme\DemoBundle\Entity\Employee');
9         $employee->expects($this->once())
10             ->method('getSalary')
11             ->will($this->returnValue(1000));
12         $employee->expects($this->once())
13             ->method('getBonus')
14             ->will($this->returnValue(1100));
15
16         // Now, mock the repository so it returns the mock of the employee
17         $employeeRepository = $this->getMockBuilder('\Doctrine\ORM\EntityRepository')
18             ->disableOriginalConstructor()
19             ->getMock();
20         $employeeRepository->expects($this->once())
21             ->method('find')
22             ->will($this->returnValue($employee));
23
24         // Last, mock the EntityManager to return the mock of the repository
25         $entityManager =
26 $this->getMockBuilder('\Doctrine\Common\Persistence\ObjectManager')
27             ->disableOriginalConstructor()
28             ->getMock();
29         $entityManager->expects($this->once())
30             ->method('getRepository')
31             ->will($this->returnValue($employeeRepository));
32
33         $salaryCalculator = new SalaryCalculator($entityManager);
34         $this->assertEquals(2100, $salaryCalculator->calculateTotalSalary(1));
35     }
36 }

```

In this example, you are building the mocks from the inside out, first creating the employee which gets returned by the **Repository**, which itself gets returned by the **EntityManager**. This way, no real class is involved in testing.

Changing Database Settings for Functional Tests

If you have functional tests, you want them to interact with a real database. Most of the time you want to use a dedicated database connection to make sure not to overwrite data you entered when developing the application and also to be able to clear the database before every test.

To do this, you can specify a database configuration which overwrites the default configuration:

```
Listing 123-3 1 # app/config/config_test.yml
2 doctrine:
3     # ...
4     dbal:
5         host:      localhost
6         dbname:    testdb
7         user:      testdb
8         password: testdb
```

Make sure that your database runs on localhost and has the defined database and user credentials set up.



Chapter 124

How to Test Doctrine Repositories

Unit testing Doctrine repositories in a Symfony project is not recommended. When you're dealing with a repository, you're really dealing with something that's meant to be tested against a real database connection.

Fortunately, you can easily test your queries against a real database, as described below.

Functional Testing

If you need to actually execute a query, you will need to boot the kernel to get a valid connection. In this case, you'll extend the `KernelTestCase`, which makes all of this quite easy:

```
Listing 124-1 1 // src/Acme/StoreBundle/Tests/Entity/ProductRepositoryFunctionalTest.php
2 namespace Acme\StoreBundle\Tests\Entity;
3
4 use Symfony\Bundle\FrameworkBundle\Test\KernelTestCase;
5
6 class ProductRepositoryFunctionalTest extends KernelTestCase
7 {
8     /**
9      * @var \Doctrine\ORM\EntityManager
10     */
11     private $em;
12
13     /**
14      * {@inheritdoc}
15     */
16     public function setUp()
17     {
18         self::bootKernel();
19         $this->em = static::$kernel->getContainer()
20             ->get('doctrine')
21             ->getManager();
22     }
23 }
```

```

24
25     public function testSearchByCategoryName()
26     {
27         $products = $this->em
28             ->getRepository('AcmeStoreBundle:Product')
29             ->searchByCategoryName('foo')
30         ;
31
32         $this->assertCount(1, $products);
33     }
34
35     /**
36      * {@inheritdoc}
37      */
38     protected function tearDown()
39     {
40         parent::tearDown();
41         $this->em->close();
42     }
43 }

```



Chapter 125

How to Customize the Bootstrap Process before Running Tests

Sometimes when running tests, you need to do additional bootstrap work before running those tests. For example, if you're running a functional test and have introduced a new translation resource, then you will need to clear your cache before running those tests. This cookbook covers how to do that.

First, add the following file:

```
Listing 125-1 1 // app/tests.bootstrap.php
2 if (isset($_ENV['BOOTSTRAP_CLEAR_CACHE_ENV'])) {
3     passthru(sprintf(
4         'php "%s/console" cache:clear --env=%s --no-warmup',
5         __DIR__,
6         $_ENV['BOOTSTRAP_CLEAR_CACHE_ENV']
7     ));
8 }
9
10 require __DIR__.'/bootstrap.php.cache';
```

Replace the test bootstrap file `bootstrap.php.cache` in `app/phpunit.xml.dist` with `tests.bootstrap.php`:

```
Listing 125-2 <!-- app/phpunit.xml.dist -->

<!-- ... -->
<phpunit
    ...
    bootstrap = "tests.bootstrap.php"
>
```

Now, you can define in your `phpunit.xml.dist` file which environment you want the cache to be cleared:

Listing 125-3

```
1 <!-- app/phpunit.xml.dist -->
2 <php>
3     <env name="BOOTSTRAP_CLEAR_CACHE_ENV" value="test"/>
4 </php>
```

This now becomes an environment variable (i.e. `$_ENV`) that's available in the custom bootstrap file (`tests.bootstrap.php`).



Chapter 126

How to Create a custom Validation Constraint

You can create a custom constraint by extending the base constraint class, *Constraint*¹. As an example you're going to create a simple validator that checks if a string contains only alphanumeric characters.

Creating the Constraint Class

First you need to create a Constraint class and extend *Constraint*²:

Listing 126-1

```
1 // src/Acme/DemoBundle/Validator/Constraints/ContainsAlphanumeric.php
2 namespace Acme\DemoBundle\Validator\Constraints;
3
4 use Symfony\Component\Validator\Constraint;
5
6 /**
7  * @Annotation
8  */
9 class ContainsAlphanumeric extends Constraint
10 {
11     public $message = 'The string "%string%" contains an illegal character: it can only
12     contain letters or numbers.';
13 }
```



The `@Annotation` annotation is necessary for this new constraint in order to make it available for use in classes via annotations. Options for your constraint are represented as public properties on the constraint class.

1. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Validator/Constraint.html>
2. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Validator/Constraint.html>

Creating the Validator itself

As you can see, a constraint class is fairly minimal. The actual validation is performed by another "constraint validator" class. The constraint validator class is specified by the constraint's `validatedBy()` method, which includes some simple default logic:

```
Listing 126-2 1 // in the base Symfony\Component\Validator\Constraint class
2 public function validatedBy()
3 {
4     return get_class($this).'Validator';
5 }
```

In other words, if you create a custom **Constraint** (e.g. **MyConstraint**), Symfony will automatically look for another class, **MyConstraintValidator** when actually performing the validation.

The validator class is also simple, and only has one required method `validate()`:

```
Listing 126-3 1 // src/Acme/DemoBundle/Validator/Constraints/ContainsAlphanumericValidator.php
2 namespace Acme\DemoBundle\Validator\Constraints;
3
4 use Symfony\Component\Validator\Constraint;
5 use Symfony\Component\Validator\ConstraintValidator;
6
7 class ContainsAlphanumericValidator extends ConstraintValidator
8 {
9     public function validate($value, Constraint $constraint)
10     {
11         if (!preg_match('/^[a-zA-Za0-9]+$/', $value, $matches)) {
12             // If you're using the new 2.5 validation API (you probably are!)
13             $this->context->buildViolation($constraint->message)
14                 ->setParameter('%string%', $value)
15                 ->addViolation();
16
17             // If you're using the old 2.4 validation API
18             /*
19             $this->context->addViolation(
20                 $constraint->message,
21                 array('%string%' => $value)
22             );
23             */
24         }
25     }
26 }
```

Inside `validate`, you don't need to return a value. Instead, you add violations to the validator's `context` property and a value will be considered valid if it causes no violations. The `buildViolation` method takes the error message as its argument and returns an instance of *ConstraintViolationBuilderInterface*³. The `addViolation` method call finally adds the violation to the context.



New in version 2.5: The `buildViolation` method was added in Symfony 2.5. For usage examples with older Symfony versions, see the corresponding versions of this documentation page.

3. <http://api.symfony.com/2.5/Symfony/Component/Validator/Violation/ConstraintViolationBuilderInterface.html>

Using the new Validator

Using custom validators is very easy, just as the ones provided by Symfony itself:

```
Listing 126-4 1 # src/Acme/BlogBundle/Resources/config/validation.yml
2 Acme\DemoBundle\Entity\AcmeEntity:
3     properties:
4         name:
5             - NotBlank: ~
6             - Acme\DemoBundle\Validator\Constraints\ContainsAlphanumeric: ~
```

If your constraint contains options, then they should be public properties on the custom Constraint class you created earlier. These options can be configured like options on core Symfony constraints.

Constraint Validators with Dependencies

If your constraint validator has dependencies, such as a database connection, it will need to be configured as a service in the dependency injection container. This service must include the `validator.constraint_validator` tag and an `alias` attribute:

```
Listing 126-5 1 services:
2     validator.unique.your_validator_name:
3         class: Fully\Qualified\Validator\Class\Name
4         tags:
5             - { name: validator.constraint_validator, alias: alias_name }
```

Your constraint class should now use this alias to reference the appropriate validator:

```
Listing 126-6 1 public function validatedBy()
2 {
3     return 'alias_name';
4 }
```

As mentioned above, Symfony will automatically look for a class named after the constraint, with **Validator** appended. If your constraint validator is defined as a service, it's important that you override the `validatedBy()` method to return the alias used when defining your service, otherwise Symfony won't use the constraint validator service, and will instantiate the class instead, without any dependencies injected.

Class Constraint Validator

Beside validating a class property, a constraint can have a class scope by providing a target in its **Constraint** class:

```
Listing 126-7 1 public function getTargets()
2 {
3     return self::CLASS_CONSTRAINT;
4 }
```

With this, the validator `validate()` method gets an object as its first argument:

```
Listing 126-8 1 class ProtocolClassValidator extends ConstraintValidator
2 {
3     public function validate($protocol, Constraint $constraint)
```

```

4      {
5          if ($protocol->getFoo() != $protocol->getBar()) {
6              $this->context->addViolationAt(
7                  'foo',
8                  $constraint->message,
9                  array(),
10                 null
11             );
12         }
13     }
14 }

```

Note that a class constraint validator is applied to the class itself, and not to the property:

Listing 126-9

```

1  # src/Acme/BlogBundle/Resources/config/validation.yml
2  Acme\DemoBundle\Entity\AcmeEntity:
3      constraints:
4          - Acme\DemoBundle\Validator\Constraints\ContainsAlphanumeric: ~

```




Chapter 127

How to Use PHP's built-in Web Server

Since PHP 5.4 the CLI SAPI comes with a *built-in web server*¹. It can be used to run your PHP applications locally during development, for testing or for application demonstrations. This way, you don't have to bother configuring a full-featured web server such as *Apache* or *Nginx*.



The built-in web server is meant to be run in a controlled environment. It is not designed to be used on public networks.

Starting the Web Server

Running a Symfony application using PHP's built-in web server is as easy as executing the **server:run** command:

Listing 127-1 1 \$ php app/console server:run

This starts a server at **localhost:8000** that executes your Symfony application. The command will wait and will respond to incoming HTTP requests until you terminate it (this is usually done by pressing Ctrl and C).

By default, the web server listens on port 8000 on the loopback device. You can change the socket passing an IP address and a port as a command-line argument:

Listing 127-2 1 \$ php app/console server:run 192.168.0.1:8080

1. <http://www.php.net/manual/en/features.commandline.webserver.php>



Using the built-in Web Server from inside a Virtual Machine

If you want to use the built-in web server from inside a virtual machine and then load the site from a browser on your host machine, you'll need to listen on the `0.0.0.0:8000` address (i.e. on all IP addresses that are assigned to the virtual machine):

Listing 127-3 1 `$ php app/console server:run 0.0.0.0:8000`



You should **NEVER** listen to all interfaces on a computer that is directly accessible from the Internet. The built-in web server is not designed to be used on public networks.

Command Options

The built-in web server expects a "router" script (read about the "router" script on *php.net*²) as an argument. Symfony already passes such a router script when the command is executed in the **prod** or in the **dev** environment. Use the `--router` option in any other environment or to use another router script:

Listing 127-4 1 `$ php app/console server:run --env=test --router=app/config/router_test.php`

If your application's document root differs from the standard directory layout, you have to pass the correct location using the `--docroot` option:

Listing 127-5 1 `$ php app/console server:run --docroot=public_html`

2. <http://php.net/manual/en/features.commandline.webserver.php#example-401>



Chapter 128

How to Create a SOAP Web Service in a Symfony Controller

Setting up a controller to act as a SOAP server is simple with a couple tools. You must, of course, have the *PHP SOAP*¹ extension installed. As the PHP SOAP extension can not currently generate a WSDL, you must either create one from scratch or use a 3rd party generator.



There are several SOAP server implementations available for use with PHP. *Zend SOAP*² and *NuSOAP*³ are two examples. Although the PHP SOAP extension is used in these examples, the general idea should still be applicable to other implementations.

SOAP works by exposing the methods of a PHP object to an external entity (i.e. the person using the SOAP service). To start, create a class - **HelloService** - which represents the functionality that you'll expose in your SOAP service. In this case, the SOAP service will allow the client to call a method called **hello**, which happens to send an email:

Listing 128-1

```
1  // src/Acme/SoapBundle/Services/HelloService.php
2  namespace Acme\SoapBundle\Services;
3
4  class HelloService
5  {
6      private $mailer;
7
8      public function __construct(\Swift_Mailer $mailer)
9      {
10         $this->mailer = $mailer;
11     }
12
13     public function hello($name)
14     {
```

1. <http://php.net/manual/en/book.soap.php>

2. <http://framework.zend.com/manual/en/zend.soap.server.html>

3. <http://sourceforge.net/projects/nusoap>

```

15
16     $message = \Swift_Message::newInstance()
17                 ->setTo('me@example.com')
18                 ->setSubject('Hello Service')
19                 ->setBody($name . ' says hi!');
20
21     $this->mailer->send($message);
22
23     return 'Hello, '.$name;
24 }
25 }

```

Next, you can train Symfony to be able to create an instance of this class. Since the class sends an e-mail, it's been designed to accept a `Swift_Mailer` instance. Using the Service Container, you can configure Symfony to construct a `HelloService` object properly:

Listing 128-2

```

1 # app/config/config.yml
2 services:
3     hello_service:
4         class: Acme\SoapBundle\Services\HelloService
5         arguments: ["@mailer"]

```

Below is an example of a controller that is capable of handling a SOAP request. If `indexAction()` is accessible via the route `/soap`, then the WSDL document can be retrieved via `/soap?wsdl`.

Listing 128-3

```

1 namespace Acme\SoapBundle\Controller;
2
3 use Symfony\Bundle\FrameworkBundle\Controller\Controller;
4 use Symfony\Component\HttpFoundation\Response;
5
6 class HelloServiceController extends Controller
7 {
8     public function indexAction()
9     {
10         $server = new \SoapServer('/path/to/hello.wsdl');
11         $server->setObject($this->get('hello_service'));
12
13         $response = new Response();
14         $response->headers->set('Content-Type', 'text/xml; charset=ISO-8859-1');
15
16         ob_start();
17         $server->handle();
18         $response->setContent(ob_get_clean());
19
20         return $response;
21     }
22 }

```

Take note of the calls to `ob_start()` and `ob_get_clean()`. These methods control *output buffering*⁴ which allows you to "trap" the echoed output of `$server->handle()`. This is necessary because Symfony expects your controller to return a `Response` object with the output as its "content". You must also remember to set the "Content-Type" header to "text/xml", as this is what the client will expect. So, you use `ob_start()` to start buffering the STDOUT and use `ob_get_clean()` to dump the echoed output into the content of the `Response` and clear the output buffer. Finally, you're ready to return the `Response`.

4. <http://php.net/manual/en/book.outcontrol.php>

Below is an example calling the service using a *NuSOAP*⁵ client. This example assumes that the `indexAction` in the controller above is accessible via the route `/soap`:

```
Listing 128-4 1 $client = new \Soapclient('http://example.com/app.php/soap?wsdl', true);
2
3 $result = $client->call('hello', array('name' => 'Scott'));
```

An example WSDL is below.

```
Listing 128-5 1 <?xml version="1.0" encoding="ISO-8859-1"?>
2 <definitions xmlns:SOAP-ENV="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/"
3   xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
4   xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
5   xmlns:SOAP-ENC="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/encoding/"
6   xmlns:tns="urn:arnlead servicewsd1"
7   xmlns:soap="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/wsdl/soap/"
8   xmlns:wsdl="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/wsdl/"
9   xmlns="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/wsdl/"
10  targetNamespace="urn:hello servicewsd1">
11
12  <types>
13    <xsd:schema targetNamespace="urn:hellowsdl">
14      <xsd:import namespace="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/encoding/" />
15      <xsd:import namespace="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/wsdl/" />
16    </xsd:schema>
17  </types>
18
19  <message name="helloRequest">
20    <part name="name" type="xsd:string" />
21  </message>
22
23  <message name="helloResponse">
24    <part name="return" type="xsd:string" />
25  </message>
26
27  <portType name="hellowsdlPortType">
28    <operation name="hello">
29      <documentation>Hello World</documentation>
30      <input message="tns:helloRequest"/>
31      <output message="tns:helloResponse"/>
32    </operation>
33  </portType>
34
35  <binding name="hellowsdlBinding" type="tns:hellowsdlPortType">
36    <soap:binding style="rpc" transport="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/http"/>
37    <operation name="hello">
38      <soap:operation soapAction="urn:arnlead servicewsd1#hello" style="rpc"/>
39
40    <input>
41      <soap:body use="encoded" namespace="urn:hellowsdl"
42        encodingStyle="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/encoding/" />
43    </input>
44
45    <output>
46      <soap:body use="encoded" namespace="urn:hellowsdl"
47        encodingStyle="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/encoding/" />
48    </output>
```

5. <http://sourceforge.net/projects/nussoap>

```
49     </operation>
50 </binding>
51
52 <service name="helloworld">
53     <port name="helloworldPort" binding="tns:helloworldBinding">
54         <soap:address location="http://example.com/app.php/soap" />
55     </port>
56 </service>
57 </definitions>
```



Chapter 129

How to Create and Store a Symfony Project in Git



Though this entry is specifically about Git, the same generic principles will apply if you're storing your project in Subversion.

Once you've read through *Creating Pages in Symfony* and become familiar with using Symfony, you'll no-doubt be ready to start your own project. In this cookbook article, you'll learn the best way to start a new Symfony project that's stored using the *Git*¹ source control management system.

Initial Project Setup

To get started, you'll need to download Symfony and initialize your local git repository:

1. Download the *Symfony Standard Edition*² using Composer:

Listing 129-1 1 \$ `php composer.phar create-project symfony/framework-standard-edition path/ '~2.5'`



Add the `-vvv` flag to see everything that Composer is doing - this is especially useful on a slow connection where it may seem that nothing is happening.

Composer will now download the Standard Distribution along with all of the required vendor libraries. For more information about downloading Symfony using Composer, see *Installing Symfony using Composer*³.

1. <http://git-scm.com/>

2. <http://symfony.com/download>

3. <http://symfony.com/doc/current/book/installation.html#option-1-composer>

2. Initialize your Git repository:

Listing 129-2 1 `$ git init`

3. Add all of the initial files to Git:

Listing 129-3 1 `$ git add .`



As you might have noticed, not all files that were downloaded by Composer in step 1, have been staged for commit by Git. Certain files and folders, such as the project's dependencies (which are managed by Composer), `parameters.yml` (which contains sensitive information such as database credentials), log and cache files and dumped assets (which are created automatically by your project), should not be committed in Git. To help you prevent committing those files and folders by accident, the Standard Distribution comes with a file called `.gitignore`, which contains a list of files and folders that Git should ignore.



You may also want to create a `.gitignore` file that can be used system-wide. This allows you to exclude files/folders for all your projects that are created by your IDE or operating system. For details, see *GitHub .gitignore*⁴.

4. Create an initial commit with your started project:

Listing 129-4 1 `$ git commit -m "Initial commit"`

At this point, you have a fully-functional Symfony project that's correctly committed to Git. You can immediately begin development, committing the new changes to your Git repository.

You can continue to follow along with the *Creating Pages in Symfony* chapter to learn more about how to configure and develop inside your application.



The Symfony Standard Edition comes with some example functionality. To remove the sample code, follow the instructions in the "*How to Remove the AcmeDemoBundle*" article.

Managing Vendor Libraries with `composer.json`

How Does it Work?

Every Symfony project uses a group of third-party "vendor" libraries. One way or another the goal is to download these files into your `vendor/` directory and, ideally, to give you some sane way to manage the exact version you need for each.

By default, these libraries are downloaded by running a `php composer.phar install "downloader"` binary. This `composer.phar` file is from a library called *Composer*⁵ and you can read more about installing it in the *Installation* chapter.

4. <https://help.github.com/articles/ignoring-files>

5. <http://getcomposer.org/>

The `composer.phar` file reads from the `composer.json` file at the root of your project. This is an JSON-formatted file, which holds a list of each of the external packages you need, the version to be downloaded and more. The `composer.phar` file also reads from a `composer.lock` file, which allows you to pin each library to an **exact** version. In fact, if a `composer.lock` file exists, the versions inside will override those in `composer.json`. To upgrade your libraries to new versions, run `php composer.phar update`.



If you want to add a new package to your application, run the composer **require** command:

Listing 129-5 1 `$ php composer.phar require doctrine/doctrine-fixtures-bundle`

To learn more about Composer, see *GetComposer.org*⁶:

It's important to realize that these vendor libraries are *not* actually part of *your* repository. Instead, they're simply un-tracked files that are downloaded into the `vendor/`. But since all the information needed to download these files is saved in `composer.json` and `composer.lock` (which *are* stored in the repository), any other developer can use the project, run `php composer.phar install`, and download the exact same set of vendor libraries. This means that you're controlling exactly what each vendor library looks like, without needing to actually commit them to *your* repository.

So, whenever a developer uses your project, they should run the `php composer.phar install` script to ensure that all of the needed vendor libraries are downloaded.



Upgrading Symfony

Since Symfony is just a group of third-party libraries and third-party libraries are entirely controlled through `composer.json` and `composer.lock`, upgrading Symfony means simply upgrading each of these files to match their state in the latest Symfony Standard Edition.

Of course, if you've added new entries to `composer.json`, be sure to replace only the original parts (i.e. be sure not to also delete any of your custom entries).

Vendors and Submodules

Instead of using the `composer.json` system for managing your vendor libraries, you may instead choose to use native *git submodules*⁷. There is nothing wrong with this approach, though the `composer.json` system is the official way to solve this problem and probably much easier to deal with. Unlike Git submodules, Composer is smart enough to calculate which libraries depend on which other libraries.

Storing your Project on a remote Server

You now have a fully-functional Symfony project stored in Git. However, in most cases, you'll also want to store your project on a remote server both for backup purposes, and so that other developers can collaborate on the project.

The easiest way to store your project on a remote server is via a web-based hosting service like *GitHub*⁸ or *Bitbucket*⁹. Of course, there are more services out there, you can start your research with a *comparison of hosting services*¹⁰.

6. <http://getcomposer.org/>

7. <http://git-scm.com/book/en/Git-Tools-Submodules>

8. <https://github.com/>

9. <https://bitbucket.org/>

10. http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Comparison_of_open-source_software_hosting_facilities

Alternatively, you can store your Git repository on any server by creating a *barebones repository*¹¹ and then pushing to it. One library that helps manage this is *Gitolite*¹².

11. <http://git-scm.com/book/en/Git-Basics-Getting-a-Git-Repository>
12. <https://github.com/sitaramc/gitolite>



Chapter 130

How to Create and Store a Symfony Project in Subversion



This entry is specifically about Subversion, and based on principles found in *How to Create and Store a Symfony Project in Git*.

Once you've read through *Creating Pages in Symfony* and become familiar with using Symfony, you'll no-doubt be ready to start your own project. The preferred method to manage Symfony projects is using *Git*¹ but some prefer to use *Subversion*² which is totally fine!. In this cookbook article, you'll learn how to manage your project using *SVN*³ in a similar manner you would do with *Git*⁴.



This is **a** method to tracking your Symfony project in a Subversion repository. There are several ways to do and this one is simply one that works.

The Subversion Repository

For this article it's assumed that your repository layout follows the widespread standard structure:

Listing 130-1

```
1 myproject/  
2   branches/  
3   tags/  
4   trunk/
```

1. <http://git-scm.com/>

2. <http://subversion.apache.org/>

3. <http://subversion.apache.org/>

4. <http://git-scm.com/>



Most Subversion hosting should follow this standard practice. This is the recommended layout in *Version Control with Subversion*⁵ and the layout used by most free hosting (see *Subversion Hosting Solutions*).

Initial Project Setup

To get started, you'll need to download Symfony and get the basic Subversion setup:

1. Download the *Symfony Standard Edition*⁶ with or without vendors.
2. Unzip/untar the distribution. It will create a folder called `Symfony` with your new project structure, config files, etc. Rename it to whatever you like.
3. Checkout the Subversion repository that will host this project. Suppose it is hosted on *Google code*⁷ and called `myproject`:

Listing 130-2 1 `$ svn checkout http://myproject.googlecode.com/svn/trunk myproject`

4. Copy the Symfony project files in the Subversion folder:

Listing 130-3 1 `$ mv Symfony/* myproject/`

5. Now, set the ignore rules. Not everything *should* be stored in your Subversion repository. Some files (like the cache) are generated and others (like the database configuration) are meant to be customized on each machine. This makes use of the `svn:ignore` property, so that specific files can be ignored.

Listing 130-4 1 `$ cd myproject/`
 2 `$ svn add --depth=empty app app/cache app/logs app/config web`
 3
 4 `$ svn propset svn:ignore "vendor" .`
 5 `$ svn propset svn:ignore "bootstrap*" app/`
 6 `$ svn propset svn:ignore "parameters.yml" app/config/`
 7 `$ svn propset svn:ignore "*" app/cache/`
 8 `$ svn propset svn:ignore "*" app/logs/`
 9
 10 `$ svn propset svn:ignore "bundles" web`
 11
 12 `$ svn ci -m "commit basic Symfony ignore list (vendor, app/bootstrap*, app/config/parameters.yml, app/cache/*, app/logs/*, web/bundles)"`

6. The rest of the files can now be added and committed to the project:

Listing 130-5 1 `$ svn add --force .`
 2 `$ svn ci -m "add basic Symfony Standard 2.X.Y"`

7. Copy `app/config/parameters.yml` to `app/config/parameters.yml.dist`. The `parameters.yml` file is ignored by svn (see above) so that machine-specific settings like database passwords aren't committed. By creating the `parameters.yml.dist` file, new developers can quickly clone the project, copy this file to `parameters.yml`, customize it, and start developing.

5. <http://svnbook.red-bean.com/>

6. <http://symfony.com/download>

7. <http://code.google.com/hosting/>

8. Finally, download all of the third-party vendor libraries by executing Composer. For details, see *Updating Vendors*.



If you rely on any "dev" versions, then Git may be used to install those libraries, since there is no archive available for download.

At this point, you have a fully-functional Symfony project stored in your Subversion repository. The development can start with commits in the Subversion repository.

You can continue to follow along with the *Creating Pages in Symfony* chapter to learn more about how to configure and develop inside your application.



The Symfony Standard Edition comes with some example functionality. To remove the sample code, follow the instructions in the *"How to Remove the AcmeDemoBundle"* article.

Managing Vendor Libraries with `composer.json`

How Does it Work?

Every Symfony project uses a group of third-party "vendor" libraries. One way or another the goal is to download these files into your `vendor/` directory and, ideally, to give you some sane way to manage the exact version you need for each.

By default, these libraries are downloaded by running a `php composer.phar install "downloader"` binary. This `composer.phar` file is from a library called *Composer*⁸ and you can read more about installing it in the *Installation* chapter.

The `composer.phar` file reads from the `composer.json` file at the root of your project. This is an JSON-formatted file, which holds a list of each of the external packages you need, the version to be downloaded and more. The `composer.phar` file also reads from a `composer.lock` file, which allows you to pin each library to an **exact** version. In fact, if a `composer.lock` file exists, the versions inside will override those in `composer.json`. To upgrade your libraries to new versions, run `php composer.phar update`.



If you want to add a new package to your application, run the composer **require** command:

Listing 130-6 1 `$ php composer.phar require doctrine/doctrine-fixtures-bundle`

To learn more about Composer, see *GetComposer.org*⁹:

It's important to realize that these vendor libraries are *not* actually part of *your* repository. Instead, they're simply un-tracked files that are downloaded into the `vendor/`. But since all the information needed to download these files is saved in `composer.json` and `composer.lock` (which *are* stored in the repository), any other developer can use the project, run `php composer.phar install`, and download the exact same set of vendor libraries. This means that you're controlling exactly what each vendor library looks like, without needing to actually commit them to *your* repository.

So, whenever a developer uses your project, they should run the `php composer.phar install` script to ensure that all of the needed vendor libraries are downloaded.

8. <http://getcomposer.org/>

9. <http://getcomposer.org/>



Upgrading Symfony

Since Symfony is just a group of third-party libraries and third-party libraries are entirely controlled through `composer.json` and `composer.lock`, upgrading Symfony means simply upgrading each of these files to match their state in the latest Symfony Standard Edition.

Of course, if you've added new entries to `composer.json`, be sure to replace only the original parts (i.e. be sure not to also delete any of your custom entries).

Subversion Hosting Solutions

The biggest difference between *Git*¹⁰ and *SVN*¹¹ is that Subversion *needs* a central repository to work. You then have several solutions:

- Self hosting: create your own repository and access it either through the filesystem or the network. To help in this task you can read *Version Control with Subversion*.
- Third party hosting: there are a lot of serious free hosting solutions available like *GitHub*¹², *Google code*¹³, *SourceForge*¹⁴ or *Gna*¹⁵. Some of them offer Git hosting as well.

10. <http://git-scm.com/>

11. <http://subversion.apache.org/>

12. <https://github.com/>

13. <http://code.google.com/hosting/>

14. <http://sourceforge.net/>

15. <http://gna.org/>

